

```
memset(empty, 0, 0);
```

```
int i = 0;
```

```
int tmp;
```

```
tmp = percent1 / 100;
```

```
printf("percent1 = %d, tmp = %d\n", percent1, tmp);
```

```
for(i = 0; i < 10; i++)
```

# Linux

ESSENTIALS

Second Edition



**LINUX<sup>®</sup>**

***ESSENTIALS***

**Second Edition**

Christine Bresnahan

Richard Blum



Senior Acquisitions Editor: Kenyon Brown  
Development Editor: Gary Schwartz  
Technical Editor: Kevin E. Ryan  
Production Editor: Christine O'Connor  
Copy Editor: Sharon Wilkey  
Editorial Manager: Mary Beth Wakefield  
Production Manager: Kathleen Wisor  
Associate Publisher: Jim Minatel  
Book Designer: Happenstance Type-O-Rama  
Proofreader: Sarah Kaikini, Word One New York  
Indexer: Robert Swanson  
Project Coordinator, Cover: Brent Savage  
Cover Designer: Wiley  
Cover Image: Daniel Anez, theanez.com

Copyright © 2015 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Indianapolis, Indiana  
Published simultaneously in Canada  
ISBN: 978-1-119-09206-3  
ISBN: 978-1-119-09219-3 (ebk.)  
ISBN: 978-1-119-09214-8 (ebk.)

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Sections 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 646-8600. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, or online at <http://www.wiley.com/go/permissions>.

**Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty:** The publisher and the author make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this work and specifically disclaim all warranties, including without limitation warranties of fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales or promotional materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for every situation. This work is sold with the understanding that the publisher is not engaged in rendering legal, accounting, or other professional services. If professional assistance is required, the services of a competent professional person should be sought. Neither the publisher nor the author shall be liable for damages arising herefrom. The fact that an organization or Web site is referred to in this work as a citation and/or a potential source of further information does not mean that the author or the publisher endorses the information the organization or Web site may provide or recommendations it may make. Further, readers should be aware that Internet Web sites listed in this work may have changed or disappeared between when this work was written and when it is read.

For general information on our other products and services or to obtain technical support, please contact our Customer Care Department within the U.S. at (877) 762-2974, outside the U.S. at (317) 572-3993 or fax (317) 572-4002.

Wiley publishes in a variety of print and electronic formats and by print-on-demand. Some material included with standard print versions of this book may not be included in e-books or in print-on-demand. If this book refers to media such as a CD or DVD that is not included in the version you purchased, you may download this material at <http://booksupport.wiley.com>. For more information about Wiley products, visit [www.wiley.com](http://www.wiley.com).

Library of Congress Control Number: 2015947137

**TRADEMARKS:** Wiley, the Wiley logo, and the Sybex logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of John Wiley & Sons, Inc. and/or its affiliates, in the United States and other countries, and may not be used without written permission. Linux is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds. All other trademarks are the property of their respective owners. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. is not associated with any product or vendor mentioned in this book.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1



*To those looking to further their knowledge of Linux.*

*Let the journey begin!*

*“A wise man is full of strength, and a man of knowledge  
enhances his might” Prov 24:5 (ESV)*

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

*First, all* glory and praise go to God, who through His Son, Jesus Christ, makes all things possible and gives us the gift of eternal life.

Many thanks go to the fantastic team at Sybex for their outstanding work on this project. Thanks to acquisitions editor Kenyon Brown for offering us the opportunity to work on this book. Also thanks to developmental editor Gary Schwartz for keeping things on track and making this book more presentable. Thanks, Gary, for all your hard work and diligence. Technical editor Kevin E. Ryan did a wonderful job of double-checking all of the work in the book, in addition to making suggestions to improve the content. Thanks also goes to the young and talented Daniel Anez ([theanez.com](http://theanez.com)) for his illustration and cover image work. We would also like to thank Carole Jelen at Waterside Productions for arranging this opportunity for us and for helping us in our writing careers.

Christine would particularly like to thank her husband, Timothy, for his encouragement, patience, and willingness to listen, even when he has no idea what she is talking about.

Rich would like to thank his wife, Barbara, for her love and support of his late-night writing habit, and thank Christine and Timothy for their continued friendship all these years.

# ABOUT THE AUTHORS

*Christine Bresnahan*, CompTIA Linux+, LPIC-1, Linux Essentials, started working with computers more than 30 years ago in the IT industry as a systems administrator. Christine is an adjunct professor at Ivy Tech Community College, where she teaches Linux certification and Python programming classes. She also writes books and produces instructional resources for the classroom.

*Richard Blum*, CompTIA Linux+, LPIC-1, Linux Essentials, has worked in the IT industry for more than 25 years as both a systems and network administrator, and he has published numerous Linux and open source books. Rich is an online instructor for Linux and web programming courses that are used by colleges and universities across the United States. When he is not being a computer nerd, Rich enjoys spending time with his wife, Barbara, and his two daughters, Katie Jane and Jessica.

# CONTENTS AT A GLANCE

	<i>Introduction</i>	<i>xi</i>
CHAPTER 1	Selecting an Operating System	1
CHAPTER 2	Understanding Software Licensing	21
CHAPTER 3	Investigating Linux's Principles and Philosophy	35
CHAPTER 4	Using Common Linux Programs	47
CHAPTER 5	Managing Hardware	75
CHAPTER 6	Getting to Know the Command Line	99
CHAPTER 7	Managing Files	127
CHAPTER 8	Searching, Extracting, and Archiving Data	151
CHAPTER 9	Exploring Processes and Process Data	175
CHAPTER 10	Editing Files	193
CHAPTER 11	Creating Scripts	211
CHAPTER 12	Understanding Basic Security	227
CHAPTER 13	Creating Users and Groups	245
CHAPTER 14	Setting Ownership and Permissions	267
CHAPTER 15	Managing Network Connections	285
APPENDIX A	Answers to Review Questions	307
APPENDIX B	LPI's Certification Program	327
	<i>Index</i>	<i>331</i>

# CONTENTS

*Introduction* *xi*

---

**CHAPTER 1      Selecting an Operating System      **1****

What Is an OS? . . . . . 1  
Investigating User Interfaces . . . . . 4  
Where Does Linux Fit in the OS World? . . . . . 8  
What Is a Distribution? . . . . . 13

---

**CHAPTER 2      Understanding Software Licensing      **21****

Investigating Software Licenses. . . . . 21  
Looking at the Free Software Foundation. . . . . 24  
Looking at the Open Source Initiative. . . . . 26  
Looking at the Creative Commons . . . . . 29  
Using Open Source Licenses . . . . . 30

---

**CHAPTER 3      Investigating Linux’s Principles and Philosophy      **35****

Exploring Linux through the Ages . . . . . 35  
Using Open Source Software . . . . . 38  
Understanding OS Roles. . . . . 41

---

**CHAPTER 4      Using Common Linux Programs      **47****

Using a Linux Desktop Environment. . . . . 47  
Working with Productivity Software . . . . . 55  
Using Server Programs. . . . . 62  
Managing Programming Languages . . . . . 68  
Handling Software Packages . . . . . 71

---

**CHAPTER 5      Managing Hardware      **75****

Learning about Your CPU. . . . . 75  
Identifying Motherboard Capabilities . . . . . 78  
Sizing Your Power Supply. . . . . 80  
Understanding Disk Issues . . . . . 81

	Managing Displays .....	89
	Handling USB Devices .....	93
	Managing Drivers .....	94
<b>CHAPTER 6</b>	<b>Getting to Know the Command Line</b>	<b>99</b>
	Starting a Command Line .....	99
	Running Programs .....	104
	Using Shell Features .....	107
	Getting Help Using <i>man</i> Pages .....	110
	Getting Help Using <i>info</i> Pages .....	117
	Finding Additional Documentation .....	120
<b>CHAPTER 7</b>	<b>Managing Files</b>	<b>127</b>
	Understanding Where Things Go .....	127
	Navigating Files and Directories .....	133
	Manipulating Files .....	137
	Manipulating Directories .....	145
<b>CHAPTER 8</b>	<b>Searching, Extracting, and Archiving Data</b>	<b>151</b>
	Using Regular Expressions .....	151
	Searching for and Extracting Data .....	153
	Redirecting Input and Output .....	161
	Archiving Data .....	166
<b>CHAPTER 9</b>	<b>Exploring Processes and Process Data</b>	<b>175</b>
	Understanding Package Management .....	175
	Understanding the Process Hierarchy .....	181
	Identifying Running Processes .....	182
	Using Log Files .....	187
<b>CHAPTER 10</b>	<b>Editing Files</b>	<b>193</b>
	Understanding the Role of Text Files .....	193
	Choosing an Editor .....	195
	Launching an Editor .....	196
	Editing Files with <i>pico</i> or <i>nano</i> .....	198
	Editing Files with <i>vi</i> .....	202

<b>CHAPTER 11</b>	<b>Creating Scripts</b>	<b>211</b>
	Beginning a Shell Script . . . . .	212
	Using Commands . . . . .	212
	Using Arguments . . . . .	215
	Using Variables . . . . .	216
	Using Conditional Expressions . . . . .	219
	Using Loops . . . . .	220
	Using Functions . . . . .	221
	Setting the Script's Exit Value . . . . .	223
<b>CHAPTER 12</b>	<b>Understanding Basic Security</b>	<b>227</b>
	Understanding Accounts . . . . .	227
	Using Account Tools . . . . .	234
	Working as <i>root</i> . . . . .	237
<b>CHAPTER 13</b>	<b>Creating Users and Groups</b>	<b>245</b>
	Creating New Accounts . . . . .	245
	Modifying Accounts . . . . .	253
	Deleting Accounts . . . . .	259
	Managing Groups . . . . .	262
<b>CHAPTER 14</b>	<b>Setting Ownership and Permissions</b>	<b>267</b>
	Setting Ownership . . . . .	267
	Setting Permissions . . . . .	271
	Using Special Permission Bits and File Features . . . . .	278
<b>CHAPTER 15</b>	<b>Managing Network Connections</b>	<b>285</b>
	Understanding Network Features . . . . .	285
	Configuring a Network Connection . . . . .	287
	Testing Your Network Connection . . . . .	299
	Protecting Your System from the Bad Guys . . . . .	303
<b>APPENDIX A</b>	<b>Answers to Review Questions</b>	<b>307</b>
<b>APPENDIX B</b>	<b>LPI's Certification Program</b>	<b>327</b>

# INTRODUCTION

*This book you hold* in your hands provides a solid introduction to the Linux operating system. As its title suggests, it will give you the essential knowledge to begin using and managing this powerful operating system (OS), which is an important one in today's computing world.

The following pages explain why you should care about Linux, describe the purpose of the Linux Professional Institute's Linux Essentials certification, offer advice on who should buy this book, detail how the book is organized, and explain some of the typographical and organizational elements within the book's chapters.

## What Is Linux?

Linux is a clone of the Unix OS, which has been popular in academic and business environments for years. Linux consists of a *kernel*, which is the core control software, and many libraries and utilities that rely on the kernel to provide features with which users interact. The OS is available in many *distributions*, which are collections of a specific kernel with specific support programs. Popular Linux distributions include Arch, CentOS, Debian, Fedora, Gentoo, Mandriva, openSUSE, Red Hat, Slackware, SUSE Enterprise, and Ubuntu, but there are hundreds—if not thousands—of other Linux distributions. This book focuses on tools and techniques that are used in most, if not all, distributions, although from time to time it demonstrates some distribution-specific tools.

Linux has several characteristics that make it worth learning and using:

- ▶ Linux is open source software: the files used to create the working programs that make up Linux are freely available and may be modified and redistributed. If you dislike something about the way Linux works, you can change it yourself! (You may need modest-to-considerable programming skills to do so, however.)
- ▶ Linux is available free of charge. Although some distributions require payment, most can be downloaded from the Internet and used without paying a cent. This is a great boon for students, businesses on a shoestring budget, or anybody wanting to save money. Those who want to pay for greater support can do so by hiring consultants or by purchasing service contracts.

- ▶ As a clone of the older Unix OS, Linux has inherited a great deal of Unix software, including many important Internet server programs, databases, programming languages, and more.
- ▶ Linux is highly scalable—it runs on everything from mobile devices to supercomputers. The Linux versions described in the greatest detail in this book run on a more limited range of hardware, but they can run on systems that are several years old or on the very latest hardware. Linux can make good use of systems that are too old for the latest version of Windows or Mac OS X.
- ▶ Many businesses and nonprofit organizations rely on Linux. Although desktop systems still usually run Windows, Linux is often used to run the organizations' websites, route their Internet traffic, and do other critical behind-the-scenes tasks. In some cases, Linux is used as the desktop OS too. Thus learning Linux will help your employment prospects.

You can install Linux on almost any system on which you normally run Windows or Mac OS X. You can install Linux by itself or side by side with another OS, so you can learn Linux without losing your ability to get work done in your regular OS.

## What Is the Linux Essentials Certification?

The Linux Professional Institute, or LPI ([www.lpi.org](http://www.lpi.org)), offers a series of Linux certifications. These certifications aim to provide proof of skill levels for employers; if you've passed a particular certification, you should be competent to perform certain tasks on Linux computers. The LPI exams include Linux Essentials, LPIC-1, LPIC-2, and LPIC-3. As the name implies, the Linux Essentials exam is the lowest level of the four exams, covering the most basic tasks of using and administering a Linux computer. Its specific objectives can be found at <http://wiki.lpi.org/wiki/LinuxEssentials>. This book covers all of these topics, although not in the exact order in which they appear on the LPI website.

## Who Should Read This Book?

You may have been assigned this book for a class that you're taking, but if not, it can still have value for self-study or as a supplement to other resources. If you're new to Linux, this book covers the material that you will need to learn the OS from the beginning. You can pick up this book and learn from it even if you've

never used Linux before. If you're already familiar with Linux, you'll have a leg up on many of the topics described in these pages.

This book is written with the assumption that you know at least a little about computers generally, such as how to use a keyboard, how to insert a disc into an optical drive, and so on. Chances are that you have used computers in a substantial way in the past—perhaps even Linux, as an ordinary user—or maybe you have used Windows or Mac OS X. We do *not* assume that you have knowledge of Linux system administration.

## System Requirements

As a practical matter, you'll need a Linux system on which to practice and learn in a hands-on way. You can install Linux in several ways:

- ▶ Alone as the only OS on the computer
- ▶ Side by side with another OS
- ▶ In an emulated computer environment provided by a virtualization program such as VMware ([www.vmware.com](http://www.vmware.com)) or VirtualBox ([www.virtualbox.org](http://www.virtualbox.org))

If you're taking a course on Linux, you may be able to use Linux in a lab environment. However, if you're using this book in a self-study manner, you should plan to install Linux yourself. Although you can learn something just by reading this book, no amount of reading can substitute for hands-on experience with Linux!

You can use any popular Linux distribution with this book, although if you're new to Linux, you'll probably be happiest with one of the more user-friendly distributions, such as CentOS, Fedora, openSUSE, or Ubuntu. This book does not include instructions for how to install Linux; you should consult distribution-specific documentation to help with this task.

To install Linux and use all of its GUI tools, your computer should meet the following requirements:

**CPU** 400 MHz Pentium Pro or better

**Minimum RAM** 640 MiB

**Recommended RAM** At least 1,152 MiB

**Hard Disk Space** At least 9 GiB in unpartitioned space

Some distributions can work on less-powerful computers than these, and others may require better hardware to take full advantage of all of their features. Consult your distribution's documentation to fine-tune these requirements.

## How This Book Is Organized

This book consists of 15 chapters plus this introduction. The chapters are organized as follows:

**Chapter 1: Selecting an Operating System** This chapter provides a birds-eye view of the world of operating systems. The chapter will help you understand exactly what Linux is and the situations in which you might want to use it.

**Chapter 2: Understanding Software Licensing** This chapter describes copyright law and the licenses that both Linux and non-Linux OSs use to expand or restrict users' rights to use and copy software.

**Chapter 3: Investigating Linux's Principles and Philosophy** This chapter covers Linux's history and the ways in which Linux, and other OSs, are commonly used.

**Chapter 4: Using Common Linux Programs** This chapter covers the major categories of Linux software, and it provides pointers to some of the most popular Linux programs.

**Chapter 5: Managing Hardware** This chapter provides advice on how to select and use hardware in Linux. Specific topics range from the central processing unit (CPU) to device drivers.

**Chapter 6: Getting to Know the Command Line** This chapter tackles using typed commands to control Linux. Although many new users find this topic intimidating, command-line control of Linux is important.

**Chapter 7: Managing Files** This chapter describes how to move, rename, delete, and edit files. Directories are just a special type of file, so they are covered here as well.

**Chapter 8: Searching, Extracting, and Archiving Data** This chapter summarizes the tools that you can use to find data on your computer, as well as how you can manipulate data archive files for data transport and backup purposes.

**Chapter 9: Exploring Processes and Process Data** This chapter describes how to install programs in Linux and how to adjust the priority of running programs or terminate selected programs.

**Chapter 10: Editing Files** This chapter introduces the topic of editing text files. This includes the basic features of the `pico`, `nano`, and `vi` text-mode text editors, as well as some common configuration file and formatted text file conventions.

**Chapter 11: Creating Scripts** This chapter describes how to create simple scripts, which are programs that can run other programs. You can use scripts to help automate otherwise tedious manual tasks, thus improving your productivity.

**Chapter 12: Understanding Basic Security** This chapter introduces the concepts that are critical to understanding Linux's multiuser nature. It also covers the root account, which Linux uses for most administrative tasks.

**Chapter 13: Creating Users and Groups** This chapter covers the software and procedures you use to create, modify, and delete accounts and groups, which define who may use the computer.

**Chapter 14: Setting Ownership and Permissions** This chapter describes how to control which users may access files and in what ways they may do so. In conjunction with users and groups, ownership and permissions control your computer's security.

**Chapter 15: Managing Network Connections** This chapter covers the critical topic of telling Linux how to use a network, including testing the connection and some basic network security measures.

Broadly speaking, the chapters are arranged in order of increasing complexity in terms of the tasks and systems described. The book begins with background information on Linux and the philosophies that drive its development. Subsequent chapters describe basic user tasks, such as moving files around. The book concludes with the tasks that are of most interest to system administrators, such as account management and network configuration.

Each chapter begins with a list of the topics covered in that chapter. At the end of each chapter, you'll find a few elements that summarize the material and encourage you to go further:

**The Essentials and Beyond** This is a one-paragraph summary of the material covered in the chapter. If something sounds unfamiliar when you read it, go back and review the relevant section of the chapter!

**Suggested Exercises** Each chapter includes two to four exercises that you should perform to give yourself more hands-on experience with Linux. These exercises do not necessarily have "correct" answers; instead, they're intended to promote exploration and discovery of your own computer and of Linux.

**Review Questions** Each chapter concludes with a series of 10 review questions, in multiple-choice, true/false, or fill-in-the-blank format. (Answers to

review questions appear in Appendix A.) These questions can help you test your knowledge and prepare you for the Linux Essentials exam. Note, however, that these questions are *not* taken from LPI's exam. You should *not* memorize the answers to these questions and assume that doing so will enable you to pass the exam. Instead, study the text of the book and *use Linux*.

To get the most out of this book, you should read each chapter from start to finish, perform the suggested exercises, and answer the review questions. Even if you're already familiar with a topic, you should skim the chapter; Linux is complex enough that there are often multiple ways to accomplish a task; you may learn something even if you're already competent in a given area.

## Conventions Used in This Book

This book uses certain typographic styles in order to help you quickly identify important information and to avoid confusion over the meaning of words such as onscreen prompts. In particular, look for the following styles:

- ▶ *Italicized text* indicates key terms that are described or defined for the first time in a chapter. (Italics are also used for emphasis.)
- ▶ A monospaced font indicates the contents of configuration files, messages displayed at a text-mode Linux shell prompt, filenames, text-mode command names, and Internet URLs.
- ▶ *Italicized monospaced text* indicates a variable—information that differs from one system or command run to another, such as the name of a client computer or the name of a user's data file.
- ▶ **Bold monospaced text** is information that you're to type into the computer, usually at a Linux shell prompt. This text can also be italicized to indicate that you should substitute an appropriate value for your system. When isolated on their own lines, commands are preceded by nonbold monospaced \$ or # command prompts, denoting regular user or system administrator use, respectively.

In addition to these text conventions, which can apply to individual words or to entire paragraphs, a few conventions highlight segments of text.

A margin note identifies additional information that may be relevant to the principal point of the accompanying paragraph, but that isn't critical to its basic understanding. This could be a cross-reference to information in another chapter, an interesting but noncritical minor fact, or a warning about a rare pitfall of a procedure.



As a general rule, margin notes are best read after the paragraphs to which they refer.

**SIDEBARS**

A *sidebar* is an extended description of a topic that's related to the main text but that doesn't fit neatly into the flow of the surrounding paragraphs. It may expand on a point to provide added context or suggest an alternative way of doing things from the method emphasized in the main text.

Many chapters of this book describe both GUI and text-mode methods of accomplishing tasks. Because you're likely to be more familiar with GUI tools, most chapters begin with them; however, in most cases, Linux's text-mode tools are more powerful. Furthermore, the Linux Essentials certification covers mainly text-mode tools. Therefore, be sure to learn the text-mode tools. As you gain proficiency with Linux, you're likely to find yourself using the text-mode tools more often than the GUI tools because of the added flexibility that the text-mode tools provide. Furthermore, the GUI tools tend to vary a lot between distributions, whereas the text-mode tools vary much less.



# Selecting an Operating System

*The fact that you're* reading this book means you want to learn about the Linux operating system (OS). To begin this journey, you must first understand what an OS is and what type of OS Linux is. This chapter is therefore devoted to these basic issues.

In this chapter, we describe what an OS is, how users interact with an OS, how Linux compares with other OSs with which you may be familiar, and how specific Linux implementations vary. Understanding these issues will help you find your way as you learn about Linux and switch between Linux-based and other systems.

- ▶ **What is an OS?**
- ▶ **Investigating user interfaces**
- ▶ **Where does Linux fit in the OS world?**
- ▶ **What is a distribution?**

## What Is an OS?

An *operating system*, or OS, provides all of the most fundamental features of a computer, at least from a software point of view. An OS enables you to use the computer's hardware devices, defines the user interface standards, and provides the basic tools that begin to make the computer useful. Ultimately, many of these features trace their way back to the OS's kernel, which is described in more detail next. Other OS features are owed to additional programs that run atop the kernel, as described later in this chapter.

## What Is a Kernel?

An OS *kernel* is a software component that's responsible for managing various low-level features of the computer, including the following:

- ▶ Interfacing with hardware devices (network adapters, hard drives, and so on)
- ▶ Allocating memory to individual programs
- ▶ Allocating CPU time to individual programs
- ▶ Enabling programs to interact with each other

When you use a program (say, a web browser), it relies on the kernel for many of its basic functions. The web browser can communicate with the outside world only by using network functions provided by the kernel. The kernel allocates memory and CPU time to the web browser, without which it couldn't run. The web browser may rely on plug-ins to display multimedia content; such programs are launched by and interact with the web browser through kernel services. Similar comments apply to any program that you run on a computer, although the details vary from one OS to another and from one program to another.

In sum, the kernel is the software “glue” that holds the computer together. Without a kernel, a modern computer can do very little.

Kernels are not interchangeable; the Linux kernel is different from the Mac OS X kernel or the Windows kernel. Each of these kernels uses a different internal design and provides different software interfaces for programs to use. Thus, each OS is built from the kernel up and uses its own set of programs that further define each OS's features.

Linux uses a kernel called *Linux*—in fact, technically speaking, the word Linux refers *only* to the kernel. Nonkernel programs provide other features that you might associate with Linux, most of which are available on other platforms, as described next in “What Else Identifies an OS.”

A student named Linus Torvalds created the Linux kernel in 1991. Linux has evolved considerably since that time. Today it runs on a wide variety of CPUs and other hardware. The easiest way to learn about Linux is to use it on a desktop or laptop PC, so that's the type of configuration that's emphasized in this book. The Linux kernel, however, runs on everything from tiny cell phones to powerful supercomputers.

## What Else Identifies an OS?

The kernel is at the core of any OS, but it's a component that most users don't directly manipulate. Instead, most users interact with a number of other

▶ Many programs run on multiple kernels, but most need OS-specific tweaks. Programmers create *binaries*—the program files for a particular processor and kernel—for each OS.

software components, many of which are closely associated with particular OSs. Such programs include the following:

**Command-Line Shells** Years ago, users interacted with computers exclusively by typing commands in a program (known as a *shell*) that accepted such commands. The commands would rename files, launch programs, and so on. Although many computer users today don't use text-mode shells, they're still important for intermediate and advanced Linux users, so we describe them in more detail in Chapter 6, "Getting to Know the Command Line," and subsequent chapters rely heavily on your ability to use a text-mode shell. Many shells are available, and which shells are available and popular vary from one OS to another. In Linux, a shell known as the Bourne Again Shell (bash or Bash) is popular.

**Graphical User Interfaces** A graphical user interface (GUI) is an improvement on a text-mode shell, at least from the perspective of a beginning user. Instead of typing in commands, GUIs rely on icons, menus, and a mouse pointer. The Windows and Mac OS both have their own OS-specific GUIs. Linux relies on a GUI known as the X Window System, or X for short. X is a basic GUI, so Linux also uses *desktop environment* program suites, such as GNOME or the K Desktop Environment (KDE), to provide a more complete user experience. It's the differences among Linux desktop environments and the GUIs in Windows or OS X that will probably strike you most when you first begin using Linux.

**Utility Programs** Modern OSs invariably ship with a wide variety of simple utility programs—calculators, calendars, text editors, disk maintenance tools, and so on. These programs differ from one OS to another. Indeed, even the names and methods of launching these programs can differ between OSs. Fortunately, you can usually find the programs you want by perusing menus in the main desktop environment.

**Libraries** Unless you're a programmer, you're unlikely to need to work with libraries directly; nonetheless, we include them in this list because they provide critical services to programs. Libraries are collections of programming functions that can be used by a variety of programs. In Linux, for instance, most programs rely on a library called `libc`. Other libraries provide features associated with the GUI or that help programs parse options passed to them on the command line. Many libraries exist for Linux, which helps enrich the Linux software landscape.

**Productivity Programs** Major productivity programs—web browsers, word processors, graphics editors, and so on—are the usual reason for using a computer. Although such programs are often technically separate from the OS, they are sometimes associated with certain OSs. Even when a program is available on many OSs, it may have a different "feel" on each OS because of the different GUIs and other OS-specific features.

#### Certification Objective

You can search for Linux equivalents to popular OS X or Windows programs on websites such as [www.linuxrsp.ru/win-lin-soft/table-eng](http://www.linuxrsp.ru/win-lin-soft/table-eng) or [www.linuxalt.com](http://www.linuxalt.com).

In addition to software that runs on an OS, several other features can distinguish between OSs, such as the details of user accounts, rules for naming disk files, and technical details of how the computer starts up. These features are all controlled by software that's part of the OS, of course—sometimes by the kernel and sometimes by nonkernel software.

## Investigating User Interfaces

Earlier, we noted the distinction between text-mode and graphical user interfaces. Although most end users favor GUIs because of their ease of use, Linux retains a strong text-mode tradition. Chapter 6 describes Linux’s text-mode tools in more detail, and Chapter 4, “Using Common Linux Programs,” covers basic principles of Linux GUI operations. It’s important that you have some grounding in the basic principles of both text-mode and graphical user interfaces now, since user interface issues crop up from time to time in intervening chapters.

### Using a Text-Mode User Interface

**Certification Objective**

In the past, and even sometimes today, Linux computers booted in text mode. Once the system had completely booted, the screen would display a simple text-mode login prompt, which might look like this:

```
Fedora release 21 (Twenty One)
Kernel 3.18.6-200.fc21.x86_64 on an x86_64 (tty1)
```

```
essentials login:
```

The details of such a login prompt vary from one system to another. This example includes several pieces of information:

- ▶ The OS name and version—Fedora Linux 21
- ▶ The computer’s name—`essentials`
- ▶ The name of the hardware device being used for the login—`tty1`
- ▶ The login prompt itself—`login:`

To log in to such a system, you must type your username at the `login:` prompt. The system then prompts you for a password, which you must also type. If you entered a valid username and password, the computer is likely to display a login message, followed by a shell prompt:

```
[rich@essentials:~]$
```

In this book, we omit most of the prompts from example commands when they appear on their own lines. We keep the dollar sign (\$) prompt, though, for ordinary user commands. Some commands must be entered as `root`, which is the Linux administrative user. We change the prompt to a hash mark (#) for such commands, since most Linux distributions make a similar change to their prompts for the `root` user.

To try a text-mode login, you must first install Linux on a computer. Neither the Linux Essentials exam nor this book covers Linux installation. Consult your distribution’s documentation to learn more about installing Linux.

If you see a GUI login prompt, you can obtain a text-mode prompt by pressing `Ctrl+Alt+F1` or `Ctrl+Alt+F2`. To return to the GUI login prompt, press `Alt+F1` or `Alt+F7`.

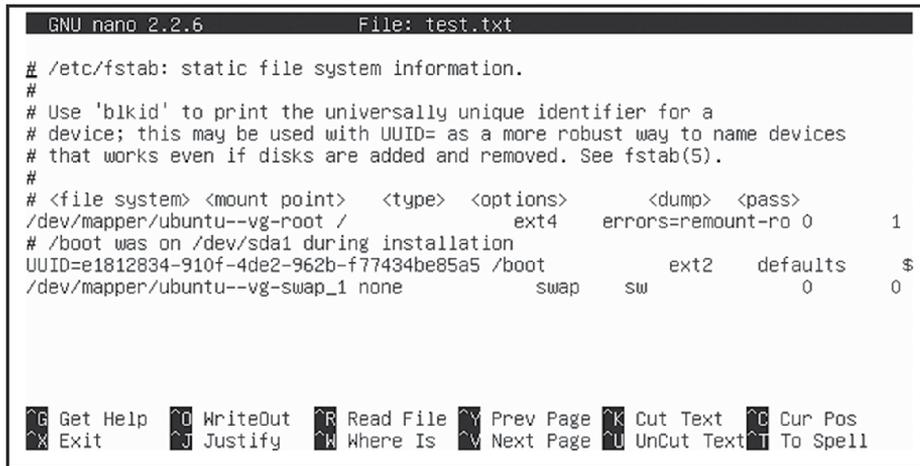
The details of this shell prompt vary from one installation to another, but you can type text-mode commands at the shell prompt. For instance, you could type `ls` (short for *list*) to see a list of files in the current directory. Removing vowels, and sometimes consonants, shortens the most basic commands, in order to minimize the amount of typing required to execute a command. This has the unfortunate effect of making many commands rather obscure.

Some commands display no information, but most produce some type of output. For instance, the `ls` command produces a list of files:

```
$ ls
106792c01.doc  f0101.tif
```

This example shows two files in the current directory: `106792c01.doc` and `f0101.tif`. You can use additional commands to manipulate these files, such as `cp` to copy them or `rm` to remove (delete) them. Chapter 6 and Chapter 7 (“Managing Files”) describe some common file-manipulation commands.

Some text-mode programs take over the display in order to provide constant updates or to enable you to interact with data in a flexible manner. Figure 1.1, for instance, shows the nano text editor, which is described in more detail in Chapter 10, “Editing Files.” Once nano is working, you can use your keyboard’s arrow keys to move the cursor around, add text by typing, and so on.



```
GNU nano 2.2.6 File: test.txt
# /etc/fstab: static file system information.
#
# Use 'blkid' to print the universally unique identifier for a
# device; this may be used with UUID= as a more robust way to name devices
# that works even if disks are added and removed. See fstab(5).
#
# <file system> <mount point> <type> <options> <dump> <pass>
/dev/mapper/ubuntu--vg-root / ext4 errors=remount-ro 0 1
# /boot was on /dev/sda1 during installation
UUID=e1812834-910f-4de2-962b-f77434be85a5 /boot ext2 defaults $
/dev/mapper/ubuntu--vg-swap_1 none swap sw 0 0

^G Get Help ^O WriteOut ^R Read File ^Y Prev Page ^K Cut Text ^C Cur Pos
^X Exit ^J Justify ^W Where Is ^V Next Page ^U UnCut Text ^T To Spell
```

**FIGURE 1.1** Some text-mode programs take over the entire display.

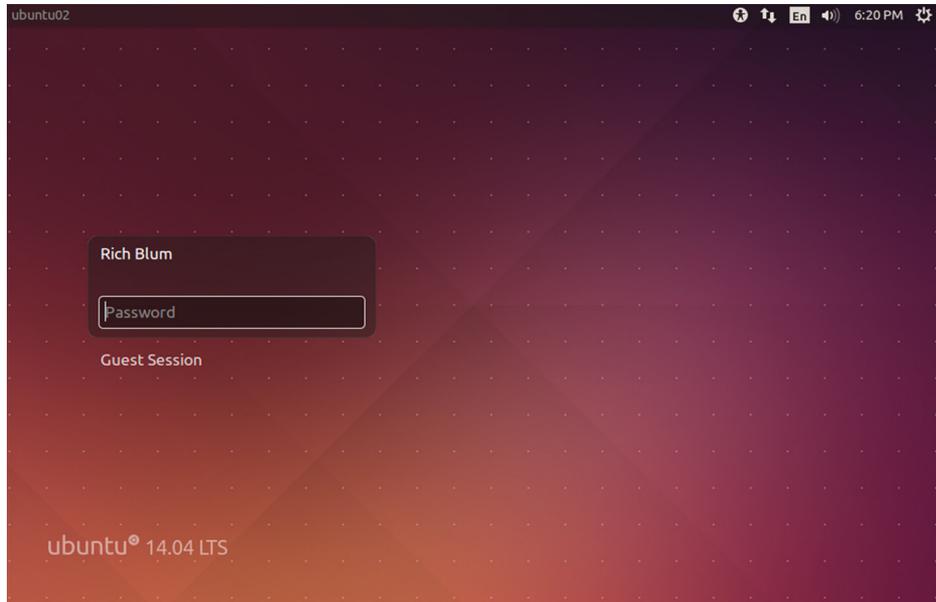
Even if you use a graphical login, you can use a text-mode shell inside a window, known as a *terminal*. Common Linux GUIs provide the ability to launch a terminal program, which delivers a shell prompt and the means to run text-mode programs.

Chapter 13, “Creating Users and Groups,” describes Linux accounts, including the root account, in more detail.

## Using a Graphical User Interface

Certification  
Objective

Most users are more comfortable with GUIs than with text-mode commands. Thus many modern Linux systems start up in GUI mode by default, presenting a login screen similar to the one shown in Figure 1.2. You can select your user-name from a list or type it, followed by typing your password, to log in.



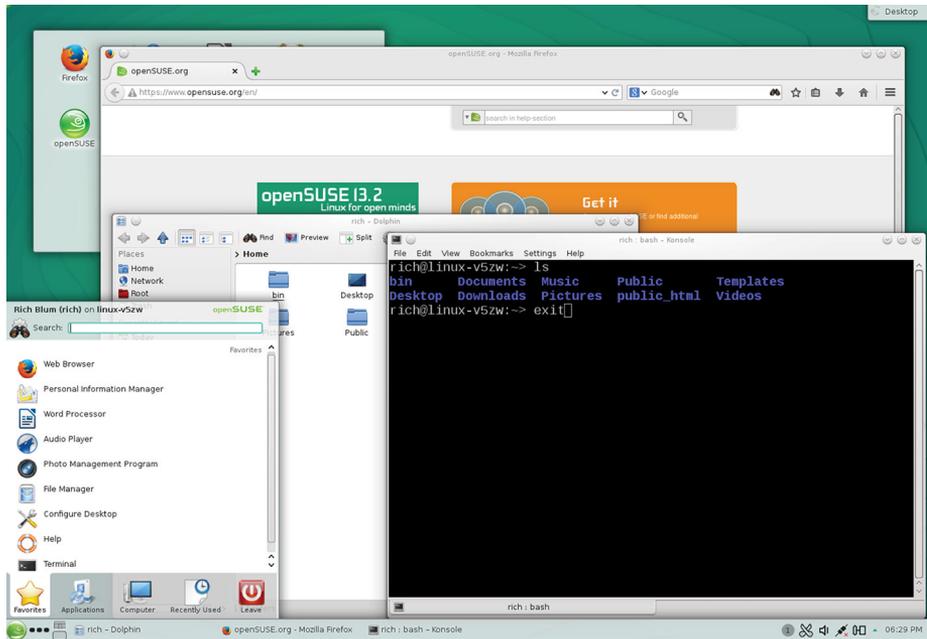
**FIGURE 1.2** Graphical login screens on Linux are similar to those for Windows or OS X.

Some Linux GUI login screens don't prompt you for a password until after you've entered a valid username.

Unlike Windows and OS X, Linux provides a number of desktop environments. Which one you use depends on the specific variety of Linux you're using, what software options you selected at installation time, and your own personal preferences. Common choices include GNOME, KDE, Xfce, and Unity. Many other options are available as well. Many graphical desktops have assistive technology features built in. In Figure 1.2, the person icon in the top-right corner of the Ubuntu login window lets you select an assistive technology, such as a screen reader or onscreen keyboard, to assist you with the login entry.

Linux desktop environments can look quite different from one another, but they all provide similar functionality. Figure 1.3 shows the default KDE on an openSUSE 13.2 installation with a couple of programs running.

Chapter 4 describes common desktop environments and their features in more detail, but for now you should know that they all provide features such as these:



**FIGURE 1.3** Linux desktop environments provide the types of GUI controls that most users expect.

**Program Launchers** You can launch programs by selecting them from menus or lists. Typically, one or more menus exist along the top, bottom, or side of the screen. In Figure 1.3, you can click the openSUSE gecko icon in the bottom-left corner of the screen to produce the menu that appears in that figure.

**File Managers** Linux provides GUI file managers similar to those in Windows or OS X. A window for one of these is open in the center of Figure 1.3.

**Window Controls** You can move windows by clicking and dragging their title bars, resize them by clicking and dragging their edges, and so on.

**Multiple Desktops** Most Linux desktop environments enable you to keep multiple virtual desktops active, each with their own set of programs. This feature is handy to keep the screen uncluttered while you run many programs simultaneously. Typically, an icon in one of the menus enables you to switch between virtual desktops.

**Logout Options** You can log out of your Linux session, which enables you to shut down the computer or let another user log in.

Logging out is important in public computing environments. If you fail to log out, a stranger might come along and use your account for malicious purposes.



You may need to install extra desktop environments to use them. This topic is not covered in this book.



As described later, in “What Is a Distribution?,” Linux can be considered a family of OSs. Thus you can compare one Linux version to another one.



#### Certification Objective

You can not only run open source software, but also modify and redistribute it yourself. Chapter 3, “Investigating Linux’s Principles and Philosophy,” covers the philosophy and legal issues concerning open source software.



GNU is an example of a recursive acronym—an acronym whose expansion includes the acronym itself. This is an example of geek humor.



As you learn more about Linux, you’ll discover that its GUI environments are quite flexible. If you find that you don’t like the default environment for your distribution, you can change it. Although they all provide similar features, some people have strong preferences about desktop environments. Linux gives you a choice in the matter that is not available in Windows or OS X, so feel free to try multiple desktop environments.

## Where Does Linux Fit in the OS World?

This chapter’s title implies a comparison, and as this book is about Linux, the comparison must be with non-Linux OSs. Thus we compare Linux to three other OSs or OS families: Unix, Mac OS X, and Microsoft Windows.

### Comparing Linux to Unix

If you were to attempt to draw a “family tree” of OSs, you would end up scratching your head a lot. This is because OS designers often mimic each other’s features, and sometimes even incorporate each other’s ideas into their OSs’ workings. The result can be a tangled mess of similarities between OSs, with causes ranging from coincidence to code “borrowing.” Attempting to map these influences can be difficult. In the case of Linux and Unix, though, a broad statement is possible: Linux is modeled after Unix.

Unix was created in 1969 at AT&T’s Bell Labs. Unix’s history is complex and involves multiple *forks* (that is, splitting of the code into two or more independent projects) and even entirely separate code rewrites. Modern Linux systems are, by and large, the product of open source projects that clone Unix programs, or of original open source code projects for Unix generally. These projects include the following:

**The Linux Kernel** Linus Torvalds created the Linux kernel as a hobby programming project in 1991, but it soon grew to be much more than that. The Linux kernel was designed to be compatible with other Unix kernels, in the sense that it used the same software interfaces in source code. This made using open source programs for other Unix versions with the Linux kernel easy.

**The GNU Project** The GNU’s Not Unix (GNU) project is an effort by the Free Software Foundation (FSF) to develop open source replacements for all of the core elements of a Unix OS. In 1991, the FSF had already released the most important of such tools, with the notable exception of the kernel. (The GNU HURD kernel is now available, but is not as popular as the Linux kernel.)

Alternatives to the GNU tools include proprietary commercial tools and open source tools developed for the Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD) Unix variants. The tools used on a Unix-like OS can influence its overall “flavor,” but all of these tool sets are similar enough to give any Unix variety a similar feel when compared to a non-Unix OS.

**Xorg-X11** The X Window System is the GUI environment for most Unix OSs. Most Linux distributions today use the Xorg-X11 variety of X. As with the basic text-mode tools provided by the GNU project, choice of an X server can affect some features of a Unix-like OS, such as the types of fonts it supports.

**Desktop Environments** GNOME, KDE, Unity, Xfce, and other popular open source desktop environments have largely displaced commercial desktop environments, even on commercial versions of Unix. Thus you won’t find big differences between Linux and Unix in this area.

**Server Programs** Historically, Unix and Linux have been popular as server OSs—organizations use them to run web servers, email servers, file servers, and so on. Linux runs the same popular server programs as do commercial Unix versions and the open source BSDs.

**User Productivity Programs** In this realm, as in server programs, Linux runs the same software as do other Unix-like OSs. In a few cases, Linux runs more programs, or runs them better. This is mostly because of Linux’s popularity and the vast array of hardware drivers that Linux offers. If a program needs advanced video card support, for example, it’s more likely to find that support on Linux than on a less popular Unix-like OS.

On the whole, Linux can be thought of as a member of the family of Unix-like OSs. Although Linux is technically *not* a Unix OS, it’s similar enough that the differences are unimportant compared to the differences between this family as a whole and other OSs, such as Windows. Because of its popularity, Linux offers better hardware support, at least on commodity PC hardware. Some Unix varieties offer specific features that Linux lacks, though. For instance, the Zettabyte File System (ZFS), available on Solaris, FreeBSD, and some other OSs, provides advanced filesystem features that aren’t yet fully implemented in Linux.

## Comparing Linux to Mac OS X

Mac OS X is a commercial Unix-based OS that borrows heavily from the BSDs and discards the usual Unix GUI (namely X) in favor of its own user interface. This makes OS X both very similar to Linux and quite different from it.

Mac OS X, described shortly, is a commercial Unix-based OS that eschews both X and the desktop environments that run on it in favor of Apple’s own GUI.

A ZFS add-on for Linux is available, but it’s not fully integrated into the OS. A Linux filesystem known as Btrfs offers many ZFS features, and it is gaining in popularity among various Linux distributions.

## CODE TYPES

Programmers write programs in a form known as *source code*. Although source code can seem arcane to the uninitiated, it's crystal clear compared to the form a program must take for a computer to run it—that is, *binary code*. A program known as a *compiler* translates source code to binary code. (Alternatively, some programming languages rely on an *interpreter*, which converts source code to binary code “on the fly,” eliminating the need to compile source code.)

The term *open source* refers to the availability of source code. This is generally withheld from the public in the case of commercial software programs and OSs. Conversely, a programmer with access to a program's source code through open source software can fix bugs, add features, and otherwise alter how the program operates.

You can open an OS X Terminal window and type many of the same commands described in this book to achieve similar ends. If a command described in this book isn't present, you may be able to install it in one way or another. OS X ships with some popular Unix server programs, so you can configure it to work much like Linux or another Unix-like OS as a network server computer.

OS X differs from Linux in its user interface, though. The OS X user interface is known as *Cocoa* from a programming perspective, or *Aqua* from a user's point of view. It includes elements that are roughly equivalent to both X and a desktop environment in Linux. Because Cocoa isn't compatible with X from a programming perspective, applications developed for OS X can't be run directly on Linux (or on other Unix-like OSs), and porting them (that is, modifying the source code and recompiling them) for Linux is a nontrivial undertaking. Thus native OS X applications seldom make the transition to Linux.

OS X includes an implementation of X that runs under Aqua. This makes the transfer of GUI Linux and Unix programs to OS X relatively straightforward. The resulting programs don't entirely conform to the Aqua user interface, though. They may have buttons, menus, and other features that look out of place compared to the usual appearance of OS X equivalents.

Apple makes OS X available for its own computers. Its license terms forbid installation on non-Apple hardware and, putting aside licensing issues, installing OS X on non-Apple hardware is a nontrivial undertaking. A variant of OS X, known as iOS, runs on Apple's iPad and iPhone devices, and it is equally non-portable to other devices. Thus OS X is largely limited to Apple hardware. Linux,

The X in X server is a letter X, but the X in OS X is a Roman numeral (10), denoting the tenth version of Mac OS.

by contrast, runs on a wide variety of hardware, including most PCs. You can even install Linux on Macintosh computers.

## Comparing Linux to Windows

Most desktop and laptop computers today run Microsoft Windows. Thus if you're considering running Linux, the most likely comparison is to Windows. Broadly speaking, Linux and Windows have similar capabilities; however, there are significant differences in details. These include the following:

Certification  
Objective

**Licensing** Linux is an open source OS, whereas Windows is a proprietary commercial OS. Chapter 2, “Understanding Software Licensing,” covers open source issues in greater detail, but for now you should know that open source software gives you greater control over your computer than does proprietary software—at least in theory. In practice, you may need a great deal of expertise to take advantage of open source's benefits. Proprietary software may be preferable if you work for an organization that's comfortable only with the idea of software that's sold in a more traditional way. (Some Linux variants, though, are sold in a similar way, along with service contracts.)

**Costs** Many Linux varieties are available free of charge, and so they are appealing if you're trying to cut costs. On the other hand, the expertise needed to install and maintain a Linux installation is likely to be greater, and therefore more expensive than the expertise needed to install and maintain a Windows installation. Different studies on the issue of total cost of ownership of Linux vs. Windows have gone both ways, but most tend to favor Linux.

**Hardware Compatibility** Most hardware components require OS support, usually in the form of drivers. Most hardware manufacturers provide Windows drivers for their devices, or they work with Microsoft to ensure that Windows includes appropriate drivers. Although some manufacturers provide Linux drivers, too, for the most part the Linux community as a whole must supply the necessary drivers. This means that Linux drivers may take a few weeks or even months to appear after a device becomes available. On the other hand, Linux developers tend to maintain drivers for old hardware for much longer than manufacturers continue to support their own old hardware. Thus a modern Linux may run better than a recent version of Windows on old hardware. Linux also tends to be less resource-intensive, so you can be productive on older hardware when using Linux.

**Software Availability** Some popular desktop applications, such as Microsoft Office, are available on Windows but not on Linux. Although Linux alternatives,

such as Apache OpenOffice.org or LibreOffice, are available, they haven't caught on in the public's mind. In other realms, the situation is reversed. Popular server programs, such as the Apache web server, were developed first for Linux or Unix. Although many such servers are available for Windows, they run more efficiently on Linux. If you have a specific program that you must run, you may want to research its availability and practicality on any of the platforms that you're considering.

Microsoft has made major changes to its user interface, starting with Windows 8. The updated user interface, called Metro, works in a similar manner on everything from smartphones to desktop computers.

**User Interfaces** Like OS X, Windows uses its own unique user interface. This fact contributes to poor inter-OS portability. (Tools exist to help bridge the gap, though; X Window System implementations for Windows are available, as are tools for running Windows programs in Linux.) Some users prefer the Windows user interface to any Linux desktop environment, but others prefer a Linux desktop environment.

**Configurability** Linux is much more configurable OS than Windows. Although both OSs provide the means to run specific programs at startup, change user interface themes, and so on, Linux's open source nature means that you can tweak any detail that you wish. Furthermore, you can pick any Linux variant that you like to get a head start on setting up the system as you see fit.

**Security** Advocates of each OS claim it's more secure than the other. They can do this because they focus on different security issues. Many of the threats to Windows come from viruses, which by and large target Windows and its huge installed user base. Viruses are essentially a nonissue for Linux; in Linux, security threats come mostly from break-ins involving misconfigured servers or untrustworthy local users.

For over two decades, Windows has dominated the desktop arena. In both homes and offices, users have become familiar with Windows and are used to popular Windows applications, such as Microsoft Office. Although Linux *can* be used in such environments, it's a less popular choice for a variety of reasons—its unfamiliarity, the fact that Windows comes preinstalled on most PCs, and the lack of any compelling Linux-only applications for most users.

Unix generally, and Linux in particular, on the other hand, have come to dominate the server market. Linux powers the web servers, email servers, file servers, and so on that make up the Internet and that many businesses rely on to provide local network services. Thus most people use Linux daily even if they don't realize it.

In most cases, it's possible to use either Linux or Windows on a computer and have it do an acceptable job. Sometimes, though, specific needs dictate the use of one OS or another. You might need to run a particular exotic program, for

instance, or your hardware might be too old for modern Windows or too new for Linux. In other cases, your own or your users' familiarity with one OS or the other may favor its use.

## What Is a Distribution?

Up until now, we've described Linux as if it were a single OS, but this isn't really the case. Many different Linux *distributions* are available, each consisting of a Linux kernel along with a set of utilities and configuration files. The result is a complete OS, and two Linux distributions can differ from each other as much as either differs from OS X or Windows. We therefore describe in more detail what makes up a distribution, what distributions are popular, and the ways in which distribution maintainers keep their offerings up-to-date.

## Creating a Complete Linux-Based OS

We've already described some of what makes up a Linux OS, but some details need reiteration or elaboration:



**A Linux Kernel** A Linux kernel is at the core of any Linux OS, of course. We've written this item as *a* Linux kernel because the Linux kernel is constantly evolving. Two distributions are likely to use slightly different kernels. Distribution maintainers also offer *patch* kernels—that is, they make small changes to fix bugs or add features.

**Core Unix Tools** Tools such as the GNU tool set, the X Window System, and the utilities used to manage disks are critical to the normal functioning of a Linux system. Most Linux distributions include more or less the same set of such tools, but as with the kernel, they can vary in versions and patches.

**Supplemental Software** Additional software, such as major server programs, desktop environments, and productivity tools, ship with most Linux distributions. As with core Unix software, most Linux distributions provide similar options for such software. Distributions sometimes provide their own “branding,” though, particularly in desktop environment graphics.

**Startup Scripts** Much of a Linux distribution's “personality” comes from the way it manages its startup process. Linux uses scripts and utilities to launch the dozens of programs that link the computer to a network, present a login prompt, and so on. These scripts and utilities vary between distributions, which means that they have different features and may be configured in different ways.

**An Installer** In order to be used, software must be installed, and most Linux distributions provide unique installation software to help you manage this important task. Thus two distributions may install in different ways, giving you different options for key features, such as disk layouts and initial user account creation.

The UNetbootin tool (<http://unetbootin.sourceforge.net>) can copy the files from a Linux installation disc image file to a USB flash drive.

Typically, Linux distributions are available for download from their websites. You can usually download a CD-R or DVD image file that you can then burn to an optical disc. When you boot the resulting disc, the installer runs, and you can install the OS. You can sometimes download an image that can be copied to a USB flash drive if your computer lacks an optical drive. There are also cloud versions of many Linux distributions, which allow you to download a complete Linux system to run in either a private virtual machine or on a commercial cloud such as Amazon or Google cloud services.

Some Linux installers come complete with all of the software you're likely to install. Others come with only minimal software and expect you to have a working Internet connection so that the installer can download additional software. If your computer isn't connected to the Internet, be sure to get the right type of installer.

## Exploring Common Linux Distributions



Depending on how you count, there are about a dozen major Linux distributions for desktop, laptop, and small server computers, and hundreds more that serve specialized purposes. Table 1.1 summarizes the features of the most important distributions.

**TABLE 1.1** Features of major Linux distributions

Distribution	Availability	Package format	Release cycle	Administrator skill requirements
Arch	Free	pacman	Rolling	Expert
CentOS	Free	RPM	Approximately 2-year	Intermediate
Debian	Free	Debian	2-year	Intermediate to expert
Fedora	Free	RPM	Approximately 6-month	Intermediate

Distribution	Availability	Package format	Release cycle	Administrator skill requirements
Gentoo	Free	ebuild	Rolling	Expert
Mint	Free	Debian	6-month	Novice to intermediate
openSUSE	Free	RPM	8-month	Intermediate
Red Hat Enterprise	Commercial	RPM	Approximately 2-year	Intermediate
Scientific	Free	RPM	Approximately 6-month	Intermediate to expert
Slackware	Free	tarballs	Irregular	Expert
SUSE Enterprise	Commercial	RPM	2–3 years	Intermediate
Ubuntu	Free	Debian	6-month	Novice to intermediate

These features require explanation:

**Availability** Most Linux distributions are entirely open source or free software; however, some include proprietary components and are for sale only, typically with a support contract. Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL) and SUSE Enterprise Linux are the two most prominent examples of this type of distribution. Both have completely free cousins. For RHEL, CentOS is a near-clone that omits the proprietary components, and Fedora is an open source version that serves as a testbed for technologies that may eventually be included in RHEL. For SUSE Enterprise, openSUSE is a free alternative.

**Package Format** Most Linux distributions distribute software in *packages*, which are collections of many files in one. Package software maintains a local database of installed files, making upgrades and uninstallations easy. The RPM Package Manager (RPM) system is the most popular one in the Linux world, but Debian packages are common, too. Other packaging systems work fine, but they are distribution-specific. Slackware is unusual in that it uses *tarballs* for its packages. These are package files created by the standard tar utility, which is used for backing up computers and for distributing source code, among other things. The

◀ Tarballs are similar to the zip files that are common on Windows. Chapter 8, “Searching, Extracting, and Archiving Data,” describes how to create and use tarballs.

tarballs that Slackware uses for its packages contain Slackware-specific information to help with package management. Gentoo is unusual because its package system is based on compiling most software from source code. This is time-consuming, but it enables experienced administrators to tweak compilation options to optimize the packages for their own hardware and software environments.

**Release Cycle** We describe release cycles in more detail shortly, in “Understanding Release Cycles.” As a general rule, distributions with short release cycles aim to provide the latest software possible, whereas those with longer release cycles strive to provide the most stable environments possible. Some try to have it both ways; for instance, Ubuntu releases long-term support (LTS) versions in April of even-numbered years. Its other releases aim to provide the latest software.

**Administrator Skill Requirements** The final column in Table 1.1 provides our personal estimation of the skill level required to administer a distribution. As you can see, we’ve described most Linux distributions as requiring “intermediate” skill to administer. Some, however, provide less in the way of user-friendly GUI administrative tools, and so require more skill. Ubuntu aims to be particularly easy to use and administer.

Most Linux distributions are available for at least two platforms—that is, CPU types: *x86* (also known as IA32, i386, and several variants) and *x86-64* (also known as AMD64, EM64T, and *x64*). Until about 2007, *x86* computers were the most common variety, but now *x86-64* computers have become the standard. If you have an *x86-64* computer, you can run either an *x86* or an *x86-64* distribution on it, although the latter provides a small speed improvement. More-exotic platforms, such as ARM (for tablets), PowerPC, Alpha, and SPARC, are available. Such platforms are mostly restricted to servers and to specialized devices (described shortly).

In addition to the mainstream PC distributions, several others are available that serve more specialized purposes. Some of these run on regular PCs, but others run on their own specialized hardware:

**Android** Many cell phones today use a Linux-based OS known as *Android*. Its user interface is similar to that of other smartphones, but underneath lies a Linux kernel and a significant amount of the same Linux infrastructure that you’ll find on a PC. Such phones don’t use X or typical desktop applications, though; instead, they run specialized applications for mobile phones.

**Network Appliances** Many broadband routers, print servers, and other devices that you plug into a local network to perform specialized tasks run Linux. You can sometimes replace the standard OS with a customized one if you want to add features to the device. Tomato ([www.polarccloud.com/tomato](http://www.polarccloud.com/tomato)) and

▶ Don’t be scared off by the “intermediate” classification of most distributions. This book’s purpose is to help you manage the essential features of such distributions.

▶ Android is best known as a mobile phone OS, but it can be used on other devices. Some tablets and e-book readers, for instance, run Android.

OpenWrt (<https://openwrt.org>) are two examples of such customized Linux distributions. Don't install such software on a whim, though; if done improperly, or on the wrong device, they can render the device useless!

**TiVo** This popular digital video recorder (DVR) uses a Linux kernel and a significant number of standard support programs, along with proprietary drivers and DVR software. Although many people who use them don't realize it, they are Linux-based computers under the surface.

**Parted Magic** This distribution, based at <http://partedmagic.com>, is a Linux distribution for PCs that's intended for emergency recovery operations. It runs from a single CD-R, and you can use it to access a Linux or Windows hard drive if the main installation won't boot.

Android, Linux-based network appliances, and TiVo are examples of *embedded systems* that use Linux. Such devices typically require little or no administrative work from users, at least not in the way that such tasks are described in this book. Instead, these devices have fixed basic configurations and guided setup tools to help inexperienced users set critical basic options, such as network settings and time zones.

We recommend that you download Parted Magic, or a similar tool, to have on hand in case you run into problems with your main Linux installation.

Certification Objective

## Understanding Release Cycles

Table 1.1 summarized the release cycles employed by a number of common Linux distributions. The values cited in that table are the time between releases. For instance, new versions of Ubuntu come out every six months, like clockwork. Most other distributions' release schedules provide some "wobble room"; if a release date slides a month, that may be acceptable.

After its release, a distribution is typically supported until sometime *after* the next version's release—typically a few months to a year or more. During this support period, the distribution's maintainers provide software updates to fix bugs and security problems. Once the support period has passed, you can continue to use a distribution, but you're on your own—if you need updated software, you'll have to compile it from source code yourself or hope that you can find a compatible binary package from another source. As a practical matter, therefore, it's generally a good idea to upgrade to the latest version before the support period ends. This fact makes distributions with longer release cycles appealing to businesses, since a longer time between installations minimizes disruptions and costs associated with upgrades.

Two of the distributions in Table 1.1 (Arch and Gentoo) have *rolling release cycles*. Such distributions have no version numbers in the usual sense; instead,

Certification Objective

upgrades occur in an ongoing manner. Using such a distribution makes it unnecessary ever to do a full upgrade, with all of the hassles that entails; however, you'll occasionally have to do a disruptive upgrade of one particular subsystem, such as a major upgrade in your desktop environment.

Certification  
Objective

Prior to the release of a new version, most distributions make prerelease versions available. *Alpha software* is extremely new and very likely to contain serious bugs, while *beta software* is more stable but nonetheless more likely to contain bugs than the final-release software. As a general rule, you should avoid using such software unless you want to contribute to the development effort by reporting bugs or unless you're desperate to have a new feature.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Linux is a powerful OS that you can use on everything from a smartphone to a supercomputer. At Linux's core is its *kernel*, which manages the computer's hardware. Built atop that are various utilities (many from the GNU project) and user applications. Linux is a clone of the Unix OS, with which it shares many programs. Mac OS X is another Unix OS, although one with a unique user interface. Although Windows shares many features with Unix, it's an entirely different OS, so software compatibility between Linux and Windows is limited.

Linux comes in many varieties, known as *distributions*, each of which has its own unique "flavor." Because of this variety, you can pick a Linux version that best suits your needs, based on its ease of use, release cycle, and other unique features.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ Make a list of the programs that you run as an ordinary user, including everything from a calculator applet to a major office suite. Look for equivalents at [www.linuxrsp.ru/win-lin-soft/table-eng](http://www.linuxrsp.ru/win-lin-soft/table-eng) or [www.linuxalt.com](http://www.linuxalt.com). Is there anything that you can't find? If so, try a web search to find an equivalent.
- ▶ Read more about two or three Linux distributions by perusing their web pages. Which distribution would you select for running a major web server? Which distribution sounds most appealing for use by office workers who use word processing and email?

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Which of the following is *not* a function of the Linux kernel?
  - A. Allocating memory for use by programs
  - B. Allocating CPU time for use by programs
  - C. Creating menus in GUI programs

(Continues)

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)*

- D. Controlling access to the hard drive
  - E. Enabling programs to use a network
2. Which of the following is an example of an embedded Linux OS?
    - A. Android
    - B. SUSE
    - C. CentOS
    - D. Debian
    - E. Fedora
  3. Which of the following is a notable difference between Linux and Mac OS X?
    - A. Linux can run common GNU programs, whereas OS X cannot.
    - B. Linux's GUI is based on the X Window System, whereas OS X's is not.
    - C. Linux cannot run on Apple Macintosh hardware, whereas OS X can run only on Apple hardware.
    - D. Linux relies heavily on BSD software, whereas OS X uses no BSD software.
    - E. Linux supports text-mode commands, but OS X is a GUI-only OS.
  4. True or false: The Linux kernel is derived from the BSD kernel.
  5. True or false: If you log in to a Linux system in graphical mode, you cannot use text-mode commands in that session.
  6. True or false: CentOS is a Linux distribution with a long release cycle.
  7. A Linux text-mode login prompt reads \_\_\_\_\_ (one word).
  8. A common security problem with Windows that's essentially nonexistent on Linux is \_\_\_\_\_.
  9. Prerelease software that's likely to contain bugs is known as \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
  10. Linux distributions that have no version number but instead release upgrades in an ongoing manner are said to have a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ release cycle.



# Understanding Software Licensing

*Software is a type* of intellectual property that is governed by copyright laws and, in some countries, patent laws. As a general rule, this makes it illegal to copy software unless you're the software's author. Open source software, however, relies on licenses, which are documents that alter the terms under which the software is released. As described in this chapter, open source licenses grant additional rights to software users.

In general, open source software owes a great deal to three organizations: the Free Software Foundation (FSF), the Open Source Initiative (OSI), and the Creative Commons (CC). Each organization has a distinct philosophy and role to play in the open source world. There are also numerous specific open source licenses, which are summarized at the end of this chapter, along with ways that businesses can use them.

- ▶ **Investigating software licenses**
- ▶ **The Free Software Foundation**
- ▶ **The Open Source Initiative**
- ▶ **The Creative Commons**
- ▶ **Using open source licenses**

## Investigating Software Licenses

Copyright law has existed for centuries and, as such, it wasn't designed with software in mind. Nonetheless, copyright law does apply to software. Licenses that authors apply to their software interact with copyright law to create the specific rights that you have—and *don't* have—to use, modify, and redistribute software. Thus you need to understand the basic principles, as well as the differences, between proprietary and open source license terms.

## Exploring Copyright Protection and Software

### Certification Objective

A *copyright* is, as the name implies, a legally recognized right to create a copy of something. In most countries, if you write a book, take a photograph, or create a computer program, you (and you alone) have the right to make copies of that book, photograph, or computer program. However, you can give others the right to make such copies, or even relinquish control of the copyright to somebody else.

Copyright laws vary from one country to another, but most countries signed the Berne Convention, an international agreement that requires countries to recognize each other's copyrights. That is, if Jacob writes a book (or opera, or computer program) in the United States, that work will be copyrighted not only in the United States, but also in Iceland, Kenya, the United Kingdom, and other countries that have ratified the treaty.

Because most copyright laws were written long before computers came into being, they frequently don't mesh well with the needs of computers. For instance, copyright laws forbid the copying of a work, but a computer program is useless without such copies. Examples of copies that must necessarily be made to run a program, or that are advisable for safety, include the following:

- ▶ A copy of the program from an installation medium to a hard drive or solid-state drive
- ▶ A copy of the program from the hard drive or solid-state drive to the computer's random access memory (RAM)
- ▶ A copy of the RAM into swap space
- ▶ A copy of the RAM into various smaller caches on the motherboard or CPU used to improve performance
- ▶ One or more hard drive or solid-state drive backups to protect against disk failures

Swap space is disk space that serves as a supplement to RAM. For example, if RAM fills up, the OS begins to use swap space as if it were RAM.

In the past, such copies were generally ignored on the principle of *fair use*—that is, exceptions that allow portions of copyrighted material to be copied. Other examples of fair use include quotes used in reviews or news reports and excerpts used in research or teaching. Today, copyright law explicitly recognizes the need to copy software to use it, at least in the United States.

## Using Licenses to Modify Copyright Terms

### Certification Objective

Although software is subject to copyright law, most software is released with a *license*, which is a legal document that claims to modify the rights granted by copyright law. In most cases, you don't sign such a license, although in some

## PATENTS, TRADEMARKS, AND SOFTWARE

Certification  
Objective

Copyright is one example of intellectual property, but there are many others. One of these is *patents*. A copyright protects a single creative work, which can be considered an expression of an idea, but a patent protects the *idea* itself. Patents typically apply to inventions, such as the proverbial “better mousetrap.”

In the United States, software patents are legal. Although you can’t patent an entire program, you can patent the algorithms that the program uses. Such patents are both common and controversial. Some open source programs don’t use certain file formats because the algorithms required to use them are patented and the patent-holders have threatened to sue unauthorized users. Critics of software patents contend that most such patents are trivial or obvious—two things that a patented invention must not be. Companies sometimes use software patents as a way to block another company from selling a product, or to demand payment from a company that sells a product.

In many other countries, software algorithms cannot be patented. Efforts are underway to change the relationships between software and patents—both to make software patentable in countries where it is not and to restrict or eliminate software patents in countries where software can currently be patented.

*Trademarks* are another type of intellectual property. These are names, logos, and similar identifiers of a specific company or product. Software and the companies that produce it often use trademarks, as do hardware companies. An individual with little real involvement in the Linux community trademarked the name Linux in 1994 and attempted to charge royalties on the name. After a lawsuit, the trademark was transferred to the Linux Mark Institute, or LMI ([www.linuxfoundation.org/programs/legal/trademark](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/programs/legal/trademark)).

As an end user, it is unlikely that you will need to deal with software patents or trademarks. Software patent and trademark issues play out at the corporation level. This contrasts with copyright issues, which can affect individuals who violate copyright law. If you work for a company that releases software, though, patent and trademark law could affect you. This is especially true if your software potentially violates a software patent or trademark. You should consult an attorney if you believe this might be the case.

Courts have often upheld the enforceability of click-through and similar licenses, although this result is not universal.

cases you must click a button to accept the license terms. In the past, licenses were sometimes printed on the boxes in which software was distributed. Such licenses are often called *end-user license agreements (EULAs)*, *click-through licenses*, *shrink-wrap licenses*, or *click-wrap licenses*. Open source software generally comes with a license in a file, often called COPYING.



Software licenses can modify copyright terms by making the terms either more or less restrictive. For example, the *General Public License* (GPL), which is the license used by the Linux kernel, grants you the right to redistribute the software, including both the source code and binaries. This represents a loosening of the restrictions provided by copyright law.

As a general rule, licenses for proprietary software provide restrictions on what would otherwise be your rights under copyright law, whereas open source licenses grant you additional rights. There can be exceptions to this rule, though; for instance, a *site license* is a license for a proprietary program that grants an organization the right to make a certain number of copies of the program—say, 100 copies of a word processor for all of the company’s computers.

## Looking at the Free Software Foundation



The Free Software Foundation (FSF) is a critical force in the open source world. Founded in 1985 by Richard Stallman, the FSF is the driving force behind the GNU’s Not Unix (GNU) project described in the previous chapter. The FSF has a certain philosophy, described next, which manifests itself in the GPL, which is FSF’s favored software license.

### Understanding the FSF Philosophy

The FSF advocates what it calls *free software*, which it defines in terms of freedom to do things you want to do with the software, not the price of the software. A common phrase used to make this distinction clear is “free as in speech, not free as in beer.”

The FSF defines four specific software freedoms:

- ▶ Freedom to use the software for any purpose
- ▶ Freedom to examine the source code and modify it as you see fit
- ▶ Freedom to redistribute the software
- ▶ Freedom to redistribute your modified software

These freedoms are similar to the principles espoused by the OSI, described shortly. However, there are some important differences in interpretation, also as described soon. The FSF elaborates on the implications of each of its principles, and their interactions, at [www.gnu.org/philosophy/free-sw.html](http://www.gnu.org/philosophy/free-sw.html).

In an ideal world, by the FSF’s standards, all software would be free—distributed with source code and all of the freedoms just outlined. Some Linux

Free software, as the FSF defines it, is different from *freeware*. This term generally refers to software that’s free of charge, but not necessarily free as in speech.

distributions meet this ideal in isolation, while other distributions include proprietary software. Sometimes, this software is freeware. At other times, it's a bit of proprietary code that enables the vendor to restrict redistribution and charge money to sell the software. Since free software is not necessarily free of charge, selling it is not a problem from the FSF's point of view. However, given the other freedoms, free software's price tends toward zero as it gets passed around.

The point of all this talk of freedom is to empower users—not just developers or companies. If you can modify a program that does *almost* what you want it to do so that it does *exactly* what you want it to do, that fact is a big advantage compared to a proprietary program. If you can then redistribute your modified version of the program, you can help others (assuming they want similar functionality). Thus the FSF philosophy, when applied, can create a benefit to the wider community.

The FSF philosophy and the licenses it inspires are often referred to as *copyleft*. This is a play on the word copyright, reflecting the fact that copyright provisions are used to ensure freedoms that are, in some respects, the exact opposite of what copyright was created to do—that is, to guarantee the freedom of users to copy software, rather than to restrict that right.

## Examining Free Software and the GPL

The legal expression of the FSF's principles comes in the form of the GPL (sometimes called the *GNU GPL*). Two versions of the GPL are common: version 2 and version 3. (The older version 1 is seldom used anymore.) Both versions of the GPL apply the four freedoms of the FSF philosophy to the licensed software. They also make explicit an implication of those four freedoms by stating that derivative works must also be released under the GPL. This clause prevents a company from wholly appropriating an open source program. For instance, many companies make Linux distributions, and some use Linux kernels that incorporate bug-fix “patches.” These kernels, like the mainstream Linux kernel, are all available under the GPL. No company could legally release a distribution based on a patched Linux kernel and then refuse to make its kernel patches available.

The GPL version 2 (or GPLv2 for short) was released in 1991, and it held sway for many years. In 2007, GPLv3 appeared, with the intention of closing what the FSF viewed as loopholes in the GPLv2, particularly with respect to changes in laws and practices since 1991. Specifically, the GPLv3 contains clauses that are intended to combat use of hardware restrictions that limit the FSF's four freedoms and to address issues related to software patents. Many new programs are now being released under the terms of the GPLv3, and many older programs

A Linux distribution is a collection of many programs that may use different individual licenses. No one license takes priority over the others.



now use the GPLv3 rather than the GPLv2. Some programs have not changed, though. Notable among these is the Linux kernel itself, which still uses the GPLv2. This is an important choice because it means that the Linux kernel can still be used at the heart of devices that are otherwise fairly closed, such as TiVos and Android-based phones. Many such devices use restrictive boot processes to prevent unauthorized kernels from booting—a process that the GPLv3 would forbid.

The acronym LGPL used to expand to Library GPL, but this was changed in 1999.

A variant of the GPL is the *Lesser GPL (LGPL)*. Developers often use the LGPL with *libraries*, which are collections of code that can be used by other programs. For instance, in Linux, libraries implement the features that create dialog boxes and menus. Many GUI programs use these features, and placing them in libraries not only helps programmers, but also reduces the size of the programs that use them. The wording of the GPL, however, would require that all of the programs that use a library with a GPL also be released under the terms of the GPL. This strong requirement motivated the creation of the LGPL, which is similar to the GPL but enables programs that use a library with a GPL to be released under another license—even a commercial license.

Another related license is the *GNU Free Documentation License (FDL)*, which is intended for use in documentation rather than by programs. The GPL, being written for software, doesn't apply perfectly to static documents, so the FSF created the GNU FDL to fill the gap. A notable user of the FDL is Wikipedia ([www.wikipedia.org](http://www.wikipedia.org)). All of its content is available under the terms of the GNU FDL.

## Looking at the Open Source Initiative

Certification  
Objective

Bruce Perens and Eric S. Raymond founded the *Open Source Initiative (OSI)* in 1998 as an umbrella organization for open source software in general. Its philosophy, described in more detail shortly, is similar to that of the FSF but differs in some important details. As a general rule, more software qualifies as open source than qualifies as free (in the way the FSF means), but precisely what qualifies depends on the open source definition and, in a strict sense, on what the OSI has approved in terms of its licenses.

## Understanding the Open Source Philosophy

In the 1980s and 1990s, the free software movement gathered momentum in certain circles, including academia and among hobbyists. Businesses,

however, were slow to adopt free software. Many who did adopt it did so reluctantly or even unwittingly—system administrators, pressed to perform their duties with minuscule budgets, would quietly install Linux, Apache, Samba, and other free software as a way to avoid having to buy expensive commercial alternatives.

The FSF's advocacy efforts were (and are) based on a strong moral imperative—*software should be free* in the FSF's view, with “free” defined as described earlier. This approach appeals to some people, but others—particularly businesses that want to make money selling software—find this type of advocacy strange at best and threatening at worst.

For these reasons, the OSI's creators designed their organization as a way to advocate for free software. By using a new term—*open source*—and by softening some of the FSF's moral imperatives, the OSI aims to promote open source software in the business world. The difference in tone from the FSF's moral imperative can be seen in a mission statement on the OSI's website ([www.open-source.org](http://www.open-source.org)):

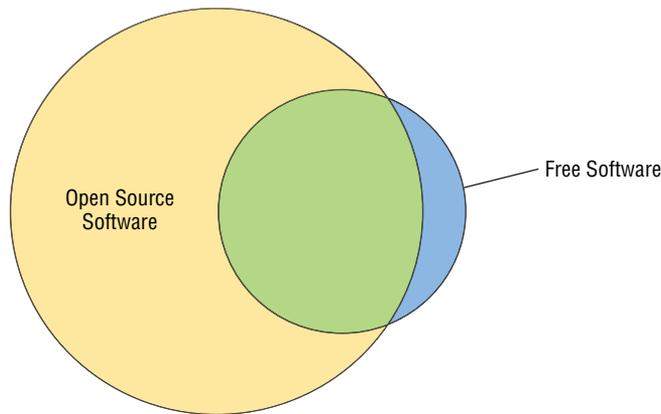
## OPEN SOURCE

**Open source is a development method for software that harnesses the power of distributed peer review and transparency of process. The promise of open source is better quality, higher reliability, more flexibility, lower cost, and an end to predatory vendor lock-in.**

Certification  
Objective

The biggest philosophical difference between the FSF and the OSI is reflected in a requirement of the GPL that derived works also be distributed under the GPL. The OSI has certified many licenses as being open source, including the GPL; however, many of these licenses lack similar restrictions. Software released under such licenses has, in the past, found its way into closed-source products. The OSI does not object to such a path, provided the software was licensed in a way that permits it. The FSF, on the other hand, explicitly forbade such appropriation for proprietary uses in its GPL.

As a general rule, free software, in the FSF's sense, is also open source software, although some licenses that the FSF recognizes as being free have not been approved by the OSI. Many open source licenses do not qualify as free by the FSF's definition, though. Figure 2.1 illustrates this relationship.



**FIGURE 2.1** Most free software is open source, but a significant amount of open source software is not free.

#### Certification Objective

Today, some tension exists between free software purists in the FSF's sense and the more pragmatic open source community. For the most part, however, the two share goals that are similar enough that their differences are minor. In fact, two terms, *free and open source software (FOSS)* and *free/libre open source software (FLOSS)*, are sometimes used as umbrella terms to refer explicitly to both types of software and development.

## Defining Open Source Software

The open source definition appears at [www.opensource.org/definition](http://www.opensource.org/definition). It consists of 10 principles, which are paraphrased here:

**Free Redistribution** The license must permit redistribution, including redistribution as part of a larger work.

**Source Code Availability** The author must make source code available and permit redistribution of source code and (if applicable) binary code.

**Permission to Derive Works** The license must permit others to modify the software and to distribute such modifications under the same license as the original.

**Respect for Source Code Integrity** The license may restrict redistribution of modified source code, but only if patch files may be distributed along with the original source code. The license may require that derived works change the software's name or version number.

#### Certification Objective

The OSI's 10 principles were derived from those expressed by the Debian GNU/Linux developers.

Note that the open source definition permits, but does not require, that the license require redistribution under the original license.

**No Discrimination Against Persons or Groups** The license must not discriminate against any person or group of people.

**No Discrimination Against Fields of Endeavor** The license must not forbid use of the program in any field, such as in business or by genetics researchers.

**Automatic License Distribution** The license must apply to anybody who receives the program, without needing a separate agreement.

**Lack of Product Specificity** The license must not require that the program be used or distributed as part of a larger program—that is, you may extract a single program from a larger collection and redistribute it alone.

**Lack of Restrictions on Other Software** The license must not impose restrictions on other software that's distributed along with the licensed software.

**Technology Neutrality** The license must not be restricted based on specific technologies or interfaces.

The first three of these principles are the most important, at least in terms of understanding the point of open source technology. The collection as a whole bears a strong resemblance to the FSF's four principles and the extended description of its implications on the FSF's web page ([www.gnu.org/philosophy/free-sw.html](http://www.gnu.org/philosophy/free-sw.html)). As already described, however, there are some differences, particularly with respect to licensing requirements for derived works.

## Looking at the Creative Commons

The Creative Commons (<http://creativecommons.org>) was founded by Lawrence Lessig. Its goal is to combat what its creators and supporters view as a creative culture that is increasingly tied to permissions granted (or *not* granted) by those who hold copyrights on earlier works. Much of our current culture is derived from earlier cultural works—for instance, the *Star Wars* movie collection is inspired, in part, by common myths and legends. *Star Wars* itself is copyrighted, however, which limits the rights of current artists to distribute works that are derivative of it, at least without permission.

The Creative Commons promotes its aims by providing six licenses that are designed for various purposes. You can select a license by answering a few questions on the Creative Commons website at <http://creativecommons.org/choose/>, such as whether you want to permit commercial use of your work.

The FSF and the OSI are dedicated to promoting software freedoms. The objectives of the Creative Commons are broader, however. Its licenses are aimed at audio recordings, video recordings, textual works, and so on, not just computer programs. Nonetheless, the Creative Commons as an organization helps promote the types of freedoms that also concern the FSF and the OSI.

## Using Open Source Licenses

As an individual user, you might not need to delve too deeply into open source license details. The principles behind the OSI guidelines guarantee that you have the right to use open source programs as you see fit, and even to redistribute those programs. If you're building a business, though, and particularly a business that creates or distributes open source software, you may need to better understand these licenses. Thus a few of them are described in more detail. Also, some of the ways that companies have found to use open source licenses as parts of their business models are included.

## Understanding Open Source Licenses

Every open source license has its own unique characteristics. These are mostly of interest to developers who might want to contribute to a software project, but on occasion they may be important to a system administrator. The major open source licenses include the following:

**GNU GPL and LGPL** As noted earlier, the Linux kernel uses the GPLv2, and many other Linux tools use the GPL (either version 2 or version 3). Many Linux libraries use the LGPL.

**BSD** The BSD license is used by the open source BSD OSs and by various software components developed for them. Unlike the GPL, the BSD license allows modifications to be distributed under other licenses. The latest versions (two-clause and three-clause) of this license are similar to the MIT license in brevity.

**MIT** The Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) was the original moving force behind the X Window System (X for short), and the MIT license (sometimes called the X11 license) continues to be used for Xorg-X11—the implementation of X included with many Linux distributions. The MIT license is unusually short.

Two BSD licenses are common: an older three-clause and a newer two-clause version. (The three-clause version is sometimes called the *new* or *revised* license, in reference to a still older version.)



**Apache** Like the BSD and MIT licenses, the Apache license is an open source license that permits redistribution under the same or another license. If a text file called NOTICE comes with the original work, it must be included in any derived work. This enables the original developer to provide contact or other information, even to users of heavily modified versions of the program.

**Artistic** The Artistic license was originally developed for the Perl programming language, but it has been used with other programs. It's filled with requirements and loopholes for those requirements. Most software that uses the Artistic license is shipped with the stipulation that this license is optional; the user may elect to follow the terms of some other license (usually the GPL) instead.

Many additional licenses meet the OSI's requirements. You can find a complete list on the Open Source Initiative website at [www.opensource.org/licenses/](http://www.opensource.org/licenses/).

The details of the various open source licenses are probably not important to most system administrators. You may use and redistribute any open source program as you wish. If you modify a program, though, you should be aware of redistribution requirements, particularly if you want to merge two or more programs or distribute a program under a modified license. You should also be aware that some Linux distributions may include software that doesn't qualify as open source. Some of this is commercial software, and some of it falls into a variant category.

One final concern when describing software licenses is the license for Linux as a whole. When you download an image file or buy a Linux package, the software you obtain uses many licenses—the GPL, the BSD license, the MIT license, and so on. Most of these licenses are open source, but some aren't. Many distributions ship with a few shareware or not-quite-open-source packages, such as the shareware XV graphics program. Retail packages sometimes include out-right commercial software. For this reason, you shouldn't copy a retail Linux package's disc unless you've researched the issue and found out that copying is OK. If the distribution vendor provides free-as-in-beer download links, copying is probably allowed.

Linux distributions include installation programs, configuration programs, and the like. These tools are usually all that a distribution packager can lay claim to in terms of copyright. Most distribution maintainers have made their installation and configuration routines available under the GPL or some other open source license, but this isn't always the case. Such details can turn what might seem like an open source OS into something that's not quite fully open

Certification  
Objective

As the name implies, the Apache license originated with the Apache web browser; however, it's used by many other projects as well.

Some combinations of open source licenses are *incompatible* with each other, meaning that you can't legally combine the code and release the modified version.

source. Debian maintains a policy of using only open source software in its main package set, although it lets freely redistributable but non–open source programs into its “non-free” package set.

Because a complete Linux distribution is composed of components using many licenses, it’s not useful to speak of a single copyright or license applying to the entire OS. Instead, you should think of a Linux distribution as a collection of products that comes with a unifying installation utility. The vast majority of all the programs use one open source license or another, though.

## Understanding Open Source Business Models

Certification  
Objective

Some Linux distributions, such as Debian, are maintained by volunteers or by not-for-profit organizations. Others, such as Red Hat Enterprise Linux, are maintained by a company that expects to make a profit. How then can a company make a profit if its core product is available for free on the Internet? Several approaches exist to making money from open source software, including the following:

**Services and Support** The product itself can be open source, and even given away for free, while the company sells services and support, such as training and a technical support phone line. For instance, a game might be open source but require a subscription to an online service to provide a full set of features.

**Dual Licensing** A company can create two versions of the product: one version is completely open source, and another adds features that are not available in the open source version. The open source version is then akin to the free samples that supermarkets often provide—it’s a way to draw in paying customers.

**Multiple Products** The open source product may be just one offering from the company, with revenue being generated by other product lines. These other product lines could be other software or some other product, such as manuals.

**Open Source Drivers** A special case of the preceding one is that of hardware vendors. They might opt to release drivers, or perhaps even hardware-specific applications, as open source as a way to promote their hardware.

**Bounties** *Bounties* are a crowdfunding method. Users can drive open source creation by offering to pay for new software or new features in existing software. Sites such as FOSS Factory ([www.fossfactory.org](http://www.fossfactory.org)) and Bountysource ([www.bountysource.com](http://www.bountysource.com)) can help bring together users, each of whom individually might not be able to offer enough money to motivate development, to entice programmers to write the desired code. With bounties, the programmer who completes the project first is allowed to collect the project’s accumulated funds.

When a hardware vendor releases an open source driver, the code reveals programming information about the vendor’s hardware. Thus some vendors are reluctant to release open source drivers.

**Donations** Many open source projects accept donations to help fund development. Although this isn't a commercial funding model in the usual sense, it does help fund the operations of organizations such as the FSF.

Beyond these commercial opportunities, of course, a great deal of open source software is developed in academia, by governments, nonprofit organizations, hobbyists, and so on. Even companies can be motivated to give back changes they make for themselves, because hoarding their changes will create more work—if an internal change is not given back to the original author, the change will have to be reapplied with each new release.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Software licensing can be complex, and it's a topic that seldom interests technical people. Nonetheless, license terms can affect how the software community as a whole functions and therefore how software evolves over time. Linux is dominated by a handful of open source licenses, which permit (and sometimes require) that changes remain free. Such licenses typically impose few or no restrictions on how you can use the software. This contrasts with proprietary licenses, which are often loaded with restrictions. Organizations such as the FSF, the OSI, and the Creative Commons promote open source licenses. The OSI in particular tries to convince businesses to adopt open source licenses, advocating business models that employ open source as a way to generate revenue.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ Look up the GPLv2, GPLv3, and BSD two-clause licenses. ([www.opensource.org/licenses/](http://www.opensource.org/licenses/) is a good place to find them all.) Read and compare them. Which would you use if you were to write an open source program?
- ▶ Read the OSI mission statement (on its About page at [www.opensource.org/about](http://www.opensource.org/about)) and the Our Core Work section of the FSF's About page ([www.fsf.org/about/](http://www.fsf.org/about/)).

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Which of the following is not required in order for software to be certified as open source?
  - A. The license must not discriminate against people or groups of people.
  - B. The license must not require that the software be distributed as part of a specific product.
  - C. The license must require that changes be distributed under the same license.

*(Continues)*

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)*

- D. The program must come with source code, or the author must make it readily available on the Internet.
  - E. The license must automatically apply to anybody who acquires the software.
2. Which is true of Linux distributions as a whole?
- A. They're covered by the GPL or the BSD license, depending on the distribution.
  - B. Sometimes they may not be copied because of the non–open source software they may contain.
  - C. They may be copied only after software using the MIT license is removed.
  - D. They all completely conform to the principles of the open source movement.
  - E. They all qualify as free software, as the FSF uses the term.
3. Which of the following is a key part of the FSF's philosophy?
- A. Developers should use the latest version of the FSF's GPL.
  - B. Users should have the right to modify free software and distribute it under a commercial license.
  - C. Developers should write software only for free operating systems such as GNU/Linux.
  - D. Users should engage in civil disobedience by copying proprietary software.
  - E. Users must have the right to use software as they see fit.
4. True or false: Copyright law governs the distribution of software in most countries.
5. True or false: The FSF's free software definition and the OSI's 10 principles of open source software both require that users have the ability to examine a program's workings—that is, its source code.
6. True or false: Because their hardware designs are proprietary, hardware vendors cannot release open source drivers for their products.
7. A license created by the FSF and often used for libraries is the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. An organization devoted to promoting open source–like principles in fields such as video and audio recordings is the \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The FSF's general principles are summarized by the term \_\_\_\_\_, which refers to using copyright laws for purposes that are in some ways contrary to copyright's original intent.
10. Users can motivate programmers to work on open source projects by offering a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ to whomever completes the project first.

# Investigating Linux's Principles and Philosophy

*You can frequently select* a product or technology on purely pragmatic grounds—what OS works well for a given task, which software suite is the least expensive, and so on. Sometimes, though, understanding the principles and philosophy that underlie a technology can be useful, and knowing these might even guide your choice.

This is true of some Linux users; the open source model of Linux, which we introduced in Chapter 1, “Selecting an Operating System,” has implications that can affect how Linux works. Furthermore, some in the Linux world can become quite passionate about these principles. Whether or not you agree with these individuals, understanding their point of view can help you appreciate the Linux culture, which you’ll find in the workplace, online, at conferences, and so on.

This chapter covers these issues, beginning with information on Linux’s origins and its development over time up to the present. We then describe open source principles and how they can affect the way an open source OS works in the real world. Finally, we describe some of the roles in which Linux can work—as an embedded OS, as a desktop or laptop OS, and as a server OS.

- ▶ **Exploring Linux through the ages**
- ▶ **Using open source software**
- ▶ **Understanding OS roles**

## Exploring Linux through the Ages

Although Linux’s birth date of 1991 is recent by most historical standards, in the computer world 25 years is an eternity. The software and culture in the early 1990s, and even before then, has conveyed quite a legacy to today’s

software world. After all, what we use today is built atop the foundation that was created in the past. Thus looking at how Linux originated will help you understand Linux as it exists today.

## Understanding Linux's Origins

Computers today can be classified in much the same way as in 1991, although some details have changed. A notable addition are embedded computers, as in smartphones.

In 1991, as is also true today, computers were classified by their sizes and capabilities. Computers could belong to any of a handful of categories, ranging from desktop personal computers (PCs) to supercomputers. *x86*-based computers, which are the direct ancestors of today's PCs, dominated the PC marketplace of 1991; however, other types of PCs were available, including Macs. Such computers generally used different CPUs and ran their own custom OSs.

In 1991, most PCs ran Microsoft's Disk Operating System (MS-DOS, PC-DOS, or DOS). DOS was extremely limited by today's standards; this single-tasking OS (capable of running only one application at a time) didn't even take full advantage of the memory or CPUs available at the time. The versions of Microsoft Windows available in 1991 ran on top of DOS. Although the initial versions of Windows helped to work around some of DOS's limitations, they didn't fundamentally fix any of them. These early versions of Windows employed *cooperative multitasking*, for instance, in which programs could voluntarily give up CPU time to other processes. The DOS kernel could not wrest control from a program that hogged CPU time.

Unix was not the only multiuser, multitasking OS in 1991. Others, such as Virtual Memory System (VMS), were available. Unix is most relevant to Linux's history, though.

Above the PC level, Unix was a common OS in 1991. Compared to DOS and the version of Windows of that time, Unix was a sophisticated OS. Unix supported multiple accounts and provided true *preemptive multitasking*, in which the kernel could schedule CPU time for programs, even if the programs didn't voluntarily give up control. These features were practical necessities for many servers and for multiuser computers such as minicomputers and mainframes.

As time progressed, the capabilities of each class of computer have grown. By most measures, today's PCs have the power of the minicomputers or even the mainframes of 1991. The OSs used on the PCs of 1991 didn't scale well to more powerful hardware. Just having more computing power itself, however, didn't remove the limitations of DOS. For this reason, DOS and its small-computer contemporaries have been largely abandoned in favor of Unix and other alternatives.

Today's versions of Windows are not derived from DOS. Instead, they use a new kernel that shares many design features with VMS.

In 1991, Linus Torvalds was a student at the University of Helsinki, studying computer science. He was interested in learning about both Unix and the capabilities of the new *x86* computer he'd just purchased. Torvalds began the program that would become the Linux kernel as a low-level terminal emulator—a program to connect to his university's larger computers. As his program grew, he began adding features that turned his terminal program into something that could be better described as an OS kernel. Eventually, he began

writing with the goal of creating a Unix-compatible kernel—that is, a kernel that could run the wide range of Unix software that was available at the time.

Unix's history, in turn, stretched back two more decades, to its origin at AT&T in 1969. Because AT&T was a telephone monopoly in the United States at that time, it was legally forbidden from selling software. Therefore, when its employees created Unix, AT&T basically gave the OS away. Universities were particularly enthusiastic about adopting Unix, and some began modifying it, because AT&T made the source code available. Thus Unix had a two-decade history of open software development to start. Most Unix programs were distributed as source code, because Unix ran on a wide variety of hardware platforms—binary programs made for one machine would seldom run on a different machine.

Early on, Linux began to tap into this reservoir of available software. As noted in Chapter 1, early Linux developers were particularly keen on the GNU project's software, so Linux quickly accumulated a collection of GNU utilities. Much of this software had been written with workstations and more-powerful computers in mind, but because computer hardware kept improving, it ran fine on the x86 PCs of the early 1990s.

Linux quickly acquired a devoted following of developers who saw its potential to bring workstation-class software to the PC. These people worked to improve the Linux kernel, to make the necessary changes in existing Unix programs so that they would work on Linux, and to write Linux-specific support programs. By the mid-1990s, several Linux distributions existed, including some that survive today. (Slackware was released in 1993 and Red Hat in 1995, for example.)

◀ The 386BSD OS was a competing Unix-like OS in the early 1990s. Today it has forked into several related OSs: FreeBSD, NetBSD, OpenBSD, DragonFly BSD, and PC-BSD.

## THE MICROKERNEL DEBATE

Linux is an example of a monolithic kernel, which is a kernel that does everything a kernel is supposed to do in one big process. In 1991, a competing kernel design, known as a microkernel, was all the rage. Microkernels are much smaller than monolithic kernels; they move as many tasks as they can into nonkernel processes and then manage the communications between processes.

Soon after Linux's release, Linus Torvalds engaged in a public debate with Andrew Tanenbaum, the creator of the Minix OS that Torvalds used as an early development platform for Linux. Minix uses a microkernel design, and Tanenbaum considered Linux's monolithic design to be backward.

As a practical matter for an end user, either design works. Linux and the BSD-derived kernels use monolithic designs, whereas modern versions of Windows, the GNU HURD, and Minix are examples of microkernels. Some people still get worked up over this distinction, though.

## Seeing Today's Linux World

By the mid-1990s, the most important features of Linux as it exists today had been established. Changes since then have included the following:

**Improvements in the Kernel** The Linux kernel has seen massive changes since 1991, when it lacked many of the features that we rely on today. Improvements include the addition of networking features, innumerable hardware drivers, support for power management features, and support for many non-x86 CPUs.

**Improvements in Support Tools** Just as work has progressed on the Linux kernel, improvements have also been made to the support programs on which it relies—the compilers, shells, GUIs, and so on.

**Creation of New Support Tools** New support tools have emerged over the years. These range from simple and small utilities to big desktop environments. In fact, some of these tools, such as modern desktop environments, are far more obvious to the end user than is the kernel itself.

**Creation of New Distributions** As noted earlier, Slackware dates to 1993 and Red Hat (the predecessor to Red Hat Enterprise Linux, CentOS, and Fedora) originated in 1995. Other distributions have emerged in the intervening years, and some have been quite important. The Android OS used on smartphones and tablets, for instance, has become very influential over the past decade.

Linux's roots remain very much in the open source software of the 1980s and 1990s. Although a typical desktop or embedded OS user is likely to perceive the OS through the lens of the GUI, much of what happens under the surface happens because of the Linux kernel and open source tools, many of which have existed for decades.

## Using Open Source Software

The philosophies that underlie much software development for Linux are different from those that drive most software development for Windows. These differing philosophies affect how you obtain the software, what you can do with it, and how it changes over time. This section describes these principles. We also describe how Linux functions as a sort of “magnet,” integrating software from many sources into one place.

## Understanding Basic Open Source Principles

Broadly speaking, software can be described as coming in several forms, each with different expectations about payment, redistribution, and users' rights. The

number of categories varies depending on the depth of analysis and the prejudices of the person doing the categorization. As a starting point, however, four categories will do:

**Commercial Software** Individuals or companies develop commercial software with the intent to sell it for a profit. Developers generally keep the source code for commercial software secret, which means that users can't normally make changes to the software except to alter configuration settings that the software supports. In the past, commercial software was sold in stores or by mail order, but today it's often sold via downloads from the Internet. Redistributing commercial software is generally illegal. Microsoft Windows and Microsoft Office are common examples of commercial software.

**Shareware Software** From a legal perspective, *shareware* software is similar to commercial software in that it's copyrighted and the author asks for payment. The difference is that shareware is distributed on the Internet or in other ways and "sold" on an honor system—if you use the software beyond a trial period, you're expected to pay the author. Shareware was common in 1991 and is still available today, but it's rare.

**Freeware Software** Freeware, like shareware, is available for free. Unlike shareware authors, though, the authors of freeware don't ask for payment. Sometimes, freeware is a stripped-down version of a more complete shareware or commercial program. At other times, the authors make it available for free to promote another product. Examples include Windows drivers for many hardware devices or the Adobe Reader program for reading Portable Document Format (PDF) files. As with commercial and shareware programs, freeware generally comes without source code.

**Open Source Software** Open source software is defined by a set of 10 principles, available at [www.opensource.org/docs/osd](http://www.opensource.org/docs/osd). The most important of these principles are the right of the user to redistribute the program, the availability of source code, and the right of the user to make and distribute changed versions of the program. These principles mean that users can alter open source programs to suit their own needs, even in ways or for purposes not supported by the original author.

Variants within each of these categories exist, as well as hybrids that don't quite fit into any category. For instance, the Open Source Initiative maintains a list of licenses that it has approved as fulfilling its criteria ([www.opensource.org/licenses](http://www.opensource.org/licenses)). However, developers sometimes release software using obscure licenses or using licenses that impose conditions that run afoul of one of the more obscure OSI rules. Such software is technically not open source, but it might be closer to open source than to another category.

Freeware should not be confused with *free software*, which is closely related to open source software. Chapter 3, "Understanding Software Licensing," describes free software in more detail.

Certification  
Objective

Chapter 2 covers specific open source licenses in greater detail.

The basic idea behind open source software is that software developed in a transparent manner is likely to be superior to software developed in a closed manner. This superiority (and arguments against it) is based on the following features:

The principle of exposing source code to the community resulting in better code is sometimes referred to as Linus's law, which was stated by Eric S. Raymond in *The Cathedral and the Bazaar*: "Given enough eyeballs, all bugs are shallow."

**Better Code** Exposing source code to the community at large means that it can be reviewed, judged, and improved upon by any interested party. Obscure bugs might be found and squashed, whereas they might linger and cause problems in a closed-source product. On the other hand, the validity of this claim is not well supported by research, and smaller projects might not gain much in the way of interest from other programmers, so they might not benefit from outside code review.

**More Flexibility** By providing users with the source code, an open source project gives users the ability to customize the software for their own needs. If users submit changes back to those individuals who maintain the software, or release them as a new branch of the project, then everybody can benefit from such changes. Of course, critics would argue that this flexibility is a benefit only to those with the necessary skill and time to make such changes, or to those with the money to hire somebody to do it.

**Lower Cost** Although the open source definition does not forbid the sale of software, the redistribution requirements mean that open source software ends up being available free of charge. If you want support, on the other hand, you may need to purchase a support contract, which can reduce or eliminate the cost benefits.

**Lack of Vendor Lock-in** The developers of some proprietary products, and particularly very popular ones, can make it difficult for competing products by using proprietary file formats or standards and by not supporting more open standards. Open source tools are less subject to such problems, since they can be modified to support open standards, even if they don't initially do so. As a practical matter, though, even proprietary file formats and protocols are usually reverse-engineered, so vendor lock-in usually ends up being a temporary problem rather than a permanent one.

Of course, within the Linux community the general consensus is that each of these factors is a real point in favor of Linux, and of open source software in general; the downsides noted are generally regarded as minor when compared to the advantages. In the end, you'll need to make up your own mind on these matters after using different types of software.

## Linux as a Software Integrator

Soon after Unix was created, the OS fragmented into a set of loosely affiliated OSs. These OSs were incompatible on the binary level but more or less

compatible on the source-code level. This is still true today. You can take the same program and compile it for FreeBSD, OS X, and Linux, and it will work the same on all three platforms—but the compiled binaries made for one platform won't work on the others.

There are exceptions to this rule, though. Some programs rely on features that are available on just some Unix-like OSs. Others have quirks that make it impossible to compile them on some OSs. If a program falls into disuse, it may become unusable on newer OSs because it relies on compiler or OS features that have changed. Such problems tend to be ironed out over time, but they do crop up periodically.

Because of Linux's popularity, most open source Unix programs compile and work fine on Linux. Commercial programs for Linux also exist, although most of these are obscure or specialized. In any event, Linux has become an OS that most open source Unix programs must support. This effect is so strong that many projects now target Linux as the primary platform.

## Understanding OS Roles

Computers fill many roles in the world, and as computers have become ever more common and less expensive, those roles have multiplied. Linux can serve as the OS for most of these roles, each of which draws on its own subset of support utilities. Some of these roles also require tweaking the kernel itself. We briefly describe three of these roles: embedded computers, desktop and laptop computers, and server computers.

### Embedded Computers

As noted in Chapter 1, embedded computers are specialized devices that fulfill a specific purpose. Examples include the following:

**Mobile Phones** Modern mobile phones use computers with OSs that range from simple to complex. Linux powers some of these mobile phones, usually in the form of the Android OS.

**E-book Readers** These devices, like mobile phones, are specialized computers and so use an OS to power them. For many current e-book readers, that OS is Linux—either a custom Linux version or Android.

**DVRs** Digital video recorders (DVRs), which record TV shows for later viewing, are computers with specialized software. Some of these, including the popular TiVo models, run Linux.

#### Certification Objective

Apple, Microsoft, and other vendors provide their own OSs for mobile phones.

The MythTV package ([www.mythtv.org](http://www.mythtv.org)) can turn an ordinary PC into a Linux-based DVR, although you'll need a TV tuner and other specific hardware to make it work.

**Automotive Computers** Automobiles have included computers for years. These have mostly been tucked out of the way to monitor and control the engine and other automotive systems; however, modern cars increasingly come with computers that users more readily identify as being computers. They manage Global Positioning System (GPS) navigation systems, manage collision avoidance, regulate emergency braking, control the audio system, and even provide Internet access.

**Appliances** Televisions, refrigerators, and other appliances are increasingly using computers to download software updates, monitor energy use, and for other purposes.

You might think of tablet computers as falling into this category as well, although they can more closely resemble desktop or laptop computers. The distinction is mainly one of how much control the user has over the OS; embedded devices are used, not maintained, by end users. The system administration tasks described in this book are done at the factory or by using much simpler and more specialized user interfaces.

## Desktop and Laptop Computers

Certification  
Objective

Linux began life on a desktop computer, and although Linux doesn't come close to dominating that market, desktop computers are a good way to begin learning about Linux. Laptop computers are similar to desktop computers from a system administration perspective; both types of computers are often used by a small number of people for productivity tasks, such as word processing, Web browsing, and managing digital photos. For brevity, we'll use the term *desktop* to refer to both types of computers from here on.

Desktop computers are similar to another class of computer, known as *workstations*. Workstations tend to be more powerful and specialized, and they often run Unix or Linux.

Linux software for such tasks is widely available and is quite good, although some people prefer commercial counterparts, such as Microsoft Office or Adobe Photoshop, that aren't available for Linux. This preference for a few specific commercial products is part of why Microsoft Windows continues to dominate the desktop market. Some people have speculated that the open source development model doesn't lend itself to the creation of popular GUI applications because software developers tend to be too technically oriented to appreciate fully the needs of less technically capable users. Without an explicit way to require developers to fulfill these needs, which for-profit companies create, open source software projects lag behind their commercial counterparts in usability. This view is not universally shared, though, and at worst, open source projects lag behind their commercial counterparts just a bit.

Specific software that's required on most Linux-based desktop computers includes the following:

- ▶ The X Window System GUI (X for short)
- ▶ A popular desktop environment, such as GNOME, KDE, Xfce, or Unity
- ▶ A web browser, such as Mozilla Firefox
- ▶ An email client, such as Mozilla Thunderbird or Evolution
- ▶ A graphics editor, such as the GNU Image Manipulation Program (GIMP)
- ▶ An office suite, such as Apache OpenOffice.org or the similar LibreOffice

Additional requirements vary depending on the user's needs. For instance, one user might need multimedia editing tools, whereas another might need scientific data analysis software.

Linux distributions such as Fedora and Ubuntu typically install these popular desktop tools by default, or as a group by selecting a single install-time option. These distributions are also designed for relatively easy maintenance so that users with only modest skill can install the OS and keep it running over time.

## Server Computers

Server computers can be almost identical to desktop computers in terms of their hardware, although servers sometimes require bigger hard drives or better network connections, depending on how they're used. Many popular network server programs were written for Unix or Linux first, making these platforms the best choice for running them. Examples include the following:

- ▶ Web servers, such as Apache
- ▶ Email servers, such as Sendmail and Postfix
- ▶ Databases, such as MySQL
- ▶ File servers, such as the Network File System (NFS) or Samba
- ▶ Print servers, such as the Common Unix Printing System (CUPS) or Samba
- ▶ Domain Name System (DNS) servers, such as the Berkeley Internet Name Domain (BIND)
- ▶ Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) servers, such as the Internet Systems Consortium's (ISC's) dhcpd

Remote login servers enable users to run desktop-style programs on a computer remotely. Therefore, they're sometimes found on desktop systems.

- ▶ Time servers, such as the Network Time Protocol (NTP)
- ▶ Remote login servers, such as Secure Shell (SSH) or Virtual Network Computing (VNC)

In a large organization, each of these services may have a distinct associated server computer. It's possible, though, for one computer to run many of these server programs simultaneously.

Most of these servers do not require a GUI, so server computers can do without X, desktop environments, or the typical desktop programs that you'll find on a desktop computer. One of Linux's advantages over Windows is that you can run the computer without these elements, and you can even uninstall them completely. Doing so means that the GUI won't be needlessly consuming system resources such as RAM. Furthermore, if an item such as X isn't running, any security bugs it might harbor become unimportant. Some distributions, such as Debian, Arch, and Gentoo, eschew GUI configuration utilities. This makes these distributions unfriendly to new users, but the reliance on text-mode configuration tools is not a problem to experienced administrators of server computers.

The people who maintain large server computers are generally technically quite proficient and can often contribute directly to the open source server projects that they use. This close association between users and programmers can help keep server projects on the cutting edge of real-world requirements.

Note that the distinction between desktop and server computers is not absolute; a computer can run a mixture of both types of software. For instance, you might configure desktop computers in an office environment to run file server software. This configuration enables users to share their work more easily with others in the office. In a home or small office setting, running other servers on desktop computers can obviate the need to buy specialized hardware to fulfill those roles.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Linux's development history is tied to that of Unix and to open source development in general. Open source software is provided with source code and with the right to modify and redistribute the source code. This guarantees your ability to use the software in ways that the original author did not anticipate or support, provided that you have the knowledge and time to alter it, or the resources to hire somebody else to do so. These open source principles have led to a great deal of popular software, particularly in the server arena; however, open source developers have been less able to capture the general public's excitement with applications designed for desktop computers.

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)***SUGGESTED EXERCISES**

- ▶ Read the Features web page on FreeBSD, [www.freebsd.org/features.html](http://www.freebsd.org/features.html), a competitor to Linux. How would you say that it differs from Linux?
- ▶ Research the features of two or three open source programs that interest you, such as Apache, LibreOffice, and Mozilla Firefox. Do the feature lists seem complete? Are there features missing that are present in commercial counterparts?

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

1. What type of multitasking does Linux use?
  - A. Preemptive
  - B. Multiuser
  - C. Cooperative
  - D. Single-tasking
  - E. Single-user
2. Which of the following is a characteristic of all open source software?
  - A. The software cannot be sold for a profit; it must be distributed free of charge.
  - B. It must be distributed with both the source code and binaries.
  - C. Users are permitted to redistribute altered versions of the original software.
  - D. The software was originally written at a college or university.
  - E. The software must be written in an interpreted language that requires no compilation.
3. Which of the following programs is *most* likely to be installed and regularly used on a desktop computer that runs Linux?
  - A. Apache
  - B. Postfix
  - C. Android
  - D. Evolution
  - E. BIND
4. True or false: VMS was a common OS on x86 PCs at the time Linux was created.
5. True or false: Some DVRs run Linux.
6. True or false: A Linux computer being used as a server generally does not require X.
7. Linux uses a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ kernel design, as contrasted with a microkernel design.
8. A type of software that's distributed for free but that requires payment on the honor system if a person uses it is called \_\_\_\_\_.
9. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ computer is likely to run a word processor and web browser.
10. The \_\_\_\_\_ software package is an example of a web server written for the Linux server environment.



## Using Common Linux Programs

*This chapter begins a* more hands-on look at Linux, as opposed to the more abstract information presented in the previous chapters. This chapter starts with a look at Linux desktop environments, including information on the most common desktop environments and their basic uses. If you're using a desktop environment, chances are good that you're doing so in order to run productivity software. Thus some common productivity packages for Linux are described. In addition, you likely will want to install additional productivity software, so software package management is briefly covered at the chapter's end.

Another major use of a Linux system is as a network server, so a few common server programs that you may encounter are covered. Although you might not need to write programs, you may need to compile programs from source code, so you should also be familiar with the common Linux programming tools covered in this chapter.

- ▶ **Using a Linux desktop environment**
- ▶ **Working with productivity software**
- ▶ **Using server programs**
- ▶ **Managing programming languages**
- ▶ **Handling software packages**

### Using a Linux Desktop Environment

Chances are that your first experience with a working Linux system will involve a *desktop environment*. A desktop environment is a set of programs that control the screen, and it also provides small utility programs to perform tasks such as managing files. Linux provides several desktop environment options, so if you don't like one, you can choose another. In addition

to presenting information on available desktop environments, this section describes a few tools that you can use to launch programs and manage files.

## Choosing a Desktop Environment

Depending on your Linux distribution and installation options, chances are good that your system has more than one desktop environment available. The most common desktop environments are as follows:

▶  
A *widget set* is a library that handles GUI features such as menus and dialog boxes. Qt and GTK+ (part of the GNU project) are two popular widget sets on Linux today.

**KDE** The K Desktop Environment, or KDE ([www.kde.org](http://www.kde.org)), is a popular desktop environment for Linux. It's the default desktop environment for Mandriva and openSUSE. It includes many powerful tools that integrate together well. It's built using the Qt widget set.

**GNOME** GNOME ([www.gnome.org](http://www.gnome.org)) is also popular in the Linux desktop environment arena. It is the default desktop environment for the Fedora and Debian distributions. GNOME is built atop the GIMP Toolkit (GTK+) widget set. Like KDE, GNOME includes many powerful tools that work together. GNOME aims to provide an easy-to-use desktop environment.

**LXDE** The Lightweight X11 Desktop Environment, or LXDE (<http://lxde.org>), is, as its full name suggests, intended to consume few resources and therefore works well on old or modest computers. It is also built on the GTK+ widget set. LXDE is typically the default desktop environment on Linux distributions whose primary goal is to consume as few resources as possible, while still being fully functional, such as Ubuntu.

**Unity** Canonical, publisher of the Ubuntu distribution, released the Unity desktop environment (<http://ubuntu.unity.com>) back in 2010. It became Ubuntu's default desktop environment in 2011. Unity aims for simplicity and to provide a consistent desktop environment across various desktop and mobile platforms.

**Xfce** This popular desktop environment can be found at [www.xfce.org](http://www.xfce.org). It was originally modeled on a commercial desktop environment known as CDE, but it is built using the GTK+ widget set. Xfce provides more configurability than GNOME or Unity, and it aims to consume fewer system resources than most other desktop environments.

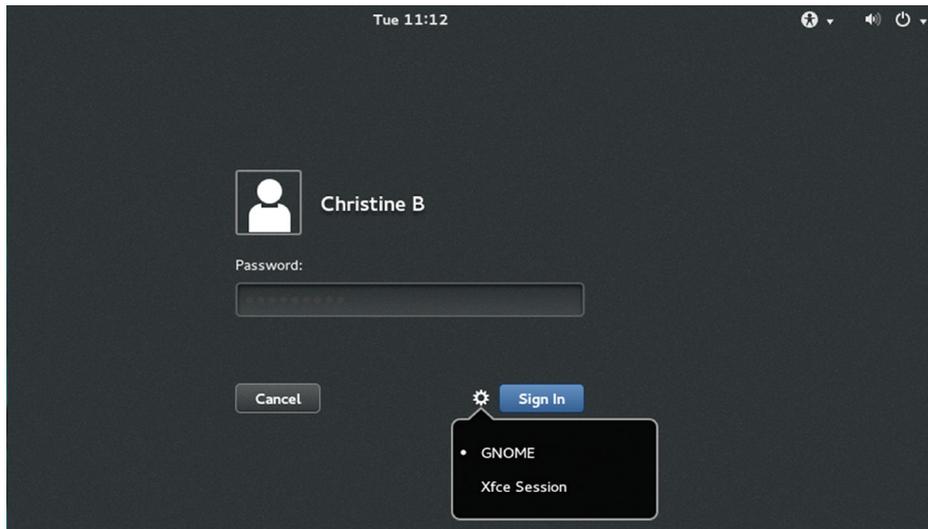
**Build Your Own** It's possible to build a desktop environment of your own from components that you like. Because this can be a rather complex task, it's best to start with detailed guidance. Open your favorite web search engine, and type in **how to create your own Linux desktop environment** to find specific information on building your custom desktop. At a minimum,

you need a window manager. However, for the configuration to be a true desktop environment, you'll need other components, such as a file manager and small productivity tools. All of the components need to be accessible from some sort of menu system.

Unfortunately, it's impossible to give guidelines indicating when one desktop environment works better than another. However, the following recommendations can help. New users who are accustomed to Windows or Mac OS will probably be happiest with KDE. The KDE environment is similar to these traditional desktop operating systems' environments. GNOME and Unity aim for ease of use, and so they can also be good choices for the inexperienced. Users who are familiar with commercial Unix OSs might give Xfce a try. Xfce and LXDE are also good choices on systems that are light on RAM or have low-powered CPUs. People who like to customize everything or who have less-capable computers should investigate the build-your-own approach.

Before you decide to stick with a particular desktop environment, you may want to try out two or three of them. In most cases, you can install multiple environments by using a package manager, as described later in this chapter and in more detail in Chapter 9, "Exploring Processes and Process Data."

After your desktop environment is installed, you select it when you log into the computer via a menu. The example in Figure 4.1 shows a Fedora system login screen. In this case, you must click the Gear button next to the Sign In button to



**FIGURE 4.1** GUI login managers usually provide a selection of desktop environments from which you can choose.

▶  
Password selection is extremely important. Chapter 13, “Creating Users and Groups,” covers this topic.

access the menu. Note that these two buttons do not appear until after you have selected a username and are ready to type in the password. The menu in Figure 4.1 shows GNOME and Xfce as the desktop environment choices. Menu choices on your Linux system will vary, depending on which desktop environments were installed by default and which ones were added manually. How to select a desktop environment varies from one system to another, so you may need to peruse your login screen’s options to select the environment that you want.

## Launching Programs

Certification Objective

Most desktop environments provide several ways to launch programs. Details can vary considerably from one environment to another. However, useful examples include the following:

**Desktop Menus** Many desktop environments provide menus along a top, bottom, or side edge of the screen. One or more items in these menus can give you access to a preselected set of applications.

**Desktop Icons** Some desktop environments enable you to place icons in the main area of the desktop. Clicking or double-clicking these icons then launches the applications that they represent. This approach generally requires customization. Some default configurations place a few applications in the main desktop area.

**Panels** Some desktop environments provide panels, typically located on the sides of the screen, in which icons for common applications appear. Unity uses such a configuration by default, as does GNOME 3 (a version of the GNOME desktop environment)—although in the case of GNOME 3, the panel appears only when you click the Activities item in the upper-left corner of the screen.

**Context Menus** You can sometimes right-click in an unused part of the screen to obtain a context menu with a variety of options, which may include the option to run programs.

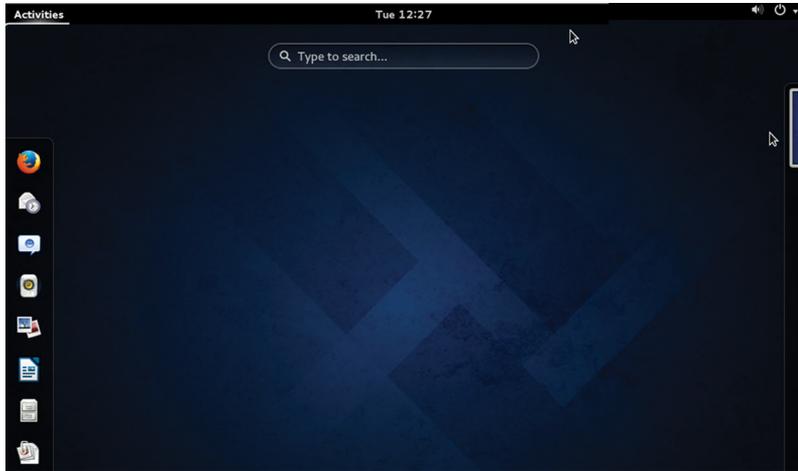
**Searching for Programs** Some desktop environments, such as GNOME 3, provide a prominent search feature that you can use to find a program by name. Typically, you type part of a program’s name, and programs whose names match appear in a list. You can then select the program that you want to run from that list.

Certification Objective

**Terminals** You can launch a program called a *terminal*, which provides a text-mode user interface inside a window. You can then run either text-mode or GUI programs by typing their filenames in this window. This approach is covered in more detail in Chapter 6, “Getting to Know the Command Line.”

To help clarify some of these methods, a couple of examples are in order. First, consider launching the Firefox web browser in Fedora 20 using the GNOME 3 desktop environment. To do so, you would follow these steps:

1. Click the Activities item in the upper-left corner of the screen. The result is a panel (called *Favorites*) on the left side of the screen, as shown in Figure 4.2.



**FIGURE 4.2** Panels enable you to launch popular programs in GNOME, Unity, and some other desktop environments.

2. Move the mouse over the Firefox icon, which is the topmost icon in Figure 4.2.
3. Click the Firefox icon. After a brief delay, a Firefox window should open.

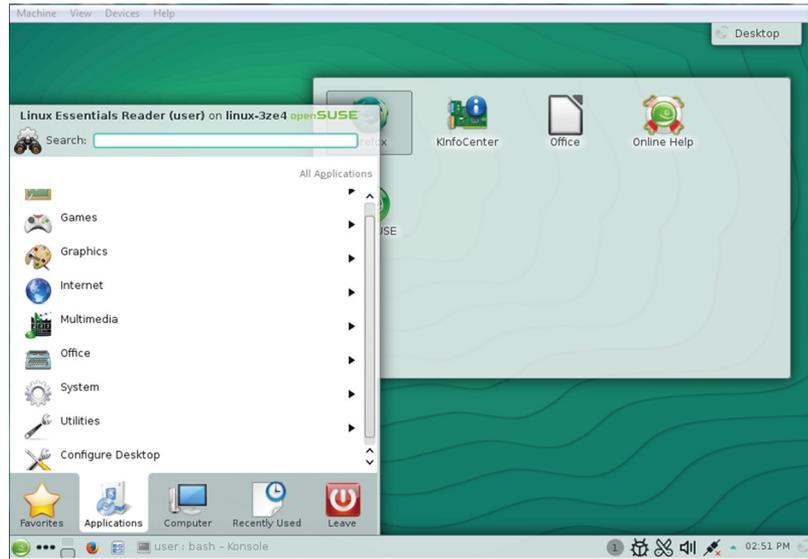
Other ways to do this also exist, such as typing the program's name in the search field (visible at the upper-middle of Figure 4.2). Because only a handful of programs appear in the GNOME 3 panel, you must either add programs to it or launch programs that the Fedora developers did not include by default in some other way.

For comparison, KDE under openSUSE 13.2 provides several obvious ways to launch Firefox:

- ▶ By clicking its icon in the Desktop Folder window (visible in the middle, on the right side of Figure 4.3).
- ▶ By clicking its icon near the left side of the screen's bottom bar (again, see Figure 4.3). This bar is called the *Kicker panel*.

The procedure described here requires that you have a modern video card. If you lack such hardware, GNOME 3 falls back on an older menu-based system for launching programs.

- By finding it in the Applications list. You can open this list by starting with the Kickoff Application Launcher (accessible via the SUSE chameleon icon on the Kicker panel's far left) and selecting Applications ► Internet ► Web Browser ► Web Browser (Firefox). Figure 4.3 shows the beginning of this selection in progress.



**FIGURE 4.3** KDE's desktop interface provides launch methods similar to those available in Windows.

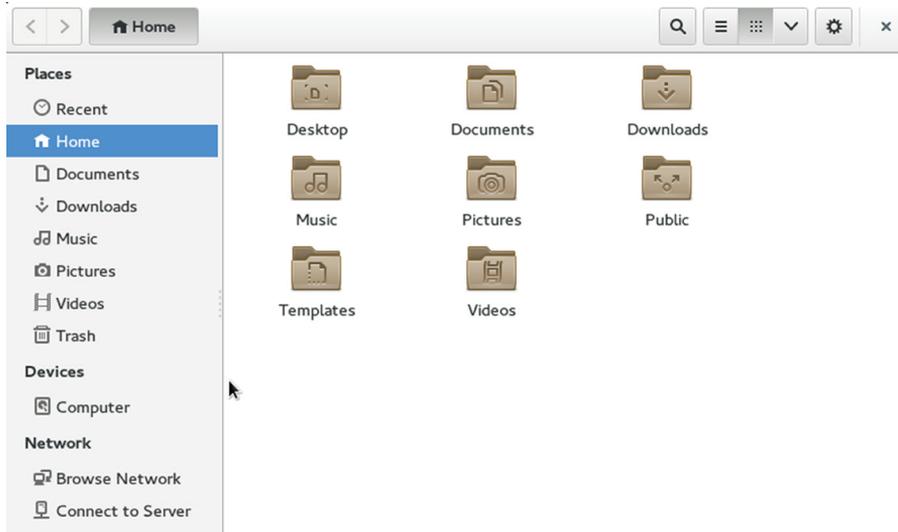
Each distribution sets up its defaults in its own way. Your own GNOME or KDE configuration might not resemble the ones shown here.

As with GNOME, the widest range of launch options are available for a handful of popular applications such as Firefox. You may need to use the more complex methods, such as locating the program in the Applications list, for less popular programs. You can, however, reconfigure the desktop environment to add programs that you use frequently.

## Using a File Manager

If you're used to Windows or Mac OS X, you've almost certainly used a *file manager* to manipulate your files. Linux, of course, provides a file manager for this purpose too—in fact, you have a choice of several, although most of them operate in a similar way. As an example, consider Nautilus, which is GNOME's default file manager. If you were running GNOME 3 on Fedora, the Nautilus icon resembles a filing cabinet in the Favorites panel, as shown in Figure 4.2. Your desktop environment may also launch a file manager when you insert

a removable disk, such as a USB flash drive or DVD disc. Figure 4.4 shows Nautilus running on a fresh installation.



**FIGURE 4.4** Nautilus provides a view of your files similar to that in other OS's file managers.

Because Nautilus is similar to the file managers in other OSs, chances are that you'll be able to use its main features quite easily. A few items do deserve mention:

**Locations** Along the left side of the window, you'll see a series of locations. In Figure 4.4, these fall into three categories:

- ▶ The Devices category includes disk partitions that aren't part of your standard installation, including removable disks.
- ▶ The Computer subcategory refers to the entire Linux installation.
- ▶ The Places category primarily consists of common folders in your home directory, although Recent refers to directories recently visited.
- ▶ The Network category provides access to network resources; however, this may require extra configuration before it works correctly.

**Home** The Home location refers to your *home directory*—that is, the directory where you store your own user files. Ordinarily, you'll create all of your personal files in your home directory. The default view of Nautilus, when you

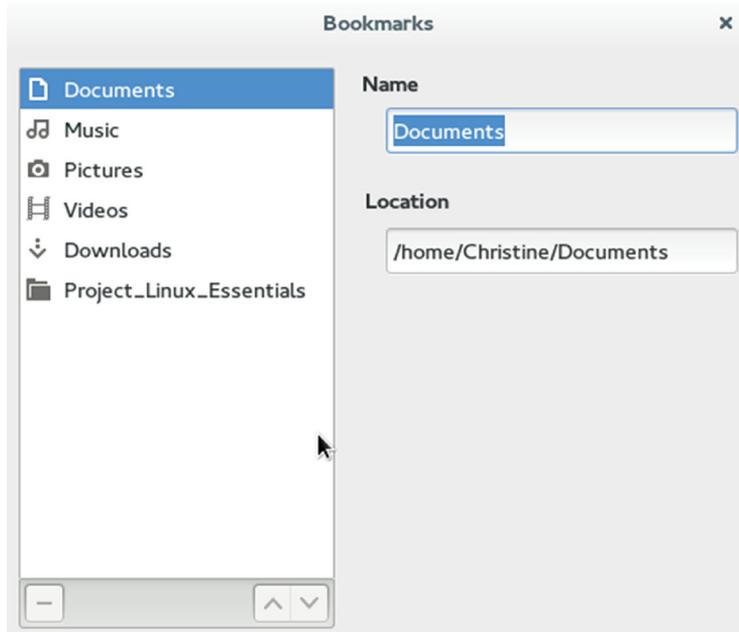
Besides GNOME's Nautilus, other file managers include Thunar (Xfce's file manager) and Dolphin (KDE's file manager). Konqueror was the default file manager in earlier KDE versions and is still available. Konqueror can also act as a web browser.

If you double-click a location, Nautilus will attempt to access it.

launch it manually, is of your home directory, as shown in Figure 4.4. The right pane shows the Home directory's files and subdirectories.

**Bookmarks** You can add bookmarks for locations not shown in the Places category. Simply traverse to the files within the desired bookmark location and click the Gear icon on Nautilus' menu bar. From the drop-down menu, select **Bookmark This Location**. Alternatively, you can press **Ctrl+D** to bookmark a location. Newly added bookmarks appear in a new category called **Bookmarks**.

If you want to modify a bookmark, you do not use the Nautilus window. Instead, with Nautilus open, you select **Files** from the top bar in the GNOME desktop and then select **Bookmarks** from the resulting drop-down menu. The dialog box resembles Figure 4.5. In this window, you can change the bookmark's name and/or location.



**FIGURE 4.5** You can manage bookmarks to enable quick access to directories that interest you.

**Document Properties** You can right-click a file and select **Properties** from the resulting context menu. This produces a **Properties** dialog box, as shown in Figure 4.6. The **Open With** tab lets you associate a document type with an application.

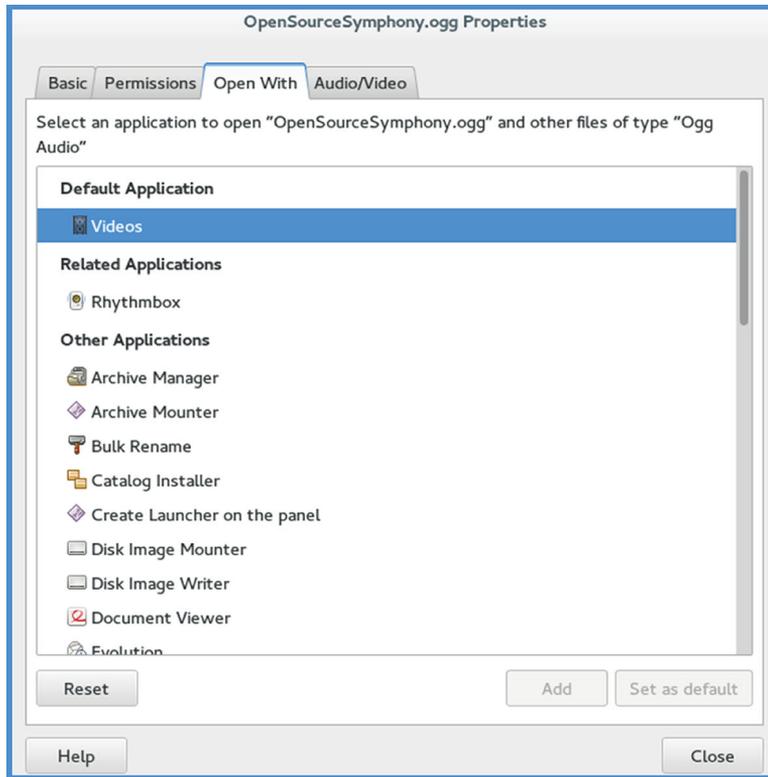


FIGURE 4.6 Nautilus lets you associate document types with applications.

## Working with Productivity Software

The area of productivity software is extremely broad; hundreds, if not thousands, of productivity applications exist, and entire books have been written about many of them. Therefore, in this chapter only a few productivity tools' names and brief descriptions are provided for common categories. The common tool categories include web browsers, email clients, office tools, multimedia applications, cloud computing, and mobile applications. Before describing these tools, it's best to review a few tips on how to find a program to perform a particular task in Linux.

### Finding the Right Tool for the Job

Linux provides productivity applications in many broad categories, but if you're not already familiar with the field, you might have a hard time tracking them

down. This is particularly true because applications' names don't always clearly identify their purpose.

A few techniques can help you to find suitable applications:

**Using Desktop Menus** You can use the menus or other application display tools on your desktop environment to locate productivity applications. Such tools often categorize applications in helpful ways. For example, the KDE Kickoff Application Launcher (shown previously in Figure 4.3) breaks applications down into categories (Games, Graphics, Multimedia, and so on) and sub-categories (Photography and Scanning in the Graphics category, for instance). This can help you track down an application, but only if it's already installed.

**Using Search Features** You may be able to use a search feature, either in a desktop environment or in a web browser, to locate a suitable application. Typing in a critical word or phrase, such as `office` (in conjunction with `Linux` if you're doing a web search) may help you locate office applications (word processors, spreadsheets, and so on).

**Using Tables of Equivalents** If you normally use a particular Windows application, you may be able to find a Linux substitute for it by consulting a table of equivalent applications, such as the ones at [www.linuxalt.com](http://www.linuxalt.com) or [http://wiki.linuxquestions.org/wiki/Linux\\_software\\_equivalent\\_to\\_Windows\\_software](http://wiki.linuxquestions.org/wiki/Linux_software_equivalent_to_Windows_software).

**Using Others' Expertise** You can ask other people—coworkers, friends, or people in online forums—for help in finding a suitable application. This technique is particularly helpful if you've performed a basic search but have found nothing that meets your specific criteria.

Some of these methods, such as using desktop menus, can find only software that's already installed. Other techniques, such as web searches, can find programs that you don't have installed. You can usually install software with the help of your distribution's packaging system.

## Using a Web Browser

Linux supports a variety of web browsers, including the following:

**Chrome** Google's Chrome browser ([www.google.com/chrome](http://www.google.com/chrome)) aims to be fast and easy to use. Since its introduction in 2008, it's gained rapidly in popularity. Although Chrome is technically a commercial project, it's available free of charge. An open source variant, known as Chromium, is also available.

**Firefox** This program can be found at [www.mozilla.org](http://www.mozilla.org). It is the most popular browser for Linux, and it is also quite popular on Windows and Mac OS X.

It's a complete browser, and thus it can consume a lot of memory, so it may not be the best choice on an older or weaker computer.

**Web** This program, originally called Epiphany, is found at <https://wiki.gnome.org/Apps/Web>. It is the web browser for the GNOME desktop. It's designed to be simple and easy to use.

**Konqueror** This KDE program serves a dual function: it's both a web browser and a file manager. Konqueror does a good job with most web pages. It's fairly lightweight, and so it is well worth trying, particularly if you use KDE. You can read more about it at [www.konqueror.org](http://www.konqueror.org).

**Lynx** Most web browsers are GUI programs that display text in multiple fonts, show graphics inline, and so on. Lynx (<http://lynx.browser.org>) is unusual in that it's a text-based web browser. As such, it's a useful choice if you run Linux in text mode or if you don't want to be bothered with graphics. Lynx is also useful as a test browser when you develop your own web pages; if a page is readable in Lynx, chances are that visually impaired people who browse the Web with speech synthesizers will be able to use your page.

**Opera** An unusual commercial entrant in the Linux web browser sweepstakes, Opera ([www.opera.com](http://www.opera.com)) claims to be unusually fast. Although Opera is commercial, you can download it at no charge.

Notably absent from this list is a Microsoft browser. Unfortunately, some websites won't work with anything but a Microsoft browser. Other sites are somewhat picky but can work with at least one Linux browser. Thus you should probably install at least two Linux web browsers.

Web browsers give users easy access to a world of information—literally! Unfortunately, the Web has a dark side, too. Problems include the following:

- ▶ Websites can log user access data, which can be used in marketing or in other ways that you might not like.
- ▶ Much web-based content is dynamic, meaning that websites download small programs (often written in Java) that your web browser runs. This content might be harmless, but it's increasingly being used to deliver malware.
- ▶ Malicious websites can trick users into giving up sensitive data, such as financial information, by pretending to be a trusted site. This technique is known as *phishing*.
- ▶ Many websites are not secure. Data transferred can be read on intervening computers. Most sensitive sites, such as Internet banking sites

Chapter 13 describes how to create passwords that are both memorable and hard to guess.

and online retailers, now encrypt their sensitive data, but you should be cautious when sending such data.

- ▶ Because of security concerns, passwords used on most websites are subject to theft. This can pose a dilemma because it can be hard to remember all of your website passwords. Many browsers can do this for you, but that stores your passwords on your hard disk, which makes them vulnerable to theft or loss.

Some of these problems aren't unique to the Web, of course. For instance, most email transfers are insecure, so you shouldn't send sensitive data via email.

## Using Email Clients

Email client programs enable you to read and write email messages. Such programs can either access a mailbox on your own computer or, using email network protocols described later, send and receive email with the help of network mail server computers. Common Linux email clients include the following:

**Evolution** This program, located at <https://projects.gnome.org/evolution/>, is a powerful GUI email client. It also includes groupware and scheduling features.

**KMail** The KDE project's KMail can be found at <https://userbase.kde.org/KMail>. It is well integrated into that desktop environment, but you can use it in other desktop environments if you elect to do so.

**Mutt** This is one of several text-based email readers. Despite its text-mode interface, Mutt is quite capable. You can read more about it at [www.mutt.org](http://www.mutt.org).

**Thunderbird** This program, located at [www.mozilla.org/thunderbird/](http://www.mozilla.org/thunderbird/), is an email client that's closely associated with the Firefox web browser.

Email clients work in a similar way in any OS. Typically, you must configure them to know how to send and receive messages—whether to use the local computer's facilities or remote servers. Thereafter, you can read incoming messages and send outgoing messages.

## Using Office Tools

Several office tool packages for Linux exist. These packages offer some combination of word processors, spreadsheets, presentation programs, graphics programs, databases, and sometimes other programs. Examples include the following:

**GNOME Office** The applications in GNOME Office are developed independently of each other, but GNOME Office attempts to link them into a coherent

whole. Specific projects within GNOME Office are AbiWord (word processor), Evince (document viewer), Evolution (groupware and email client), Gnumeric (spreadsheet), Inkscape (vector graphics and presentation creation), and Ease (presentation). You can learn more at <http://live.gnome.org/GnomeOffice>.

**Calligra** This office suite was born out of a split from an earlier popular KDE office suite, called KOffice. While KOffice is no longer maintained, Calligra (<https://calligra.org>) is thriving. Its office suite includes Words (word processor), Stage (presentation), Sheets (spreadsheet), Flow (flowcharting), and Kexi (database). Besides office applications, Calligra offers Graphics and Project Management software products.

**Apache OpenOffice** Until early 2011, this office suite, located at [www.openoffice.org](http://www.openoffice.org), was the most prominent one for Linux and was simply called *OpenOffice.org*. Its corporate sponsor, Oracle, stopped supporting commercial development of the project and donated it to the Apache group. The official name is currently *Apache OpenOffice*. It provides six applications: Writer (word processor), Calc (spreadsheet), Impress (presentation), Base (database), Draw (vector graphics), and Math (equation editor).

**LibreOffice** This office suite was created as a *fork* of the older pre-Apache OpenOffice.org. It's becoming the most popular office suite in Linux. It provides six applications: Writer (word processor), Calc (spreadsheet), Impress (presentation), Base (database), Draw (vector graphics), and Math (equation editor). You may have noticed that these applications have the exact same name as the Apache OpenOffice applications. You can read more about it at [www.libreoffice.org](http://www.libreoffice.org).

Most of these programs support the OpenDocument Format (ODF), which is an open set of file formats that's slowly making inroads as a standard for word processing, spreadsheet, and other office files. Although ODF is intended to enable easy transfer of files across applications, application-specific assumptions often hinder such transfers, especially on complex documents.

Many other programs exist in this space, although they are not part of an office suite. Some are unusual. For instance, LyX ([www.lyx.org](http://www.lyx.org)) can take the place of a word processor, but it's rather unique: it's built as a way to create and edit LaTeX documents. LaTeX is a document format that's popular in computer science, mathematics, and other technical fields.

## Using Multimedia Applications

Linux has an excellent reputation as a workhorse server platform, but until recently its capacity as a multimedia OS has been lacking. This was largely due to the

Certification  
Objective

Certification  
Objective

◀

The *fork* of a program results when a single project splits into two projects, typically because different groups of developers have diverging goals.

absence of multimedia applications. In the last decade, however, Linux's multimedia application list has grown considerably. Current offerings include the following:

**Audacity** This program, found at <http://audacity.sourceforge.net>, is an audio editor for Linux, similar to commercial products like Sound Forge for other platforms. You can use it to cut sections from an audio file, equalize volume, remove tape hiss or other noises, apply artificial audio effects, and more.

**Blender** You can use this program to create complex 3D images, including both stills and animations. You can learn more about Blender at [www.blender.org](http://www.blender.org).

Certification  
Objective

**The GIMP** The GNU Image Manipulation Program (GIMP) ([www.gimp.org](http://www.gimp.org)) is a still-image manipulation program similar in broad strokes to Adobe Photoshop. (The GTK+ toolkit, which is the basis of GNOME and many other programs, was originally created for the GIMP.)

**ImageMagick** This is a suite of graphics programs with a twist: you typically use the ImageMagick programs from the command line. You can use it to convert file formats, add frames to images, resize images, and so on. You can learn more at [www.imagemagick.org](http://www.imagemagick.org).

**HandBrake** This program provides an easy way to convert between video formats, and particularly into formats that use the efficient H.264 encoding. You can learn more at <http://handbrake.fr>.

**MythTV** You can turn a regular PC into a digital video recorder (DVR) using this software, which is based at [www.mythtv.org](http://www.mythtv.org). MythTV uses a client-server model, enabling one recorder to service multiple players on TVs throughout your home.

Given this range of multimedia applications, you can use Linux for everything from cropping photos of your two-year-old's birthday party to rendering the effects for major motion pictures. If you have very special needs, digging a bit may turn up something else—this list is just the start!

A few motion pictures that used effects rendered via Linux include *Titanic*, the *Shrek* series, and *Avatar*.

## Using Linux for Cloud Computing

Certification  
Objective

*Cloud computing* is the storage of computer software and/or data over the Internet, rather than locally storing it on your computer. In this term, *cloud* represents the Internet and *computing* represents what you are doing over the Internet. In some cases, users access cloud-computing resources via a web browser. Thus, in theory, Linux can function as a cloud-computing client platform—just launch a web browser to access the cloud-computing provider and away you go. Figure 4.7 shows just a small sampling of available cloud-computing applications.



**FIGURE 4.7** Cloud-computing applications accessible via a web browser

In practice, complications can arise when accessing cloud-computing services. For instance, a cloud-computing provider might require that you use a particular web browser or have a specific browser plug-in installed. In some cases, it might be impossible to meet these requirements in Linux; however, if the provider supports a wide range of browsers as clients, you shouldn't have problems using cloud-computing resources.

A few notable cloud-computing resources include the following:

- ▶ On-demand streaming media, such as Netflix ([www.netflix.com](http://www.netflix.com))
- ▶ File storage services, such as Dropbox ([www.dropbox.com](http://www.dropbox.com))
- ▶ Office productivity suites, such as Zoho Office ([www.zoho.com](http://www.zoho.com))
- ▶ Web-based email, such as Gmail (<http://mail.google.com/>)

## Using Mobile Applications

Although Android is a Linux-based OS, for the most part it runs entirely different applications than do desktop or server implementations of Linux. This is understandable—chances are that you wouldn't want to try to write a long document, such as a book, with a cell phone. Many of the features in a big office program, such as LibreOffice's Write, would go to waste on a mobile computing device.

Instead, mobile computing typically focuses on small programs known as *apps*. In the case of Android, you can download apps by using an app called Google Play. (A web-based version is available at <https://play.google.com/store>.) Apps typically provide quick and specialized computation, often employing features of the phone. For instance, an app can calculate the calories that you've burned while riding a bicycle or retrieve a weather forecast for your area. Both of these examples use your phone's GPS features to identify the phone's (and your) position.

Although most Linux applications for desktop and server computers are open source and available free of charge, some Android apps are not free. Be sure to check the cost before you download an app.

▶  
Android apps are increasingly a source of malware. You can minimize your risk by downloading apps only from Google Play or other trustworthy app stores.

## Using Server Programs

Linux is a powerful OS for running server programs, so it should come as no surprise that you can find a wide variety of server programs for Linux. In the following pages, some common server protocols and the programs that use them are described. In addition, the process of installing and launching servers is covered, as well as basic information on server security issues.

## Identifying Common Server Protocols and Programs

Networks, including the Internet, function by means of network *protocols*. Network protocols are clearly defined descriptions of how two computers should exchange data to achieve a particular end, such as transferring email or delivering a file to be printed. Most protocols are described in one or more standards documents, known as *Request for Comments (RFC) documents*, each of which has a number. Typically, one RFC document defines the protocol, and over time additional RFC documents define extensions or protocol modifications as they become necessary.

Most network protocols involve transferring data over one or more *ports*, which are numbered resources on a computer. You can think of a port as being something like a telephone extension number—the main number (an Internet Protocol, or IP, address) identifies the computer as a whole, and the port number identifies the protocol being used. A server program attaches itself to a port number and receives all incoming requests on that port.

Table 4.1 summarizes some common port numbers, the protocols with which they're associated, and the Linux programs that are often used in conjunction

with these protocols. Many ports and protocols are associated with more than one program. This is because Linux provides choices for many protocols; you can choose which of several server programs to use for a given protocol, just as you can choose which of several word processors or web browsers to use.

**TABLE 4.1** Common port numbers and their purposes

Port number	Protocol	Common server program(s)	Explanation
20–21	FTP	oftpd, ProFTPD, Pure-FTPd, vsftpd	The File Transfer Protocol (FTP) is an old protocol for transferring files over a network. It supports both anonymous and password-mediated access. FTP is unusual in that it uses two ports.
22	SSH	OpenSSH	The Secure Shell (SSH) is an encrypted remote-access tool. It also supports file transfers and encrypting other protocols.
23	Telnet	telnetd	This is an old unencrypted remote login protocol. It's seldom used today, although its client program, Telnet, can be a useful network diagnostic tool.
25	SMTP	Exim, Postfix, qmail, sendmail	The Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) is the main protocol for moving email on the Internet. The sender initiates SMTP transfers.
53	DNS	dnsmasq, named	The Domain Name System (DNS) enables computers to look up an IP address by providing a hostname, or vice versa. Without it, you'd need to refer to all computers by IP address rather than by name.
67	BOOTP, DHCP	dnsmasq, dhcpd	The Bootstrap Protocol (BOOTP) and its younger cousin, the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), both enable a computer on a local network to help automatically configure other computers to use a network.

(Continues)

The `/etc/services` file links common port numbers to short names that are often used in other configuration files.

Certification Objective

Virtualization software allows the creation of simulated hardware, operating systems, network resources, and so on. Several virtualization products exist for Linux, such as KVM. Using virtualization software, an entire server and its necessary resources can be virtualized.

TABLE 4.1 (Continued)

Port number	Protocol	Common server program(s)	Explanation
80	HTTP	Apache, NGINX	The Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) is the basis of the World Wide Web (WWW, or simply the Web).
109–110	POP2 and POP3	Courier, Cyrus IMAP, Dovecot, UW IMAP	The Post Office Protocol (POP) has gone through several revisions, each with its own port. This protocol enables a recipient to initiate an email transfer, so it's often used as the last leg in email delivery, from a server to the recipient.
118	SQL	MySQL, PostgreSQL, MariaDB	The Structured Query Language (SQL) is a network-enabled database interface language. If you run a SQL server on your network, client computers can access and modify that database.
137–139	SMB/CIFS	Samba	Microsoft uses the Server Message Block (SMB) / Common Internet File System (CIFS) protocols for file and printer sharing, and Samba implements these protocols in Linux.
143, 220	IMAP	Courier, Cyrus IMAP, Dovecot, UW IMAP	The Internet Message Access Protocol (IMAP) is another recipient-initiated email transfer protocol, similar to POP. IMAP makes it easier for recipients to store and manage email on the server computer permanently, though.
389	LDAP	OpenLDAP	The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is a network protocol for accessing directories, which in this context are a type of database. LDAP is often used to store network login information, among other things.
443	HTTPS	Apache, NGINX	This protocol is a secure (encrypted) variant of HTTP.
2049	NFS	NFS	The Network File System (NFS) is a protocol, and a server of the same name, for file sharing between Unix and Unix-like OSs.

Table 4.1 is incomplete; it summarizes only some of the more important protocols and the servers that deliver them. Numerous other protocols and servers exist, many of them for very specialized tasks.

Some protocols are most often used on local networks. For instance, DHCP by its nature is intended to help you manage your own local network by making it easier to configure client computers—just tell the computers to use DHCP, and that's it. SMB/CIFS is also usually employed only locally in order to enable users to access each other's files and printers more easily. Protocols like HTTP, on the other hand, are generally used on the Internet as a whole, although they can also be used on local networks.

◀ Chapter 15, "Managing Network Connections," describes network configuration in greater detail.

## SERVER PROGRAMS AND SERVER COMPUTERS

The term *server* can apply to an entire computer or to a single program running on that computer. When applied to a computer as a whole, the term identifies the purpose of the computer and the fact that it runs one or more server programs. Server computers typically provide services that are used by anywhere from a handful to millions of client computers—that is, the computers that use a server's services.

In the networking world, a server (computer or program) listens for a connection from a client (computer or program) and responds to data transfer requests. Server computers are often—but not always—more powerful than their clients.

When you read the word *server* (or *client*, for that matter), it may refer either to a computer or to a program. The context usually makes it clear which meaning is intended, although sometimes this isn't the case—in fact, sometimes the speaker or writer may not know! For instance, somebody might report "the Samba server isn't working." In such a case, you might need to figure out whether it's the Samba server program or something else on the server computer that's causing problems.

Sometimes, the client-server lines can get blurred. For instance, in office settings, it's common for many computers to function as *file servers* by running file server software such as Samba or NFS. Such a configuration enables Sam to make his files available to Jill, and for Jill to make her files available to Sam. In this situation, both computers function as both client and server and run both types of software. In any given exchange, though, only one is the client and one is the server.

## Focusing on Web Servers

As the number of websites on the Internet grows—some estimates put this figure at over 1 billion websites—so too does the use of *web servers*. A web server delivers web pages to internal and/or external network users. If you have ever

used the World Wide Web, you have most likely used two popular web servers that are offered on Linux:

Certification  
Objective

**Apache HTTPD** The Apache HTTPD server is part of the prevalent Linux Apache MySQL PHP (LAMP) stack for web applications. The original web server software package was released in 1995. Within less than a year, Apache became the most popular web server on the Internet. It has continued to maintain this level of popularity due to its stability and dependability. The Apache HTTPD server is available not only for Linux, but also for Unix, BSD, Windows, and even Mac OS X. You can learn more at <http://httpd.apache.org/>.

Certification  
Objective

**Nginx** Released in 2002, the Nginx (pronounced *Engine X*) web server is a relative newcomer to the market. Nginx can retrieve resources on behalf of a client from one or more servers, as well as operate as a mail server. Because of these features as well as being fast and lightweight, Nginx has won over some major websites, such as Netflix. You can learn more at <http://nginx.org/>.

The best feature of these two web servers is that you don't have to choose one or the other. Many server administrators choose a dual setup, using both HTTPD Apache and Nginx. Sometimes a side-by-side architecture is deployed, with each server handling what it does best—Apache managing dynamic content and Nginx managing static content. Others deploy an Apache-in-Back (or Nginx-in-Front) architecture, allowing Nginx to shine with its resource-retrieval services, and the stable Apache still providing dynamic content as needed.

## Installing and Launching Servers

The topic of maintaining server programs is beyond the scope of this book, but you should be aware of the basics of this task. You can install servers in the same way that you install other software, as described later in this chapter and in more detail in Chapter 9.

Once the software is installed, you must launch a server. You do this differently than the way you launch a desktop application. Instead of clicking an icon or menu entry in a GUI, you typically launch a server by configuring the computer to run it automatically whenever it boots. Thereafter, the server program runs in the background, as a *daemon*—that is, as a process that runs unattended.

Most servers are started automatically when Linux boots. You can also open a terminal program and type a text-mode command along with a keyword such as `start` or `stop`, to start or stop the server manually. The nature of server program startup has been changing with recent distributions, and it is beyond the scope of this book. However, it is helpful to know that various distributions use a

The word *daemon* derives from Greek mythology; daemons were helpful supernatural beings, just as Unix and Linux daemons are helpful programs.

particular initialization daemon both to start and to manage the various server daemons. Be sure to consult your distribution's documentation to determine which initialization daemon it uses from the following list:

- ▶ System V init (SysVinit)
- ▶ Upstart
- ▶ systemd

Some servers run via a *super server*, such as `xinetd`. These server programs run constantly, keeping the servers they manage unloaded except when they're needed. This configuration can minimize the memory impact of running many seldom-used servers. The super server can also function as a security feature, like a doorman, and keep out the troublemakers.

## Securing Servers

Whenever you run a server, you also run the risk of its being compromised and abused. Risks fall into several categories:

- ▶ Servers can contain bugs that enable outsiders to abuse the software to run programs locally.
- ▶ You can misconfigure a server, granting an outsider greater access to your system than you had intended.
- ▶ Users with accounts and remote access via a server can abuse this trust. This risk is particularly great if combined with a server bug or misconfiguration.
- ▶ A server can be used as a stepping-stone to attack others, making it appear as if an attack originated from your computer.
- ▶ Even without breaking into a computer, an attacker can swamp a server with bogus data, thus shutting it down. This technique is called a *denial-of-service (DoS) attack*.

Server security is an extremely complex topic, and details vary from one server to another. For instance, if you run a server such as a remote login server, Samba, or a POP or IMAP email server, you probably want to pay careful attention to password security, since all of these servers rely on passwords. Passwords are unimportant to a DHCP or DNS server, though. Of course, even if a DHCP or DNS server program doesn't use passwords, other server programs running on the same computer might.

Broadly speaking, securing a server requires paying attention to each of the risk factors just outlined. Specific steps that you can take to secure your servers include the following:

- ▶ You should keep your server programs up-to-date by using your package management tools to upgrade servers whenever upgrades become available. You can also research specific servers to pick ones that have good security reputations.
- ▶ You should learn enough about server configuration to be sure that you can configure your servers properly.
- ▶ You should remove unused accounts and audit necessary accounts to be sure that they use strong passwords.
- ▶ You can use firewall configurations to restrict outsiders' access to server computers that are intended for internal use only. You can also use firewalls to minimize the risk of one of your computers being used to attack others.

▶  
Chapter 13 describes how to create strong passwords.

## Managing Programming Languages

Many users never need to deal with programming languages; however, basic knowledge of what they are and how they differ from one another is important for Linux users, for a variety of reasons. You might need to install languages for users on systems that you manage, or for yourself to compile software from source code. You might also want to learn about programming, particularly if you want to automate computer management tasks using shell scripts.

This section presents basic information on programming languages. It begins by describing the differences between compiled and interpreted languages, which are important to understand so that you can properly handle program files or choose which you want to use. Brief descriptions of some common programming languages are also provided so that you can identify and use their source code files or choose which language you want to learn to use.

### Choosing a Compiled vs. an Interpreted Language

At their core, computers understand binary codes—numbers that represent operations, such as adding two numbers or choosing which of two actions to take. People, however, are much better at handling words and symbols, such

as + or if. Thus most programming involves writing a program in a symbolic programming language and then translating that symbolic code into the numeric form that computers understand. Dozens, if not hundreds, of such *programming languages* exist, each with its own unique features.

Among high-level languages, two broad categories exist:

**Compiled Languages** Programmers convert (or *compile*) a program written in a high-level language from its original source code form into the machine code form. The compilation process can take some time—typically a few seconds to several hours, depending on the size of the program and the speed of the computer. Compilation can also fail because of errors in the program. When the compilation succeeds, the resulting machine code executes quickly.

**Interpreted Languages** Programs written in interpreted languages are converted to machine code at the time they're run, by a program known as an *interpreter*. The conversion happens on a line-by-line basis. That is, the program is never completely converted to machine code; the interpreter figures out what each line does and then does that one thing. This means that interpreted programs run much more slowly than compiled programs. The advantage is that interpreted programs are easier to develop, since you don't need to deal with the compilation process. Interpreted programs are also easy to modify; just open the program file in a text editor and save it back. This feature makes interpreted languages useful for helping with system startup tasks that system administrators might want to change—administrators can make and test changes quickly.

---

## PROGRAMMING IN ASSEMBLY LANGUAGE

In addition to compiled and interpreted languages, another option is assembly language. This is a language with a simple one-to-one correspondence between machine code numbers and the symbols that the programmer uses. Assembly language is very low-level, which means that a skilled assembly language programmer can produce compact and efficient programs. Assembly language is not very portable, though; it takes a lot of effort to convert a program written for, say, the x86-64 CPU to run on an ARM processor. Writing assembly language programs is also harder than writing programs in most high-level languages. For these reasons, assembly language programs have become more rare as computers have become more powerful; the speed and size advantages of assembly language just aren't very compelling for most purposes in the early 21st century.

In theory, most languages can be implemented either in compiled or interpreted form. In practice, though, most languages are most commonly used in just one form or the other.

Some languages don't fit neatly into either category. See the “Programming in Assembly Language” sidebar for one important exception. Some others fall into an in-between category, such as Java, which is compiled from source code into a platform-independent form that must be interpreted.

## Identifying Common Programming Languages

Linux supports a wide range of programming languages, including the following:

**Assembly** As noted earlier, this low-level language can produce efficient programs, but it is difficult to write and is nonportable. In fact, referring to *assembly* as if it were one language is a bit misleading, since each architecture has its own assembly language.

**C** This language is arguably the most important compiled language for Linux, since most of the Linux kernel, as well as a huge number of Linux applications, are written in C. C can produce fairly efficient code, but it's also easy to write buggy programs in C because it lacks some error-checking features that are common in many other languages. C source code files typically have filenames that end in `.c` or `.h`—the `.c` files are the main source code files, whereas the `.h` files are *header files*, which contain short definitions of the functions in the `.c` files, for reference by other files in a program. A large program can consist of dozens, if not hundreds or thousands, of individual source code files. In Linux, C programs are generally compiled with the `gcc` program, which is part of the GNU Compiler Collection (GCC) package.

**C++** This language is an extension to C that adds *object-oriented* features, meaning that greater emphasis is given to data structures and their interactions than to the procedures used to control the flow of the program. Many complex Linux programs, such as KDE and Apache OpenOffice / LibreOffice, are written largely in C++. C++ source code files can have filenames that end in `.cc`, `.cpp`, `.cxx`, or `.c++`, with header files ending in `.h`, `.hh`, `.hpp`, `.hxx`, or `.h++`. In Linux, C++ is generally compiled with the `g++` program, which is part of GCC.

**Java** Java was created by Sun Microsystems (now owned by Oracle) as a cross-platform language that's somewhere between being compiled and interpreted. It's become popular as a language for small applications delivered via websites,

Certification  
Objective

▶  
Although the Linux kernel is mostly written in C, parts of it are written in assembly language.

Certification  
Objective

although some other programs are Java based as well. Java source code usually has a name that ends in `.java`.

**Perl** This interpreted language is designed for easy manipulation of text, but it's a general-purpose language that can be used for many other tasks as well. Perl programs typically have filenames that end in `.pl`, `.pm`, or `.t`.

Certification  
Objective

**PHP** The PHP: Hypertext Preprocessor, or PHP (a recursive acronym), language was created for use on web servers in order to generate dynamic content—that is, content that varies depending on the user, the time of day, or some other criterion. PHP is an interpreted language, and it requires a PHP-aware web server, such as Apache. Given such a server and appropriate configuration, a website can support user logins, shopping carts, different content based on users' locations, and so on. PHP files most often have names that end in `.php`, although several variants are common.

Certification  
Objective

**Python** This interpreted language makes code readability a major goal. It supports (but does not require) object orientation. It's often used for scripting purposes, but it can be used to write more-complex programs, too. Python programs often use `.py` filename extensions, although several variants of this are common too.

Certification  
Objective

**Shell Scripting** Most Linux text-mode shells—the programs that enable entirely keyboard-based use of the computer—provide their own interpreted languages. Of these, the Bourne Again Shell (Bash) is the most common, so Bash scripting is quite common. Many of the files that control the Linux startup process are in fact Bash scripts. Such scripts frequently have no unique filename extension, although some use a `.sh` extension.

Certification  
Objective

## Handling Software Packages

Installing programs on a Linux distribution has become easier through the years. However, how software is packaged, installed, and managed can vary greatly from distribution to distribution. It is important to understand these differences in order to take full advantage of the Linux programs discussed in this chapter. This section merely provides brief descriptions. More details on installing and managing software packages are provided in Chapter 9.

### Understanding Software Packages

On Linux, software programs are bundled into a prebuilt package that has simplified their installation and management. Packages are managed in Linux

Chapter 11, "Creating Scripts," covers the basics of creating or modifying Bash scripts.

using a package management system (PMS), which is discussed in detail in Chapter 9.

These packages are stored on *repositories*, which are official software storage servers on the Internet. The repositories can be accessed over the Internet via your Linux system's local PMS utilities. The repositories have lots of software packages stored on them, ready to be explored or installed. Each Linux distribution's developers work hard to maintain and protect their official repositories' software packages. Thus, in most cases, it's best to obtain programs from the default distribution repositories. Fortunately, your distribution's PMS typically does this by default.

## Identifying Common Package Tools

Each distribution uses its own PMS and package tools, which are discussed in more detail in Chapter 9. The following are a few of the primary tools used by the major PMSs:

Certification  
Objective

**dpkg** A low-level package tool used as the foundation of Debian-based family of PMS tools. It can be used directly to install, manage, and remove software packages. However, it is limited in function. For example, the dpkg tool cannot download software packages from the repositories.

Certification  
Objective

**rpm** The rpm tool is also a low-level package tool similar in function to the dpkg utility. However, it is used as the foundation of the Red Hat Linux package management system. Though you can use rpm to manage packages, it's best to use a higher-level PMS utility.

Certification  
Objective

**apt-get** This is a text-mode tool for the Debian PMS. With apt-get, you can install from repositories and remove software packages from your local Linux system. In addition, you can perform package upgrades for individual packages, all of the packages on your system, or your entire distribution. However, you will need to use the apt-cache text-mode tool for determining various pieces of information concerning software packages.

Certification  
Objective

**yum** This is a text-mode tool for the Red Hat PMS. It is used on distributions, such as Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL), Fedora, and CentOS. With yum, you can install from repositories, remove software packages from your local Linux system, upgrade packages, and so on. In addition, you can use yum for determining various pieces of information concerning packages and their management, such as displaying a list of the PMS's configured repositories.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

When you're just starting out with Linux, chances are that you'll begin by using a desktop environment—the first set of programs that you see when you log in. A desktop environment enables you to run more programs, including common productivity tools such as web browsers, email clients, office utilities, and multimedia applications. If you're configuring a computer as a server, of course, you'll want to run server programs, but you'll do this by editing configuration files rather than launching them from a desktop environment. If you need to do programming, you should be aware of some common Linux programming languages, which enable you to write everything from trivial scripts to huge servers or productivity suites. If your distribution does not come with a needed desktop productivity program or server application preinstalled, you will have to install it via a package tool.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ Try at least two desktop environments. Use each desktop environment for your normal computing tasks for a day or two so that you can decide which you prefer.
- ▶ Try at least two Linux web browsers. Use each to visit your favorite websites. Do you notice differences in speed or how the elements on the page are laid out? Which do you prefer?

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Which of the following are Linux desktop environments? (Select all that apply.)
  - A. GTK+
  - B. GNOME
  - C. KDE
  - D. Evolution
  - E. Xfce
2. If you want to enable one Linux computer to access files stored on another Linux computer's hard disk, which of the following network protocols is the *best* choice?
  - A. SMTP
  - B. NFS
  - C. PHP
  - D. DNS
  - E. DHCP
3. In which of the following languages was most of the Linux kernel written?
  - A. Bash shell script
  - B. Java
  - C. C
  - D. C++
  - E. Perl

(Continues)

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)*

4. True or false: OpenOffice.org forked from Calligra.
5. True or false: Malicious outsiders can disrupt servers even if the computer that runs them is never broken into.
6. True or false: Python is generally implemented as an interpreted language.
7. Thunderbird is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ program. (Specify the general category of the software.)
8. A Linux server that handles the SMB/CIFS protocol normally runs the \_\_\_\_\_ software.
9. A program written in a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ programming language is completely converted to binary form before being run.
10. You can install and manage various Linux software applications via a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ management system.

## Managing Hardware

*Although Linux is software*, it relies on hardware to operate. The capabilities and limitations of your hardware will influence the capabilities and limitations of Linux running on that hardware. Therefore, you should know these features for any computer that you use extensively or that you plan to buy.

This chapter will help you learn about and perform basic management tasks with your hardware. We begin with low-level issues, such as the nature of your central processing unit (CPU) and motherboard. Often overlooked, the power supply can cause problems if it's undersized or misbehaves. In addition, hard disks require special care in their setup. A common sticking point in Linux is display issues, since a malfunctioning display prevents any interaction with the computer. Today, most external devices attach via the Universal Serial Bus (USB), so we describe its features. Finally, this chapter covers the common issue of *drivers*, which are software components that control hardware devices.

- ▶ **Learning about your CPU**
- ▶ **Identifying motherboard capabilities**
- ▶ **Sizing your power supply**
- ▶ **Understanding disk issues**
- ▶ **Managing displays**
- ▶ **Handling USB devices**
- ▶ **Managing drivers**

### Learning about Your CPU



Your *CPU* (sometimes called the *processor*) is the “brain” of your computer—it does most of the computer’s actual computing. We’ve mentioned CPUs in earlier chapters in reference to distribution

▶ Many devices have more specialized computing circuitry. Most notably, video cards include graphics processing units (GPUs) to do specialized graphics computations.

availability; to run on a given CPU, most software must be recompiled for that CPU. It's important that you know enough about the different CPU families to understand their strengths and weaknesses and to identify what type of CPU your computer uses.

## Understanding CPU Families

CPU manufacturers tend to create product lines by making regular improvements to their products. Improvements range from minor (such as running the CPU at a faster *clock rate*, which is like running an engine at a faster speed) to moderate redesigns to improve speed (which is like shifting gears to get better speed) to radical redesigns (which are like using a bigger or more efficient engine, but one based on the original design). All of these types of changes remain within a single CPU family, so they can run the same code as their predecessors. Still more radical differences exist across CPU families; two CPUs from different families can typically *not* run each other's binary programs, although there are exceptions to this rule, including one very important one that we describe shortly.

On desktop computers, two CPU families are (or were recently) common:

**x86** This CPU type originated with Intel's *8086* CPU, but the first model capable of running Linux was the *80386* (also known as the *386*). Development continued with the *80486* (also known as the *486*), the *Pentium*, the *Celeron*, and the earlier versions of the *Core series* of processors—*Intel Core i3*, *Intel Core i5*, and *Intel Core i7*. AMD, Cyrix, VIA, and others have all released CPUs that are compatible with Intel's designs. Recent AMD names for its x86 CPUs include Athlon and Duron. The earliest x86 CPUs were 16-bit models, but the model line has been 32-bit since the 80386.

**x86-64** Brand names for the *x86-64* architecture include *Intel 64* and *AMD64*. AMD created the *x86-64* architecture as a 64-bit extension to the *x86* architecture. Unusually, *x86-64* CPUs can run the earlier 32-bit *x86* code, but when run in 64-bit mode, such CPUs have access to additional features that improve speed. Intel has created its own *x86-64* CPUs. Both Intel and AMD have used the same product-line names for their *x86-64* CPUs as for their *x86* CPUs. This fact can make it hard to tell whether you have a 32-bit *x86* CPU or a 64-bit *x86-64* CPU, at least based on the CPU's marketing name. Most desktop and small server computers sold since about 2007 have used *x86-64* CPUs, with the Intel Core i3, i5, and i7 series currently being the most popular.

▶ The upcoming section, "Identifying Your CPU," describes how to determine which CPU you have.

## CPU BIT DEPTH

CPUs process data in binary (base 2), meaning that numbers are represented using only two digits—0 and 1. CPUs have limits to the sizes of the numbers they can process, though, and those limits are described in terms of the number of binary digits, or *bits*, that the CPU can handle. A 32-bit CPU, for instance, can process numbers that contain up to 32 binary digits. Expressed as positive integers, this means that numbers can range in size from 0 to  $2^{32} - 1$  (4,294,967,295 in the base 10 that people generally use). When dealing with larger numbers, the CPU must combine two or more numbers, which requires extra code.

CPUs with larger bit depths have an advantage when dealing with lots of memory, since memory addresses must fit into the CPU's basic unit size. In particular, a 32-bit CPU has a 4 gibibyte (GiB) limit on memory—although some architectures, including *x86*, provide tricks to work around this limit. Greater bit depth does not improve speed per se, except when dealing with very large numbers. However, the 64-bit *x86-64* CPU architecture is faster than its 32-bit *x86* predecessor for unrelated reasons.

In addition to *x86* and *x86-64* CPUs, several other model lines are available. With the popularity of mobile devices, the ARM processor has become an overnight success. Technically, ARM chips aren't as full-featured as the *x86-64* or even the *x86* CPUs. They incorporate a type of processor model called a *Reduced Instruction Set Computing (RISC)* architecture, which strips down the processor to a bare-bones minimum. However, the ARM chips require less electrical power to operate (making them ideal for mobile devices), and can provide enough computing power to handle most of today's consumer computing needs.

Linux can run not only on the newer ARM processors, but also on older CPU families, such as MIPS and SPARC. However, your choice of distribution is likely to be limited. Because software has to be recompiled and tested on new architectures, preparing a distribution for each architecture takes effort, and many distribution maintainers are unwilling or unable to expend this effort for more than *x86* and *x86-64*.

Many CPUs today are *multicore* models. These CPUs package the circuitry for two or more CPUs into one unit. When plugged into a motherboard, such a CPU looks like multiple CPUs to the OS. The advantage is that Linux can run as many CPU-intensive programs as you have cores, and they won't slow each other down significantly by competing for CPU resources.

Debian is available on many architectures, so if you need to support Linux on a wide range of CPUs, using Debian can make sense.

Some high-end motherboards also support multiple CPUs, so you can use, say, two 4-core CPUs to get the performance of an 8-CPU system.

## Identifying Your CPU

If you have a working Linux system, you can learn a great deal about your CPU by using three text-mode commands:

**uname -a** Typing `uname -a` displays basic information on the kernel and the CPU. For instance, one of our systems returns `x86_64 AMD Phenom (tm) II X3 700e Processor`, among other things, indicating the manufacturer and model number of the CPU.

**lscpu** This command returns additional information in about 20 lines of output. Much of this information is highly technical, such as the sizes of *cache* that the CPU supports. Some of it is less technical, such as the architecture and the number of CPUs or cores it supports.

**cat /proc/cpuinfo** This command returns still more information compared to `lscpu`. Chances are that you won't need this information yourself, but a developer or technician might want some of this information to help debug a problem.

One thing to keep in mind is that modern *x86-64* CPUs can run software compiled for the older *x86* architecture. Thus you might be running a 32-bit Linux distribution on a 64-bit CPU. The output of these commands can be confusing in such cases. For instance, here's part of what `lscpu` shows on one such system:

```
Architecture:          i686
CPU op-mode(s):        64-bit
```

The `Architecture` line suggests an *x86* CPU (*i686* being a specific variant of that architecture), but the `CPU op-mode(s)` line indicates that the CPU supports 64-bit operation. If you have trouble interpreting this output, you might be able to find something by looking up the CPU's model on the manufacturer's website. However, manufacturers tend to bury such information in hard-to-read specification sheets, so be prepared to read carefully.

## Identifying Motherboard Capabilities



If the CPU is the computer's brain, the motherboard is the rest of the computer's central nervous system. The motherboard is a large circuit board inside the computer. It's dominated by a *chipset*, which is one or more chips that provide key functionality for the computer—they handle the hard disk interfaces, the

USB interfaces, the network devices, and so on. Some chipsets include video circuitry for video cards, although this functionality is sometimes separate, and sometimes it's built into the CPU.

In addition to the chipset, motherboards include plug-in interfaces for key components:

- ▶ One or more slots for the computer's CPU(s)
- ▶ Slots for random access memory (RAM)
- ▶ Slots for plug-in Peripheral Component Interconnect (PCI) or other cards
- ▶ Connectors for Serial Advanced Technology Attachment (SATA) disks, and sometimes for Parallel ATA (PATA) disks
- ▶ Back-panel connectors that provide external interfaces for USB devices, keyboards, monitors, and so on
- ▶ Connectors for additional external devices, such as front-panel USB plugs, that are attached via short internal cables

Some motherboards—typically used in larger desktop and server computers—have many connectors for many purposes. Such motherboards are highly expandable, but they're physically large enough so that they require bulky cases. Other motherboards are much smaller and can be used in compact computers, but such computers aren't as expandable. Laptop computers also have motherboards, which are necessarily of the small variety, with little opportunity for internal expansion.

Most of the connectors on a motherboard are managed by its primary chipset. Some high-end boards provide features beyond those of its primary chipset. Such features require a secondary chipset, such as an extra Ethernet chipset for a second network port, or an extra SATA chipset for more or faster hard disk interfaces.

Whether the feature is provided by the main or by a secondary chipset, you can learn about most of the motherboard's features with the `lspci` command, which shows information on PCI devices. The output looks something like this:

```
$ lspci
00:00.0 Host bridge: Advanced Micro Devices [AMD] RS780 Host Bridge
00:11.0 SATA controller: ATI Technologies Inc SB700/SB800 SATAm
  Controller [IDE mode]
00:12.0 USB Controller: ATI Technologies Inc SB700/SB800 USB OHCI0m
  Controller
```



Motherboards are sometimes referred to as *mainboards*.



We've edited this for brevity.

```
00:14.1 IDE interface: ATI Technologies Inc SB700/SB800 IDE Controller
00:14.2 Audio device: ATI Technologies Inc SBx00 Azalia (Intel HDA)
01:05.0 VGA compatible controller: ATI Technologies Inc Radeon HD
3200m
Graphics
01:05.1 Audio device: ATI Technologies Inc RS780 Azalia controller
02:00.0 Ethernet controller: Realtek Semiconductor Co., Ltd.m
RTL8111/8168B PCI Express Gigabit Ethernet controller (rev 02)
03:06.0 Ethernet controller: Intel Corporation 82559 InBusiness
10/100m
(rev 08)
```

You may not understand everything in this output, but you should be able to glean some information from it. For instance, the computer has a number of ATI devices—a SATA controller, a USB controller, a graphics adapter, and so on. Two Ethernet devices are present—one made by Realtek and the other by Intel. Although it's not obvious from this output, the Realtek network adapter is built into the motherboard, whereas the Intel device resides on a plug-in card.

## Sizing Your Power Supply



A computer's power supply takes the alternating current (AC) power from a wall outlet and converts it to the direct current (DC) that your motherboard and everything you plug into it uses. Laptop computers and some small desktop units use power adapter “bricks” that you can put on the floor. Larger desktop computers have internal power supply units. These internal units are larger, both physically and in terms of the amount of power that they can deliver.

Every power supply has limits on the amount of DC power that it can deliver. This is important because every device that you plug into the computer consumes a certain amount of power. If your computer manufacturer cut corners, the power supply may be barely adequate for the computer as delivered. If you add a hard disk or a power-hungry plug-in card, you could exceed the amount of power that the power supply can deliver. The result can be unreliable operation—the computer can crash or behave erratically, perhaps corrupting data or files. Such problems can be hard to distinguish from other problems, such as bad RAM or a failing hard disk.

If you need to replace your power supply, pay attention to its output in watts. You should be able to find the output of your current power supply on a sticker—but you'll need to open your computer first, at least for most desktop systems. Be sure to get a power supply that's rated for at least as many watts as

the one you're replacing. Also be sure it will fit—sizes are standardized, but a few variants are available. In the case of a laptop or a small desktop computer with an external power supply, you must ensure that a replacement provides the right type of connector to the computer. Buying a replacement from the computer's manufacturer is usually the best course of action in this case.

## Understanding Disk Issues

Disks are a critical part of most Linux installations. Therefore, we describe three basic disk issues in this section: disk hardware interfaces, disk partitioning, and filesystems. We also describe some of the issues surrounding removable disks, including optical (CD-ROM, DVD-ROM, and Blu-ray) discs.

### Understanding Disk Interfaces

Today, two disk interfaces are common, both of which have already been mentioned:

**PATA** This interface was common in the past, but it's fading in popularity. It features wide 40- or 80-pin cables that transfer several bits of data simultaneously—hence the word *parallel* in the name Parallel ATA (PATA). A PATA cable can have up to three connectors—one for the motherboard or disk controller card and two more for up to two hard disks. Alternative names for PATA (or specific variants of it) include Integrated Drive Electronics (IDE) or Enhanced IDE (EIDE). The ATA Packet Interface (ATAPI) standard defines a software interface that helps ATA manage devices other than hard disks. Although in some cases the differences between the technologies described by these variant terms are important, today they're often used synonymously.

**SATA** In 2003, a serial version of the ATA protocol was created, hence Serial ATA (SATA). SATA is more or less software compatible with PATA, but it uses thinner cables that can handle just one hard disk per cable. Currently SATA is the dominant disk technology on new computers. An external variant, eSATA, provides high-speed connections to external hard disks.

In addition to these technologies, others exist. The Small Computer System Interface (SCSI) is a parallel interface that was once common on servers and high-end interfaces, but it is less common today. The Serial Attached SCSI (SAS) is a serial variant that's quite similar to SATA. Both of these technologies are important because ATAPI is modeled after SCSI. The USB interface is often used for connecting external disks.

You can install Linux in a *diskless* configuration, in which a Linux computer boots using files stored on a network server.

Certification  
Objective

Most modern Linux distributions treat SATA disks as if they were SCSI disks from a software perspective.

## Partitioning a Disk

Certification  
Objective

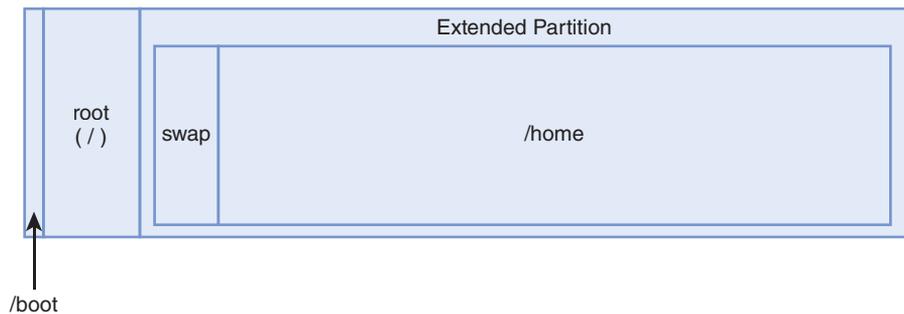
You can think of a hard disk as a set of *sectors*, each of which holds a small amount of data—normally 512 bytes, although some disks have larger sectors. The disk hardware itself does little to help organize data on the disk, aside from providing a means to read and write specific sectors. On-disk data management is left up to the OS. Disk partitions and filesystems are two levels of organization imposed on disks to help manage the data they store.

Partitions are a lot like the drawers in a filing cabinet. Think of a single disk as the main filing cabinet, which is then split up into multiple partitions, much like drawers. This analogy is good as far as it goes, but it has its limits. Unlike filing cabinet drawers, disk partitions can be created in whatever size and quantity are convenient, within the limits of the disk's size. A typical disk has between one and a dozen partitions, although you can create more.

Disk partitions exist to help subdivide the disk into pieces with broadly different purposes, such as partitions for different OSs or for different types of data within an OS. For instance, it's common to create separate partitions for swap space (which is used much like RAM in case you run out of it), for user data files, and for the OS itself.

Hard disks and their partitions are frequently represented in diagrams similar to Figure 5.1. This diagram displays partitions as subdivisions of the disk, with partition sizes in the diagram more or less proportional to their true sizes on the disk. Thus, in Figure 5.1, you can see that `/boot` is tiny compared to `/home`. As in the figure, partitions are uninterrupted sections of a disk—that is, `/home`, for instance, is a set of sectors with no other partition carved out of its interior.

Some partitioning tools represent their partitions in a vertical stack rather than a horizontal chain. The principle is the same either way.



**FIGURE 5.1** Disk partitions are often visualized as boxes within a hard disk.

The most common partitioning scheme for *x86* and *x86-64* computers has gone by various names over the years, including *master boot record (MBR)*, *MS-DOS*, and *BIOS partitioning*. It supports three types of partitions:

**Primary** This is the simplest type of partition. A disk can have zero to four primary partitions, one of which may be an extended partition.

**Extended** This is a special type of primary partition that serves as a placeholder for logical partitions. A disk may have at most one extended partition.

**Logical** These partitions are contained within an extended partition. In theory, a disk can have billions of logical partitions, thus overcoming the limit of four primary partitions, but in practice you're unlikely to see more than about a dozen of them.

MBR's use of three partition types is awkward and limiting, but inertia has kept it in place for three decades. MBR partitions have a hard limit, though: they can't support disks larger than 2 tebibytes (TiB), assuming 512-byte sectors, which are nearly universal today.

The Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) Partition Table (GPT) is the successor to MBR. GPT supports disks of up to 8 zebibytes (ZiB), which is about 4 billion times as large as MBR's limit. GPT also supports up to 128 partitions by default, with no distinction between primary, extended, and logical partitions. In these respects, GPT is a superior partitioning system to MBR; however, its support varies between OSs. Linux supports both systems quite well. Windows can boot only from MBR when the computer uses the Basic Input/Output System (BIOS), and it can boot only from GPT when the computer is based on the Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI). Thus, if you dual-boot with Windows, you may need to select your partitioning system with care.

1 TiB is  $2^{40}$  bytes,  
whereas 1 ZiB is  
 $2^{70}$  bytes.

## MULTIBYTE UNITS

It's common to use prefixes from the International System of Units (*SI units*)—*kilo (k)*, *mega (M)*, *giga (G)*, *tera (T)*, and so on—in conjunction with byte (B) to refer to large quantities of storage space, as in KB, MB, GB, TB, and so on. Technically, these units are defined as base-10 values—*kilo* means 1,000; *mega* means 1,000,000; and so on. In computers, though, base-2 values, such as  $2^{10}$  (1,024) and  $2^{20}$  (1,048,576), are often more natural, so the SI units have often (but not always) been used to mean these base-2 values. This practice has led to confusion, since it's not always clear whether base-10 or base-2 units are being used.

(Continues)

## MULTIBYTE UNITS *(Continued)*

To resolve this conflict, the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) defined a new set of prefixes as IEEE-1541. Under this system, new units and prefixes describe base-2 values. The first few of these are as follows:

- ▶ A kibibyte (KiB) is  $2^{10}$  (1,024) bytes.
- ▶ A mebibyte (MiB) is  $2^{20}$  (1,048,576) bytes.
- ▶ A gibibyte (GiB) is  $2^{30}$  (1,073,741,824) bytes.
- ▶ A tebibyte (TiB) is  $2^{40}$  (1,099,511,627,776) bytes.

In this book, we use IEEE-1541 units when describing features that are best expressed in this system, such as partition table size limits. Most Linux disk utilities use SI and IEEE-1541 units correctly, but which is used depends on the whim of the program's authors. Be alert to this difference, particularly when dealing with large numbers—note that a tebibyte is almost 10 percent larger than a terabyte!

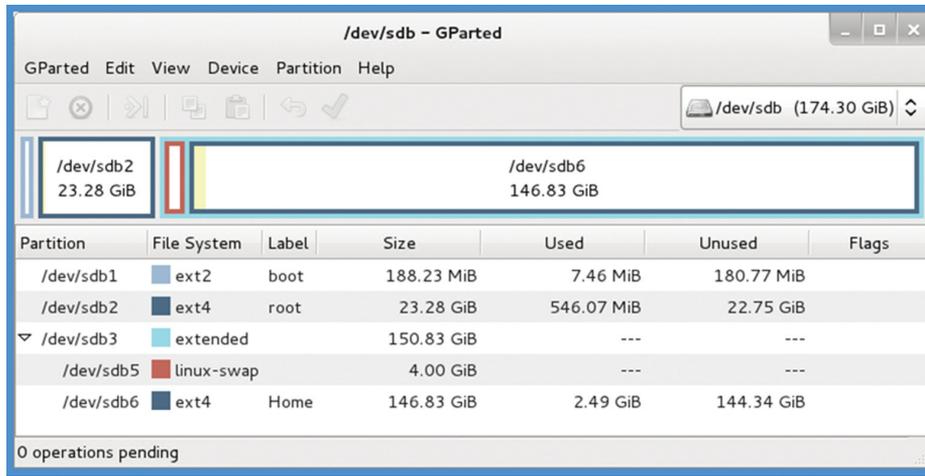
Several other partitioning systems exist, but you're unlikely to encounter most of them. One possible exception is the Apple Partition Map (APM), which Apple used on its Macintosh computers prior to its switch to Intel CPUs.

When it comes to partitioning a disk, Linux supports three families of tools:

**fdisk Family** The `fdisk`, `cdisk`, and `sfdisk` tools are simple, text-based partitioning utilities for MBR disks and some more-exotic partition table types. These tools work well and provide the means to recover from some disk errors, but their text-based nature can be intimidating to those who are unfamiliar with disk partitioning.

**libparted-Based Tools** Tools based on the `libparted` library can handle MBR, GPT, and several other partition table types. Some of these tools, such as GNU Parted, are text based, but others, such as GParted, are GUI based and so are likely to be easier for new users to use. Figure 5.2 shows GParted in action. Note how its display mirrors the structure shown in Figure 5.1. Many Linux installers include `libparted`-based partitioning tools that run during system installation.

**GPT fdisk Family** The `gdisk`, `cgdisk`, and `sgdisk` tools are modeled after the `fdisk` family but work with GPT disks. They provide more options for handling GPT than do `libparted`-based tools, but at the cost of friendliness for new users.



**FIGURE 5.2** GParted, like other GUI disk-partitioning tools, provides a graphical representation of your partitions.

If you're working with a preinstalled Linux system, you may not need to partition your disk. However, if you ever replace or install a new hard disk, you'll have to partition it before you can use it. You may also need to partition removable disks, although they generally come prepartitioned from the factory with one big partition.

To partition a disk, you must know the disk's device filename. In Linux, these filenames are normally `/dev/sda`, `/dev/sdb`, and so on, with each disk taking on a new letter. Partitions are numbered starting with 1, so you might refer to `/dev/sda2`, `/dev/sdb6`, and so on. When using MBR, partitions 1 through 4 are reserved for primary or extended partitions, whereas logical partitions take numbers 5 and up.

## Understanding Filesystem Issues

Most disk partitions contain *filesystems*, which are data structures that help the computer organize your directories and files. In Windows, each filesystem receives its own device letter, such as A: and B: for floppy disks, C: for the first hard disk partition (normally the boot partition), and so on. In Linux, by contrast, all filesystems are part of a single directory tree. The main filesystem is referred to as the root (`/`) filesystem. If a disk has multiple filesystem partitions, each is mounted at a *mount point* in the root (`/`) filesystem—that is, the contents of the additional filesystems are made available at specific directories,

The word *filesystem* is sometimes applied to the directory structure as a whole, even if it contains multiple low-level filesystems. Which exact meaning is intended is usually made clear by the context.

such as at `/home` (which holds users' data files) or `/boot` (which holds boot files). Several Linux filesystems exist, each with its own unique features:

The original Extended Filesystem (extfs) was used in the early 1990s, but it was quickly eclipsed by ext2fs. Extfs is no longer supported.

**ext2fs** The Second Extended Filesystem (ext2fs) was popular in the 1990s, but it is rarely used today because it lacks a *journal*, which is a filesystem feature that speeds filesystem checks after power outages or system crashes. A journal consumes disk space, though, so ext2fs is still useful on small disks. You might want to use it for a separate `/boot` partition, for instance, since such partitions are rather small. Its Linux filesystem type code is `ext2`.

**ext3fs** The Third Extended Filesystem (ext3fs) is essentially ext2fs with a journal. Until around 2010, it was a popular filesystem, but ext4fs has taken its place. It supports files of up to 2 TiB and filesystems of up to 16 TiB (ext2fs imposes the same limits). Its Linux type code is `ext3`.

**ext4fs** The Fourth Extended Filesystem (ext4fs) is a further development of the ext filesystem line. It adds speed improvements and the ability to handle larger files and disks—files may be up to 16 TiB in size, and filesystems may be up to 1 EiB (2<sup>60</sup> bytes). Linux utilities refer to it as `ext4`.

**ReiserFS** This filesystem, referred to as `reiserfs` by Linux tools, is similar to ext3fs in features, with an 8 TiB file-size limit and 16 TiB filesystem-size limit. Its best feature is its capacity to make efficient use of disk space with small files—those with sizes measured in the low kibibyte range. ReiserFS development has slowed, but it remains usable.

**JFS** IBM developed its Journaled Filesystem (JFS) for its AIX OS, and its code eventually worked its way into Linux. JFS supports maximum file and filesystem sizes of 4 PiB and 32 PiB, respectively (1 PiB is 1,024 TiB). JFS is not as popular as many other Linux filesystems. Linux tools use `jfs` as its type code.

**XFS** Silicon Graphics developed the Extents Filesystem (XFS) for its IRIX OS and later donated its code to Linux. XFS supports files of up to 8 EiB and filesystems of up to 16 EiB, making it the choice for *very* big disk arrays. XFS works well with large multimedia and backup files. Its Linux type code is `xfs`.

**Btrfs** This new filesystem (pronounced “butter-eff-ess” or “better-eff-ess”) is intended as the next-generation Linux filesystem. It supports files of up to 16 EiB and filesystems of the same size. It also provides a host of advanced features, such as the ability to combine multiple physical disks into a single filesystem. A few Linux distributions have recently made Btrfs the default filesystem in installations, and its popularity is growing. Its Linux type code is `btrfs`.

If you're planning a new Linux installation, you should consider ext4fs, Btrfs, ReiserFS, or XFS as your filesystem. Currently, Btrfs provides the best overall features and performance, while ReiserFS and XFS are worth considering for volumes that will hold particularly small and large files, respectively. Btrfs is a good choice for volumes that hold large files, though, so you could use it for everything and not go particularly wrong, especially on a general-purpose computer.

In addition to Linux's native filesystems, the OS supports several other filesystems, some of which are important in certain situations:

**FAT** The File Allocation Table (FAT) filesystem was the standard with DOS and Windows through Windows Me. Just about all OSs support it. Its compatibility also makes it a good choice for exchanging data between two OSs that dual-boot on a single computer. Unlike most filesystems, FAT has two Linux type codes: `msdos` and `vfat`. Using `msdos` causes Linux to use the filesystem as DOS did, with short filenames with at most eight characters plus a three-character extension (*8.3 filenames*); when you use `vfat`, Linux supports long filenames on FAT. Most USB flash drives are preformatted using the `vfat` filesystem, making it still popular.

**NTFS** Microsoft developed the New Technology Filesystem (NTFS) for Windows NT, and it is the default filesystem for recent versions of Windows. Linux provides a limited read/write NTFS driver, and a full read/write driver is available in the NTFS-3G software ([www.tuxera.com](http://www.tuxera.com)). You're most likely to encounter it on a Windows boot partition in a dual-boot configuration or on larger removable or external hard disks. Under Linux, the standard kernel driver is known as `ntfs`, whereas the NTFS-3G driver is called `ntfs-3g`.

**HFS** Apple used its Hierarchical Filesystem (HFS) in Mac OS through version 9.x, and still supports it in Mac OS X. You might encounter HFS on some removable media, and particularly on older disks created under pre-X versions of Mac OS. Linux provides full read/write HFS support using its `hfs` driver.

**HFS+** Apple's HFS+, also known as *Mac OS Extended*, is the current filesystem for Mac OS X; you're likely to encounter it on dual-boot Macs and on some removable media created for use with Macs. Linux provides read/write HFS+ support with its `hfsplus` driver; however, write support is disabled by default on versions of the filesystem that include a journal.

**ISO-9660** This filesystem is used on optical media, and particularly on CD-ROMs and CD-Rs. It comes in several levels with differing capabilities. Two extensions, *Joliet* and *Rock Ridge*, provide support for long filenames using

It's possible to use several filesystems in a single Linux installation in order to take advantage of the benefits of each filesystem for different sets of files.

FAT's simplicity and widespread support make it a popular filesystem on USB flash drives, smartphones, e-book readers, digital camera media, and so on.

Linux's `ntfs` driver is based in the kernel, which makes it fast. The `ntfs-3g` driver, unlike most filesystem drivers, is *not* kernel-based, so it's not as fast.

Mac users often use FAT on removable media for compatibility reasons.

Windows and Unix standards, respectively. Linux supports all of these variants. You should use the `iso9660` type code to mount an ISO-9660 disc.

**UDF** The Universal Disk Format (UDF) is a filesystem that's intended to replace ISO-9660. It's most commonly found on DVD and Blu-ray media, although it's sometimes used on CD-Rs as well. Its Linux type code is, naturally, `udf`.

Most non-Linux filesystems lack support for the Unix-style ownership and permissions that Linux uses. You may need to use special mount options to set ownership and permissions as you want them. Exceptions to this rule include HFS+ and ISO-9660 when Rock Ridge extensions are in use. Rock Ridge discs are generally created with ownership and permissions that enable normal use of the disc, but if you're faced with an HFS+ disk, you may find that the user ID (UID) values don't match those of your Linux users. You may need to copy data as root, create an account with a matching UID value, or change the ownership of files on the HFS+ disk. (This last option is likely to be undesirable if you plan to use the disk again under Mac OS X.)

To access a filesystem, you must mount it with the `mount` command. For instance, to mount the filesystem on `/dev/sda5` at `/shared`, you would type the following command:

```
# mount /dev/sda5 /shared
```

Alternatively, you can create an entry for the filesystem in the `/etc/fstab` file, which stores information such as the device file, filesystem type, and mount point. When you're done using a filesystem, you can unmount it with the `umount` command, as in `umount /shared`.

The `umount` command's name has just one n.

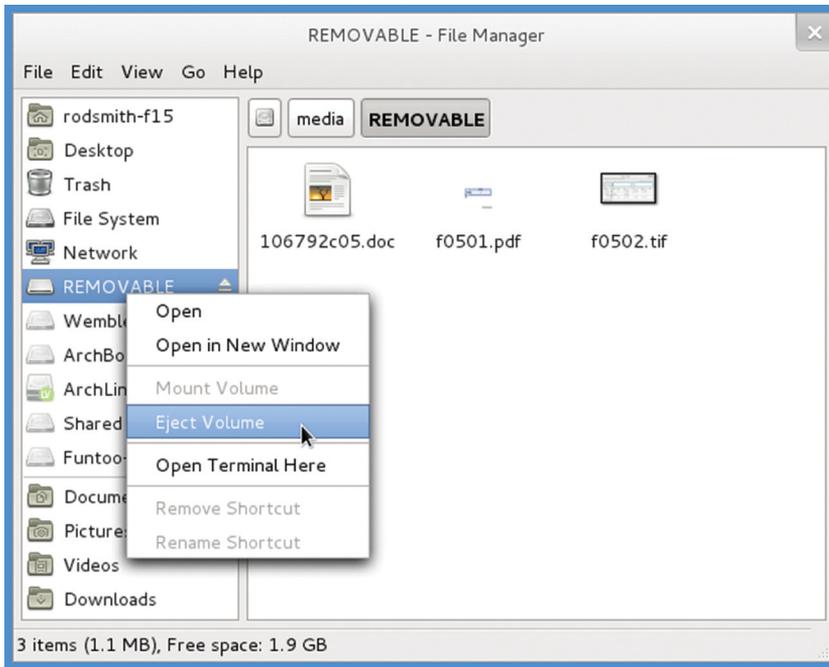
## Using Removable and Optical Disks

If you insert a removable disk into a computer that's running most modern Linux distributions, the computer will probably detect that fact, mount the disk in a subdirectory of `/media`, and launch a file manager on the disk. This behavior makes the system work in a way that's familiar to users of Windows or Mac OS.

When you're done using the disk, you *must* unmount it before you can safely remove it. Most file managers enable you to do this by right-clicking the entry for the disk in the left-hand pane and selecting an option called Unmount, Eject Volume, or Safely Remove, as shown in Figure 5.3. If you fail to do this, the filesystem may suffer damage.

Certification Objective

Some devices, such as optical disc drives, can lock their eject mechanisms to prevent forced removal of the media.



**FIGURE 5.3** Linux file managers enable you to unmount removable media.

Most removable disks either are unpartitioned or have a single partition. They frequently use FAT, which is a good choice for cross-platform compatibility. If you need to, you can partition USB flash drives and most other removable media.

Optical discs are unusual in that they require their own special filesystems (ISO-9660 or UDF). Although you can mount and unmount these discs just like other disks, you can only read them, not write to them. If you want to create an optical disc filesystem on blank media, you must use special software, such as the text-mode `mkisofs`, `cdrecord`, or `growisofs`, or the GUI `K3b` or `X-CD-Roast`. These tools create an ISO-9660 filesystem from the files that you specify and then burn it to the blank disc. Thereafter, you can mount the disc in the usual way.

## Managing Displays

Linux provides two display modes: text-mode and GUI. A text-mode display is fairly straightforward and requires little or no management. GUI displays, on the other hand, are more complex. In Linux, the X Window System (or X for

short) manages the GUI display. In the next few pages, we describe what X is and how X interacts with common display hardware.

## Understanding the Role of X

Most people don't give much thought to the software behind their computers' displays—it all just works. Of course, behind the scenes, the task of managing the display is fairly complex. Just some of the things that the software must do on any platform include the following:

1. Initializing the video card, including setting its resolution
2. Allocating sections of the display to hold windows that belong to particular applications
3. Managing windows that overlap so that only the “topmost” window's contents are displayed
4. Managing a pointer that the user controls via a mouse or similar device
5. Directing user input from a keyboard to whatever application is active
6. Displaying text and simple shapes within windows at the request of user programs
7. Providing user interface elements to move and resize windows
8. Managing the interiors of windows, such as displaying menus and scroll bars

In Linux, X handles tasks 1 through 6, but task 7 is handled by a program called a *window manager*, and task 8 is handled by GUI libraries known as *widget sets*. X can handle the font display element of task 6, but in recent years many programs have begun using a library called Xft for this task. Thus the overall job of handling the display is divided among several programs, although X handles most of the low-level tasks.

Modern Linux distributions use a version of X that can detect your hardware—including the video card, monitor, keyboard, and mouse—and configure itself automatically. The result is that the software normally works properly without any explicit configuration. Sometimes, though, this autoconfiguration fails. When this happens, you must manually edit the X configuration file, /etc/

Desktop environments include window managers, but window managers without desktop environments are also available.

X11/xorg.conf. If this file is missing, you can generate a sample file by typing the following command (with X *not* running) as root:

```
# Xorg -configure
```

The result is normally a file called `/root/xorg.conf.new`. You can copy this file to `/etc/X11/xorg.conf` and begin editing it to suit your needs. This task is complex and is beyond the scope of this book, but knowing the name of the file can help you get started—you can examine the file and locate additional documentation by searching on that name.

Chapter 10, “Editing Files,” describes the `pico`, `nano`, and `vi` text-mode text editors.

## Using Common Display Hardware

Much of the challenge in dealing with video devices is in managing drivers for the video chipsets involved. Most modern computers use one of a handful of video drivers:

Certification Objective

- ▶ `nv`, `nouveau`, and `nvidia` work with NVIDIA video hardware.
- ▶ `ati` and `fglrx` work with AMD/ATI video hardware.
- ▶ `intel` works with Intel video hardware.
- ▶ The `fbdev` and `vesa` drivers are generic drivers that work with a wide variety of hardware, but they produce suboptimal performance.
- ▶ Many older video cards use more-obscure drivers.

The `nvidia` and `fglrx` drivers are proprietary drivers provided by their manufacturers. Check the manufacturers’ websites for details, or look for packages that install these drivers. These proprietary drivers provide features that aren’t available in their open source counterparts, although the `nouveau` driver implements some of these features. In this context, video driver “features” translate into improved performance, particularly with respect to 3D graphics and real-time displays (as in playing back video files).

In the past, most video cards connected to monitors via a 15-pin Video Graphics Array (VGA) cable. Today, either 29-pin Digital Visual Interface (DVI) or the newer 19-pin High-Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI) cables are quite common. (Figure 5.4 shows the VGA and HDMI cables.) DVI and HDMI have the advantage of being a digital interface, which can produce a cleaner display on modern light-emitting diode (LED) monitors.



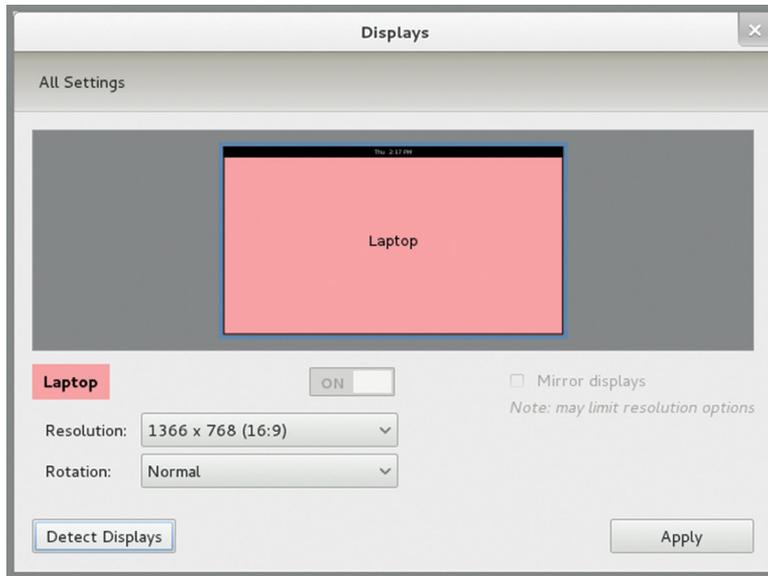
**FIGURE 5.4** VGA connectors (left) were common in years past and are still available today; HDMI connectors (right) are common on newer monitors and video cards.

▶  
Most monitors use an aspect ratio of either 4:3 or 16:9, referring to the ratio of the length to the height of the display.

Monitor resolutions are typically measured in terms of horizontal and vertical number of pixels. In the past, resolutions as low as 640×480 have been common, but today it's rare to use a monitor that has an optimum resolution of lower than 1280×1024 or 1366×768, and resolutions of 1920×1080 or higher are commonplace. You should consult your monitor's manual to determine its optimum resolution. Typically, physically larger monitors have higher resolutions; however, this isn't always true.

In the best of all possible worlds, Linux will autodetect your monitor's optimum resolution and set itself to that value whenever you boot the computer. Unfortunately, this sometimes doesn't work. Keyboard/video/mouse (KVM) switch boxes and extension cables can sometimes interfere with this autodetection, and older monitors might not support the necessary computer/monitor communication. You may need to crack open your monitor's manual to learn its optimum resolution. Look for this information in the features or specifications section; it will probably be called *optimum resolution*, *maximum resolution*, or something similar. It may also include a refresh rate value, as in 1280n1024 @ 60 Hz.

In most cases, you can set the resolution by using a GUI tool. Figure 5.5 shows the Displays feature in the GNOME System Settings panel, which enables you to use the Resolution drop-down list to set the resolution to any desired value. If you can't find the optimum resolution in the list, you may need to perform more-advanced adjustments involving the `/etc/X11/xorg.conf` file—a topic that's beyond the scope of this book. On rare occasion, you may need to upgrade your video card; some cards aren't able to handle the optimum resolutions used by some monitors.



**FIGURE 5.5** Most desktop environments provide GUI tools to help you set your display's resolution.

## Handling USB Devices

Most modern computers use USB ports as the primary interface for external peripherals. Keyboards, mice, cameras, flash storage, hard disks, network adapters, scanners, printers, and more can all connect via USB. For the most part, USB devices work in a plug-and-play manner—you plug them in, and they work. Some specific caveats include the following:

Certification  
Objective

**Human-Interface Devices** X usually takes over keyboards, mice, tablets, and similar devices when you plug them in. If you have problems, you may need to adjust your X configuration by editing `/etc/X11/xorg.conf`, but this is an advanced topic that's beyond the scope of this book.

**Disk Storage** We include USB flash drives, external hard disks, and other storage devices in this category. As described earlier in “Using Removable and Optical Disks,” it's critical that you unmount the disk before you unplug its USB cable. Failure to do so can result in data corruption.

**Mobile Phones, Cameras, E-book Readers, and Music Players** You can often use these devices like disk drives to transfer photos, music, or other files. You may need to activate an option on the device to make it look like a disk

drive to the computer, though. When you're done, unmount the device and deactivate its interface mode.

**Scanners** Linux uses the Scanner Access Now Easy, or SANE, software ([www.sane-project.org](http://www.sane-project.org)) to handle most scanners. A few require obscure or proprietary software, though.

**Printers** Most distributions automatically configure suitable printer queues when you plug in a USB printer. If you need to tweak the configuration, try entering `http://localhost:631` in a web browser on the computer in question. Doing so opens a web-based printer configuration utility called CUPS (previously called the Common Unix Printing System). Some distributions provide distribution-specific printer configuration tools as well.

## Managing Drivers



Most hardware devices require the presence of special software components to be useful. A piece of software that “talks” to hardware is known as a *driver*, so you should know how drivers work in Linux. Several broad classes of drivers exist, so we begin by describing those. Whatever the driver type, you should know how to locate and install drivers for your hardware.

### Understanding Types of Drivers

Linux requires drivers because different hardware—even two devices that serve similar purposes, such as two network adapters—can function in different ways. The methods required to initialize and use two network adapters may be entirely different. To provide generalized interfaces so that programs such as the Firefox web browser can use any network adapter, the Linux kernel uses drivers as a bridge between the hardware-agnostic kernel interfaces and the hardware itself.

Broadly speaking, drivers can exist in one of two locations:

- ▶ The kernel
- ▶ A library or application

Most drivers are kernel based, and in fact a large chunk of the Linux kernel consists of drivers. Kernel drivers handle most of the devices that are internal to the computer's box, such as the hard disks, network interfaces, and USB interfaces. The kernel hosts most drivers because drivers typically require privileged access to hardware, and that's the purpose of the kernel.

Several layers exist between the network hardware and a program such as Firefox; the driver is just one of these layers.

Some drivers reside in a library or application. Many of these devices are external to the computer itself. Examples include the following:

- ▶ SANE, which handles scanners
- ▶ Ghostscript, which converts printed output into a form that particular printers can understand
- ▶ X, which manages the display

X is unusual in that it's a nonkernel element that communicates more or less directly with the video hardware. SANE and Ghostscript, by contrast, both communicate with external hardware devices via interfaces (such as a USB port) that are handled by the kernel. That is, you need at least two drivers to handle such devices. To print to a USB printer, for instance, you use the kernel's USB driver and a Ghostscript printer driver. Ideally, most users will be unaware of this complexity, but you may need to understand it if problems arise.

## Locating and Installing Drivers

Most drivers come with the Linux kernel itself, or with the library or application that handles the type of hardware. For instance, most X installations include a set of video drivers so that you can use most video cards. For this reason, it's seldom necessary to track down and install additional drivers for common hardware. There are exceptions—for instance:

**New Hardware** If your hardware is very new (meaning the model is new, not just that you purchased it recently), it might need drivers that haven't yet made their way into whatever distribution you're using.

**Unusual Hardware** If you're using very exotic hardware, such as a specialized scientific data-acquisition board, you may need to track down drivers for it.

**Proprietary Drivers** Some manufacturers provide proprietary drivers for their hardware. For instance, the `nvidia` and `fglrx` video drivers (referred to earlier, in "Using Common Display Hardware") can improve the performance of video displays based on NVIDIA or ATI/AMD chipsets, respectively. Some hardware requires proprietary drivers. This is particularly common for some exotic hardware.

**Bug Fixes** Drivers, like other software, can be buggy. If you run into such a problem, you might want to track down a more recent driver to obtain a bug fix.

One way to obtain a new kernel-based driver is to upgrade the kernel. Note that a kernel upgrade can provide bug fixes to both existing drivers and

entirely new drivers. Similarly, upgrading software such as SANE, Ghostscript, or X can upgrade or add new drivers for the devices that such packages handle.

If you're using exotic hardware or need some other hard-to-find driver, your task can be more difficult. You can check with the manufacturer or perform a web search to try to find drivers.

If you obtain a driver that's not part of the kernel (or software package to handle the device), you should read the instructions that come with the driver. Installation procedures vary quite a bit from one driver to another, so it's impossible to provide a simple step-by-step installation procedure that works in all cases. Some drivers come with installation utilities, but others require you to follow a procedure that involves typing assorted commands. If you're very unlucky, the driver will come in the form of a *kernel patch*. This is a way to add or change files in the main kernel source-code package. You must then recompile the kernel—a task that's well beyond the scope of this book.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Software and hardware interact in numerous ways to determine a computer's capabilities. Your CPU is one determinant of your computer's speed, and the CPU also determines what version of Linux you can run. CPUs are mounted on motherboards, which contain other critical circuitry for managing hard disks, displays, and other devices. Your hard disk must be partitioned and prepared with one or more filesystems before it's useful. Video hardware—both the monitor and the video circuitry inside the computer—determine how your desktop environment looks and how fast the computer can move windows and display videos. USB manages most external devices, such as keyboards, mice, and external disks. Software known as drivers manages all of these hardware devices.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ At a Linux shell prompt, type `uname -a`, `lscpu`, and `cat /proc/cpuinfo`. Compare the output and try to determine your CPU's capabilities. In particular, can it run 64-bit applications, and is your current distribution 32-bit or 64-bit?
- ▶ After you've logged into your preferred desktop environment, insert a CD-ROM, a USB flash drive, or some other removable disk. Does a file browser open up? If not, open one manually and try to find your removable disk. Once you've accessed the disk, unmount it so you can safely remove it.

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** (Continued)**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

- Which of the following commands provides the most information about your motherboard's features?
  - lscpu
  - Xorg -configure
  - fdisk -l /dev/sda
  - lspci
  - http://localhost:631
- Why might you want to partition a hard disk? (Select all that apply.)
  - To install more than one OS on the disk
  - To use ext4fs rather than ReiserFS
  - To turn a PATA disk into an SATA disk
  - To separate filesystem data from swap space
  - To separate the disk's cache from its main data
- Which of the following devices is *not* commonly attached via USB?
  - Video monitors
  - Keyboards
  - External hard disks
  - Printers
  - Scanners
- True or false: An *Intel 64* CPU is capable of running a Linux distribution identified as being for the AMD64 CPU.
- True or false: UDF is a good filesystem to use for a Linux installation on a hard disk.
- True or false: The Linux kernel includes drivers for various disk controllers, network adapters, and USB interfaces, among other things.
- The *x86* CPU uses a(n) \_\_\_-bit architecture.
- A computer power supply converts electricity from alternating current to \_\_\_\_\_.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ standard is a modern video interface that's commonly used on computer monitors.
- A piece of software that "talks" to hardware is known as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.



# Getting to Know the Command Line

*You may think of* the command line as an archaic relic from the 1970s, with not much relevance to computing today. Not so! Although Linux has numerous GUI programs, they're mostly just flashy front ends to underlying text-mode tools. By learning those tools, you'll be able to unlock Linux's true power, enabling you to get your work done more quickly. You'll also be able to manage should the Linux GUI system fail entirely, or should you need to log in and administer the system remotely. Command-line tools can also be scripted, meaning that you can write a simple program that performs a task more quickly or more easily than could be achieved using the standard programs alone. For these reasons, most of the chapters in this book describe both the GUI and command-line methods of getting things done.

To begin command-line operations, you must know how to start one. With that task in hand, you must know how to run programs and how to get help. You should also be familiar with several labor-saving features of Linux command lines.

- ▶ **Starting a command line**
- ▶ **Running programs**
- ▶ **Using shell features**
- ▶ **Getting Help using `man` pages**
- ▶ **Getting Help using `info` pages**
- ▶ **Finding additional documentation**

## Starting a Command Line

A Linux command line, or *shell* as it's more properly called, is a program. Just like any other program, the shell must be launched. You can start a shell in a GUI window called a *terminal program*, or you can log in to the

Other shells include `tcsh`, `ksh`, and `zsh`. Shell choice is a matter of personal preference. If you're just starting out, it's best to stick with Bash simply because it's popular.

computer locally via a text-mode console. In addition, a shell is started when you log in to the computer remotely using a text-mode login protocol. However, that particular method goes beyond the scope of this book.

The default shell in most Linux distributions is the Bourne Again Shell (Bash or `bash`), which is based on an older shell called the Bourne Shell. Other shells are available. Most of these are similar to Bash in broad strokes, although some details differ. Each account specifies its own default shell, so individual users can change their shells if they like. (This is done with account management tools, such as `usermod`, which is described in Chapter 13, “Creating Users and Groups.”)

## Launching a Terminal

Most Linux distributions allow you to install various GUI terminal programs. Typically, a desktop environment comes with its own terminal, so your terminal program choices also depend on the desktop environments that you install. (You can even run one desktop environment's terminal program within another, if you like.) Many terminal programs include the word *terminal* in their names, although some don't, such as the K Desktop Environment's (KDE) Konsole and the generic XTerm.

The details of how to launch a terminal program differ from one desktop environment to another. You can normally find an entry in your desktop environment's menus, as outlined in Chapter 4, “Using Common Linux Programs.” For example, if you're using the KDE desktop environment, you can find the available terminals by following this menu-driven procedure:

1. Click the menu button, typically located at the lower-left corner of the screen.
2. Click All Applications > System > Terminal. You should see at least one terminal program, and perhaps more than one, in a display similar to Figure 6.1. Three terminal programs are shown in Figure 6.1: Terminal (Konsole), Terminal - Super User Mode, and XTerm.
3. Select the terminal that you want to use, and it will launch.

Many desktop environments also provide a search method for terminal programs. For example, if you are using Ubuntu's Unity desktop, follow this basic procedure:

1. Click the Dash (an icon with the Ubuntu symbol) located at the top of the application launcher.
2. In the search box, type **term**, as shown in Figure 6.2.

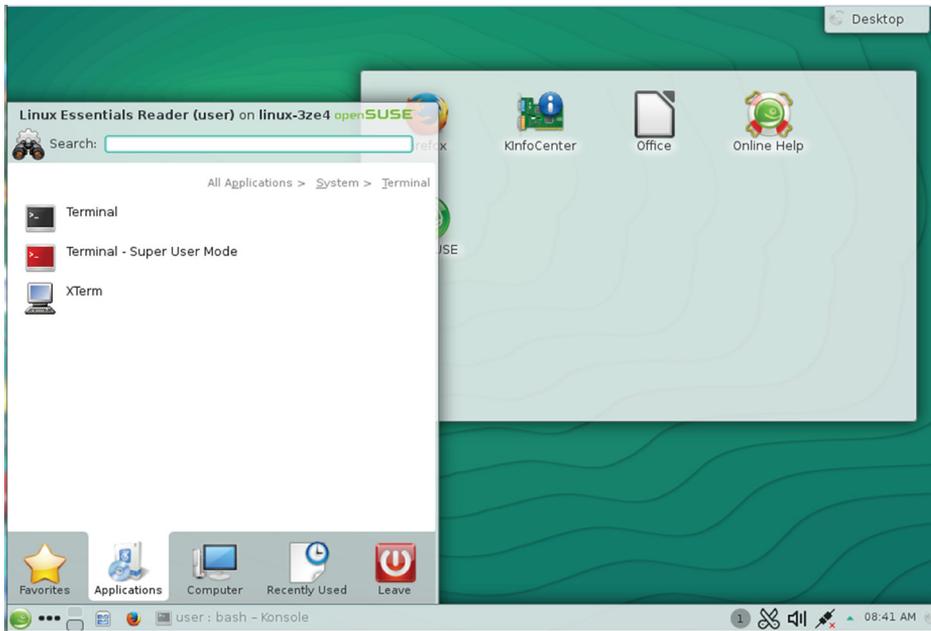


FIGURE 6.1 Reaching a terminal via a menu on KDE

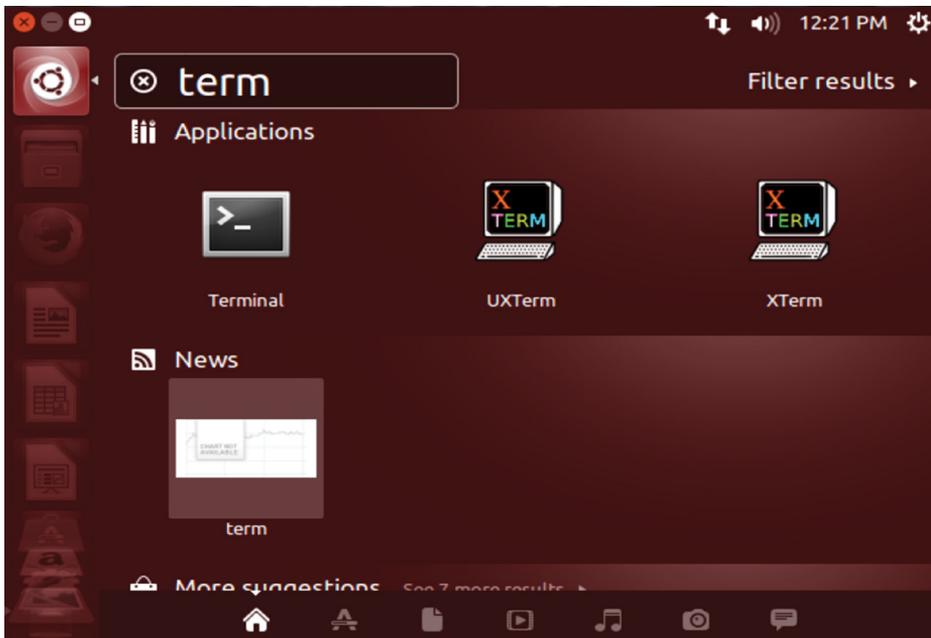


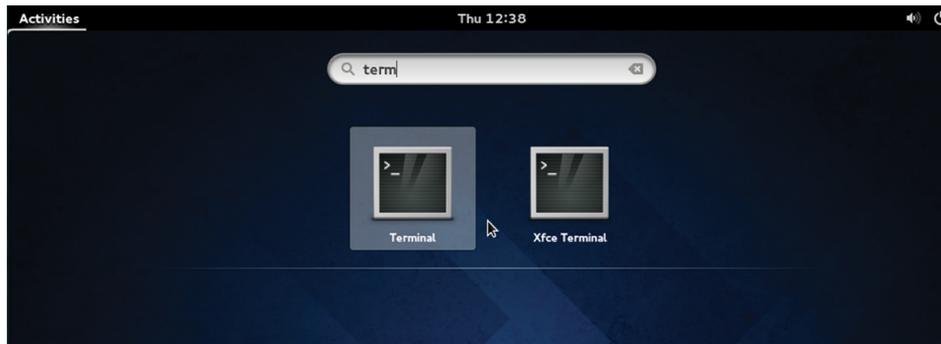
FIGURE 6.2 Reaching a terminal via a search on Unity

Some distributions allow you to open a terminal application quickly by pressing **Ctrl+Alt+T**.

3. Select the terminal that you want to use from Applications, and it will launch.

Figure 6.2 shows three different terminal applications: Terminal (GNOME terminal), UXTerm, and XTerm. The XTerm terminal application is one of the oldest and most basic terminal programs. UXTerm is simply XTerm with Unicode support added.

The procedure to search for terminal programs can vary greatly among desktops. For example, to reach the search box on a GNOME 3 desktop environment, you must click Activities in the upper-left window corner, as shown in Figure 6.3. Only two terminal applications are found in this example: Terminal (GNOME terminal) and Xfce Terminal, indicating that these desktop environments have been installed on this particular Linux system.

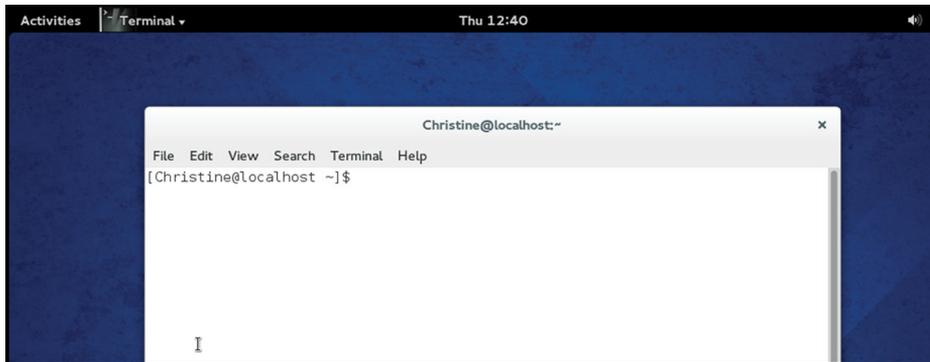


**FIGURE 6.3** Reaching a terminal via a search on GNOME 3

When you use the administrative account, `root`, the prompt normally ends in a hash mark (#). Chapter 12, “Understanding Basic Security,” describes the `root` account in more detail.

The GNOME Terminal program shows a prompt—`[Christine@localhost ~]$` in Figure 6.4. This example shows the default Fedora prompt, which includes your username, your computer’s hostname, your current directory (a tilde, `~`, refers to your home directory), and a dollar sign (`$`). Some of these features are likely to change as you use the shell, as described in Chapter 7, “Managing Files.” If you’re using another distribution, the prompt is likely to differ in details, although most default prompts end in a dollar sign (`$`) or a greater-than symbol (`>`) for ordinary user shells.

Most terminal programs provide common features of GUI programs—you can resize them, close them, select options from menus, and so on. Details depend on the program that you’re using, though. You may want to peruse the options available on your terminal program’s menus, so that you can set the font to one you like, change the color scheme, and so on.



**FIGURE 6.4** GNOME's Terminal program is typical and is dominated by a textual display area.

Most terminal programs support *tabs*, which are similar to the tabs in a web browser. In most cases, such as in a GNOME terminal, you can open a tab by choosing **File > Open Tab** from the terminal's menu. Having multiple tabs open is handy because it enables you to run multiple programs simultaneously, work easily in multiple directories, or run programs both as yourself and as *root*. Alternatively, you can run multiple terminal programs to achieve the same results.

When you're done with a terminal, you can close it like other programs by choosing **File > Close Window**. Alternatively, you can type **exit** and press **Enter** at its shell prompt.

## Logging into a Text-Mode Console

At first glance, Linux looks like Windows or Mac OS X in that it's a GUI operating system. Scratch the surface, though, and you'll find a purely text-mode interface waiting. Linux supports *virtual terminals (VTs)*, which are virtual screens that can hold various types of information—textual or graphical. Most Linux distributions run with six or seven VTs. In CentOS, Fedora, and Red Hat, the first VT typically runs the GUI window system. In most other distributions, the GUI runs in VT 7 or VT 8, leaving VT 1 as a text-mode display.

You can switch between VTs by pressing **Ctrl+Alt+F<sub>n</sub>**, where *F<sub>n</sub>* is a function key. (When switching between text-mode VTs, **Alt+F<sub>n</sub>** is sufficient.) Thus to reach and log into a text-mode console, follow these steps:

1. Press **Ctrl+Alt+F2**. You'll see a text-mode prompt that looks something like the first few lines in Figure 6.5.

The notation **Ctrl+Alt+F<sub>n</sub>** refers to pressing the **Ctrl** key and holding it; pressing the **Alt** key and holding it; and then pressing the desired function key and releasing all three keys at once.

▶  
When typing in your password at the virtual console terminal password prompt, nothing is displayed. Neither dots nor asterisks are displayed as they are when using a GUI login manager.

2. Type your username at this login prompt, and it will respond with a password prompt. In Figure 6.5, the username is *Christine*.
3. At the password prompt, type in your password.
4. If your login attempt is successful, you'll see a Bash prompt like the one shown in Figure 6.5.

```
Fedora release 20 (Heisenbug)
Kernel 3.18.7-100.fc20.x86_64 on an x86_64 (tty2)

localhost login: Christine
Password:
Last login: Thu Mar 19 12:35:01 on :0
[Christine@localhost ~]$ _
```

FIGURE 6.5 Reaching and logging into a VT

You can switch back and forth between your text-mode login and your GUI session by using `Ctrl+Alt+F $n$`  keystrokes. You can also initiate multiple text-mode logins and switch between them in the same way. This feature can be handy if you're trying to debug a problem that's related to the GUI.

When you're done with your text-mode session, type **exit** to terminate it. You can also type **logout** to end your session.

## Running Programs

Once you've opened a terminal or logged in using a text-mode tool, you should know how to use the shell. The Bash shell includes a few built-in commands, but much of what you'll do in a shell involves running other programs. As described in the following sections, you can run text-mode and GUI programs. Sometimes you may want to run a program in the background and retain use of the shell for other purposes, which can be convenient in many situations.

### Running Text-Mode Programs

Linux stores programs in several locations, including `/bin`, `/usr/bin`, and `/usr/local/bin`. (Programs that are used mainly by root appear in `/sbin`, `/usr/sbin`,

and `/usr/local/sbin` as well.) If an executable program appears in one of these directories (which make up the *path*), you can run it simply by typing its name:

```
$ free
      total        used         free       shared    buffers     cached
Mem:    3798016    3759004         39012           0        24800    1117444
-/+ buffers/cache:  2616760    1181256
Swap:   6291452           0         6291452
```

This example command displays information on the computer's use of memory. You needn't be concerned with the details of this command's output, though; just note that the `free` program displayed information in the same terminal in which it was launched. Chapter 9, "Exploring Processes and Process Data," covers the `free` program in more detail.

You can learn what directories make up the *path*—sometimes called the *defined path*—by typing the following command:

```
$ echo $PATH
```

The result will be a colon-delimited set of directory names, which the shell searches in sequence whenever you type a command that it doesn't handle directly. The `$PATH` is an environment variable, and it is called the *PATH env variable* in the Linux Essentials certification objectives. Environment variables are covered in more detail in Chapter 11, "Creating Scripts."

You can run a program that is not in one of the `$PATH` directories by typing the program's directory location along with its name, as follows:

```
$ /home/sally/myprog
```

If you would like to determine how an executable program would be handled, you can use the `type` command as follows:

```
$ type free
free is /bin/free
```

The result will show you the program's directory location (which may be a different location than what is shown in the preceding example, depending on the Linux distribution). If the `$PATH` environment variable contains the directory location, you need to enter only the program's name to run it.

Many commands accept *arguments*, which are subcommands or codes that follow the program name. For instance, the `cat` command, whose name is short for *concatenate*, can quickly display a short text file on the screen:

```
$ cat afile.txt
```

This is the contents of `afile.txt`.

Commands in this book that you should type yourself are in bold monospace font, and the program output is in standard monospace font.

Certification Objective

Certification Objective

When you run an executable program that does not have its location in `$PATH`, it is called *invoking a command outside the defined path*.

Commands, arguments, and filenames are case-sensitive in the shell.

The “Using man pages” section later in this chapter describes the man page system and other documentation in more detail.

In this example, `cat` takes a filename as an argument: `afile.txt`. Many programs enable you to perform a wide variety of tasks depending on the precise arguments that they’re given. You can learn about such arguments, and other usage details, by using the Linux manual system. The program to do this is called `man`, and you pass it the name of the command that you want to learn about as an argument, as in `man cat` to learn about the `cat` command.

The `man` command illustrates a feature of some text-mode programs: they can take over the entire terminal from which they’re launched. In the case of `man`, you can scroll up or down in the documentation by using arrow keys, Page Up, Page Down, and so on. Text editors, such as `vi`, `emacs`, and `nano`, use similar features.

## Running GUI Programs

You can run GUI programs from a terminal as well as text-based programs (however, this doesn’t work if you logged in using a text-mode VT). You must also know the program’s filename to run it. The filename is usually related to the name you use to launch the program from a desktop’s menus, but it’s not always identical. For instance, the Firefox web browser’s filename is `firefox`, so that’s what you’d need to type to launch Firefox in this way.

Some GUI programs produce text-mode output that can be useful in tracking down the source of problems, so launching a program from a terminal window can be a good first step when debugging problems. You might also want to launch programs in this way because it can be quicker than tracking down programs in a desktop environment’s menus, or because a program doesn’t appear in the environment’s menus.

## Running Programs in the Background

When you launch a GUI program from a terminal window, the GUI program opens its own window or windows. The terminal window remains open, but will normally become unresponsive. If you want to type more commands in this window, you can do so by selecting it and pressing `Ctrl+Z`. This *suspends* the running program—that is, it’s sent to sleep. In its sleeping state, the GUI program won’t respond to input or do any work. However, you can now use the terminal window to type in commands.

After you have suspended a program, if you want both to run the GUI program and to use the terminal from which you launched it, you can type `bg` (short for *background*) in the terminal. Both programs will now be active.

If you only want to wake the sleeping GUI program, type **fg**. This command returns the sleeping GUI program to the *foreground*, enabling it, but once again this makes your terminal unresponsive. Note that, in this context, the terms *background* and *foreground* refer to the program's relationship to the shell, not to the position of the program's windows in a "stack" of windows on the screen.

If you know before you launch it that you want to run a program in the background, you can do so by appending an ampersand (&) to the end of the command line, as in the following:

```
$ firefox &
```

This command launches the Firefox web browser in the background, enabling you to visit web pages and to continue to use the shell. This feature is most useful for running GUI programs, but it's sometimes used with text-mode programs too. A complex number-crunching program, for instance, might be designed to run for several minutes or hours and produce no output. You might therefore want to run it in the background and retain control of your shell. Be aware, however, that if you launch a program in the background and it produces output to the terminal, that output will continue to appear in your shell, possibly intruding on whatever else you're trying to do with the shell.

## Using Shell Features

Bash includes several features that make using it much easier. Some have already been described. Many others are beyond the scope of this book. Two, however, deserve attention—even in a brief introduction to the command line: command completion and command history.

## Using Command Completion

*Command completion* is the hero of everybody who hates typing: it's a way to enter a long command or filename with a minimal number of keystrokes. To use command completion, you type part of a command or filename and then press the Tab key. If only one command on the path completes the command, Bash fills in the rest—and likewise when using command completion to refer to files. To illustrate the use of command completion, you can try it out with a few commands:

1. Launch a shell.
2. Type **wh** followed by pressing the Tab key. The computer will probably beep or sound a tone. This indicates that your incomplete command could be completed by multiple commands, so you must type more

Pressing Ctrl+Z also suspends most text-mode programs, enabling you to use the shell before returning to the program by typing fg.

Some details of how command completion works vary from one distribution to another.

characters. (In some configurations, the computer skips straight to the next step, as if you'd pressed Tab twice.)

3. Press the Tab key again. The shell displays a list of possible completions, such as `what is`, `where is`, and `whoami`.
4. Type `oa`, making your command so far `whoa`, and press the Tab key again. The computer will probably complete the command: `whoami`. (If it doesn't, another program that completes the command may exist on your computer, so you may need to type another character or two.)
5. Press the Enter key. The computer runs `whoami`, which displays the name of the account you are currently using.

If command completion is not working for you, the terminal program may have it configured to be turned off.

Sometimes command completion will be able to complete a command only partially. For instance, typing `gru` and then pressing Tab is likely to add a single unique character, `b`. However, several commands begin with `grub`, so you must then add more characters yourself. (These commands deal with the Grand Unified Bootloader, GRUB, which helps Linux to boot.)

Command completion also works with files. For instance, you can type `cat /etc/ser` followed by the Tab key to have Bash complete the filename, and therefore the command, as `cat /etc/services`. (This command shows you the contents of a Linux configuration file.)

## Using Command History

Bash remembers the recent commands that you've typed, and you can use this fact to save yourself some effort if you need to type a command that's similar to one that you've typed recently. In its most basic form, you can use the up-arrow key to enter the previous command; pressing the up-arrow repeatedly moves backward through earlier and earlier commands. Table 6.1 summarizes some other commonly used keystrokes that you can use in the command history—or even when editing new commands.

Many of the Bash command-editing features are similar to those used by the emacs text editor.

**TABLE 6.1** Bash editing and command history features

Keystroke	Effect
Up arrow	Retrieves the previous entry from the command history.
Down arrow	Retrieves an earlier entry bypassed when using the up arrow.
Left arrow	Moves the cursor left one character.

Keystroke	Effect
Right arrow	Moves the cursor right one character.
Ctrl+A	Moves the cursor to the start of the line.
Ctrl+E	Moves the cursor to the end of the line.
Delete key	Deletes the character under the cursor.
Backspace key	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.
Ctrl+T	Swaps the character under the cursor with the one to the left of the cursor.
Ctrl+X and then Ctrl+E	Launches a full-fledged editor on the current command line.
Ctrl+R	Searches for a command. Type a few characters, and the shell will locate the latest command to include those characters. You can search for the next-most-recent command to include those characters by pressing Ctrl+R again.

As an example of command history in use, try this:

1. Type **echo \$PATH** to see the directories that make up your defined path.
2. Press the up-arrow key. Your `echo $PATH` command should reappear.
3. Press the Backspace key five times to delete `$PATH`.
4. Type **Hello World** to make the new command `echo Hello World`, and then press Enter. You should now see the words `Hello World` displayed on your screen.
5. Press Ctrl+R. The Bash prompt will change to read:  
(reverse-i-search) `':.
6. Type **P** (without pressing Enter). Your earlier `echo $PATH` command will appear.
7. Press Enter. The `echo $PATH` command should execute again.

Another history feature is the `history` command. Type **history** to view all of the commands in your history, or add a number (as in **history 10**) to view the most recent specified number of commands.

The Ctrl+R search feature searches on anything you enter on a command line—a command name, a filename, or other command parameters.

You should experiment with these features. Tab completion and command history are both powerful tools that can help you avoid a great deal of repetitive typing. Command history can also be a useful memory aid. For example, if you've forgotten the exact name of a file or command that you used recently, you might be able to retrieve it by searching on part of the name that you *do* remember.

## Getting Help Using *man* Pages



Sometimes you need help to remember what arguments or options a command can use, or the proper syntax needed when entering a command. The *manual pages* (also called *man pages*) can help. Manual pages describe not only programs, but also configuration files and other features of a Linux installation.

Before you consult them, though, you should understand their purpose, and therefore their capabilities and limitations. With that information in mind, you can begin searching for help in the *man* page system, including searching for *man* pages by section or by searching for keywords using the `whatis` or `apropos` utilities. Once you're reading a *man* page, knowing its structure can help you quickly locate the information that you need.

### Understanding the Purpose of *man* Pages

Linux *man* pages can be an extremely helpful resource, but you must understand their purpose and limitations. Unlike the help systems in some OSs, Linux *man* pages are not supposed to be tutorial in nature; they're intended as quick references to help somebody who's already at least somewhat familiar with a command, configuration file, or other OS feature. They're most useful when you need to know the options to use with a command, the name of an option in a configuration file, or similar details. If you need to learn a new program from scratch, other documentation is often a better choice. Manual pages also vary greatly in quality; some are very good, but others are frustratingly terse, and occasionally even inaccurate. For the most part, the programmers who wrote the program in question write them.

In this book, many Linux commands are described in a tutorial style. However, information is often omitted on obscure options, subtle program effects, and so on. In principle, *man* pages should cover such finer points. This makes *man* pages an excellent resource to learn more about the commands described in this book, should you need to go further.

The upcoming section, "Finding Additional Documentation," describes how to locate documentation that is more tutorial than the *man* pages.



## Locating *man* Pages by Section Number

In the simplest case, you can read a *man* page by typing **man** followed by the name of a command, configuration file, system call, or other keyword. Each *man* page falls into one of nine categories, as summarized in Table 6.2. Some keywords lead to entries in multiple sections. In such instances, the *man* utility returns the entry in the section based on a search order typically specified by the **SECTION** setting in the `/etc/man_db.conf` or the `/etc/manpath.config` configuration file (depending on your distribution). You can override this behavior by passing a section number before the keyword. For instance, typing **man passwd** returns information from manual section 1 on the `passwd` command, but typing **man 5 passwd** returns information from manual section 5 on the `/etc/passwd` file format. Some *man* pages have entries in sections with variant numbers that include the suffix *p*, as in section 1*p*. These refer to *POSIX* standard *man* pages, as opposed to the Linux *man* pages, which are, for the most part, written by the people who wrote the open source Linux programs that the *man* pages describe.

**TABLE 6.2** Manual sections

Section number	Description
1	Executable programs and shell commands
2	System calls provided by the kernel
3	Library calls provided by program libraries
4	Device files (usually stored in <code>/dev</code> )
5	File formats
6	Games
7	Miscellaneous (macro packages, conventions, and so on)
8	System administration commands (programs run mostly or exclusively by <code>root</code> )
9	Kernel routines

The precise *man* page search order defined by **SECTION** varies from one distribution to another, but section 1 is usually searched first, followed by section 8 and then the others.

▶  
Get help on using and reading the man pages by typing `man man` at the command line.

If you're just starting out with Linux, chances are that you'll be most interested in section 1, which is also usually the first section in the man page search order—although section 6 can also be interesting if you have the time to spare! As you move on to more advanced and administrative tasks, you'll find sections 4, 5, and 8 important. Sections 2, 3, and 9 are of most interest to programmers.

## Searching for a *man* Page

One of the problems with man pages is that it can be hard to locate help on a topic unless you know the name of the command, system call, or file that you want to use. Fortunately, methods of searching the manual database exist and can help lead you to an appropriate man page:

▶  
Details of what man pages are available vary from one distribution to another. This will affect the results of both `what is` and `apropos` searches.

**Summary Search** The `what is` command searches summary information contained in man pages for the keyword you specify. The command returns a one-line summary for every matching man page. (This summary is the Name section, described shortly, in “Reading man Pages.”) You can then use this information to locate and read the man page that you need. This command is most useful for locating all of the man pages on a topic. For instance, typing `what is passwd` returns lines confirming the existence of the man page entries for `passwd` in various sections.

▶  
The `-k` option to `man` is equivalent to `apropos`. Thus you can type either `apropos keyword` or `man -k keyword`.

**Thorough Search** The `apropos` command performs a more thorough search, of both the Name and Description sections of man pages. The result looks much like the results of a `what is` search, except that it's likely to contain many more results. In fact, doing an `apropos` search on a very common keyword, such as *the*, is likely to return so many hits as to make the search useless. A search on a less common word is likely to be more useful. For instance, typing `apropos passwd` may return 16 entries on a system, including those for `gpasswd`, `smbpasswd`, and `passwd`—all various password utilities or tools involving password files.

If you receive a “nothing appropriate” response from either the `what is` or `apropos` command, typically you need to change the keyword that you are using. However, it may indicate that the man database has not been updated. This is typically true on a fresh Linux installation or after a new program is installed. You can update the man database manually by using superuser privileges and typing in the command `makewhat is` (on older Linux distributions) or `mandb`. (Using superuser privileges is described in Chapter 12.)

## Reading *man* Pages

The convention for man pages is a concise style that employs several sections, each of which has a particular purpose. This organization can help you locate

the information that you need—you might need information that you know is in a particular section, in which case you can quickly scan down to that section. Common sections include the following:

**Name** A man page begins with a statement of the command, call, or file that's described, along with a few words of explanation. For instance, the man page for `man` (section 1) has a Name section that reads `man - an interface to the on-line reference manuals`.

**Synopsis** The synopsis provides a brief description of how a command is used. Optional parameters appear in square brackets, such as `[-D]`. An ellipsis (...) denotes an optional set of repeated elements, such as multiple filenames if a command takes one or more filenames as options. Some commands provide multiple synopsis lines, indicating that certain options are contingent upon others.

**Description** The description is an English-language summary of what the command, file, or other element does. The description can vary from a short summary to many pages in length.

**Options** This section expands on the options outlined in the Synopsis section. Typically, each option appears in a list, with a one-paragraph explanation indented just below it.

**Files** This section lists files that are associated with the man page's subject. These might be configuration files for a server or other program, related configuration files, files the page's subject modifies, and so on.

**See Also** This section provides pointers to related information in the man system, typically with a section number appended. For instance, the man page for `man` refers to the man pages for `apropos`, `what is`, and several other related tools.

**Bugs** Many man pages provide a Bugs section in which the author describes any known bugs or limitations, or states that no known bugs exist.

**History** Some man pages provide a summary of the program's history, citing project start dates and major milestones between then and the current version. This history isn't nearly as comprehensive as the `changes` file that comes with most programs' source code.

**Author** Most man pages end with an Author section, which tells you how to contact the author of the program.

Specific manual pages may contain fewer, more, or different sections than these. For instance, the Synopsis section is typically omitted from man pages on configuration files. Manual pages with particularly verbose descriptions often split the Description section into several parts, each with its own title.

Figure 6.6 shows a typical man page in a terminal window. As you can see, section names appear in bold uppercase letters, making it easy to locate relevant sections as you page through the document.

By default, man uses the `less` program to enable you to move back and forth in the document, and when you're done, exit the man pages. The upcoming section, "Using `less`," describes this program in detail.

```
christine@server01: ~
WHATIS(1)                Manual pager utils                WHATIS(1)

NAME
  whatis - display one-line manual page descriptions

SYNOPSIS
  whatis [-dlv?V] [-r|-w] [-s list] [-m system[,...]]
  [-M path] [-L locale] [-C file] name ...

DESCRIPTION
  Each manual page has a short description available
  within it. whatis searches the manual page names and
  displays the manual page descriptions of any name
  matched.

  name may contain wildcards (-w) or be a regular
  expression (-r). Using these options, it may be nec-
  essary to quote the name or escape (\) the special
  characters to stop the shell from interpreting them.

  index databases are used during the search, and are
  updated by the mandb program. Depending on your
  Manual page whatis(1) line 1 (press h for help or q to quit)
```

FIGURE 6.6 The formatting of man pages helps you locate information quickly.

Although `man` is a text-mode command, GUI variants exist. The `xman` program (which is not installed by default on all distributions) provides a point-and-click method of browsing through man pages. You can't type a subject on the command line to view it as you would with `man`, though—you must launch `xman` and then browse through the manual sections to a specific subject.

## Using *less*

Linux's man system uses a program called `less` to display information. This program is a *pager*, which displays a text file one screen (that is, one page) at a time.

You can move forward or backward through the file, move to a specific line, and search for information. Table 6.3 summarizes the most common ways of moving about a document using `less`.

**TABLE 6.3** `less` file-navigation commands

Keystroke	Action
h or H	Displays help on using <code>less</code> .
Page Down, spacebar, Ctrl+V, f, or Ctrl+F	Moves down one screen in the document.
Page Up, Esc+V, b, or Ctrl+B	Moves up one screen in the document.
Down arrow, Enter, Ctrl+N, e, Ctrl+E, j, or Ctrl+J	Moves down one line in the document.
Up arrow, y, Ctrl+Y, Ctrl+P, k, or Ctrl+K	Moves up one line in the document.
xg, x<, or x Esc+<	Goes to line x in the document—for instance, typing <b>100g</b> displays the document's 100th line. If x is omitted, the default is 1.
xG, x>, or x Esc+>	Goes to line x in the document. If x is omitted, the default is the last line of the document.
xp or x%	Goes to the point x percent through the document—for instance, typing <b>50p</b> goes to the document's halfway point.
/ <i>pattern</i>	Searches forward for <i>pattern</i> in the document, starting at the current location. For instance, typing <b>/BUGS</b> searches for the string BUGS.
? <i>pattern</i>	Performs a backward search, locating instances of <i>pattern</i> before the current location.
n or /	Repeats the previous search.
q, Q, :q, :Q, or ZZ	Quits from the <code>less</code> pager.



An earlier pager was known as `more`, but `less` adds more features. This peculiar name is an example of geek humor.



The notation `Esc+V` refers to pressing the `Esc` key followed by the `V` key.

Table 6.3 presents a small fraction of the commands available in `less`. To learn more about `less`, you can read its man page:

1. Log in to the computer in text mode or open a terminal window.
2. Type `man less`. This action opens the man page for the `less` pager.
3. Read the first screen of text. When you finish reading the last word at the bottom of the screen, press the spacebar key. This moves the display to the next page, so that you can continue reading.
4. Press the up-arrow key. This moves the display up a single line, which is useful if you need to reread just a few words from the end of the last page.
5. Press the down-arrow key. As you might expect, this moves the display down by one line.
6. Press the Esc key followed by the V key. This moves the display back one page.
7. Press Shift+G to move to the end of the man page.
8. Press the G key (*without* using the Shift key) to move back to the start of the man page.
9. Type `/OPTIONS` to locate the Options section. Chances are that your first hits will be to references to this section, rather than to the Options section itself.
10. Repeatedly press the N key until you find the Options section.
11. Press the Q key to quit from `less`, and therefore from reading the man page.

You could use the Page Down key or others noted in Table 6.3 instead of the spacebar, if you prefer. Similar substitutions are possible in subsequent steps.

Some implementations search in a case-sensitive manner, but others are case-insensitive. Try searching on options (in lowercase) to determine which is the situation with your implementation.

Of course, when you read man pages, you aren't likely to use these exact options; you'll use whatever features you need to use to find the content that interests you. The key is to familiarize yourself with a few important features so that you can make effective use of `less` to read man pages and other documents.

Although `less` is important for reading man pages, you can also use it to read other text-mode documents, such as README files that come with many programs or other plain-text documents. To use `less` in this way, type its name followed by the filename of the file that you want to read, as in `less README` to read the README document. You can use all of the actions summarized in

Table 6.3 (or by less’s man page) on documents read in this way, just as you can on man pages.

## Getting Help Using *info* Pages

The man page system is typical on Unix-like OSs, including Linux, but it’s also quite old and is therefore limited. A newer documentation system, known as *info pages*, is also available. The next few pages describe how *info* pages fill gaps in the man page system and how to use *info* pages.

Certification  
Objective

### Understanding the Purpose of *info* Pages

The basic design of man pages dates back decades, so it predates some important developments in managing information. Most notably, man pages are not *hyperlinked*. Although a See Also section is common in man pages, you can’t select one of these items to read the relevant man page directly; you must quit the man system and type a new man command to read the new page. This lack of hyperlinking also makes navigating through a large man page awkward. You can use text searches to locate information that you desire, but these often find the wrong text—or if you mistype a string, your search might fail completely.

The goal of *info* pages is to overcome these problems by supporting hyperlinking. Each *info* page is known as a *node*, and the *info* page system as a whole is an interrelated set of nodes, similar to the World Wide Web (WWW) of the Internet. An individual program’s documentation may be split up across multiple nodes, which can make each node easier to locate and search—but if you need to search for information and you’re not sure in which node it resides, you may need to search multiple nodes.

Nodes are organized on *levels*, which are similar to the levels of organization in a book. This book, for instance, has chapters and two levels of headings within each chapter. Similarly, the *info* page for a program is likely to have one main node, similar to a chapter, along with multiple nodes at a lower level, similar to chapter headings. Some programs’ *info* pages include further levels to help organize information.

In terms of writing style, *info* pages are similar to man pages—they are terse but comprehensive descriptions of their topics—intended for people who are already at least broadly familiar with the programs in question. If you’re just starting out with a program, other types of documentation (described later, in “Finding Additional Documentation”) may be a better choice.

The `/usr/doc` and `/usr/share/doc` directories often contain a great deal of useful information. If you cannot find the information you are seeking in the man or *info* pages, look in these directories.



Broadly speaking, programs sponsored by the Free Software Foundation (FSF) use `info` pages in preference to `man` pages. Many FSF programs now ship with minimal `man` pages that point the user to the programs' `info` pages. Non-FSF programmers have been slower to embrace `info` pages; many such programs don't ship with `info` pages at all, and instead rely on traditional `man` pages. The `info` browser can read and display `man` pages, so using `info` exclusively can be an effective strategy for reading Linux's standard documentation.

## Reading *info* Pages



The usual tool for reading `info` pages is called `info`. To use it, you type **info** followed by the topic, as in **info info** to learn about the `info` system itself. Once you're in the `info` system, you can use a number of keystrokes, summarized in Table 6.4, to move around a document.

**TABLE 6.4** `info` file-navigation commands

Keystroke	Action
?	Displays help information.
N	Moves to the next node in a linked series of nodes on a single hierarchical level. This action may be required if the author intended several nodes to be read in a particular sequence.
P	Moves back in a series of nodes on a single hierarchical level. This can be handy if you've moved forward in such a series but find that you need to review earlier material.
U	Moves up one level in the node hierarchy.
Arrow keys	Moves the cursor around the screen, enabling you to select node links or scroll the screen.
Page Up, Page Down	These keys scroll up and down within a single node, respectively. (The standard <code>info</code> browser also implements many of the more arcane commands used by <code>less</code> and outlined in Table 6.3.)
Enter	Moves to a new node after you've selected it. Links are indicated by asterisks (*) to the left of their names.

Keystroke	Action
L	Displays the last info page that you read. This action can move you up, down, or sideways in the info tree hierarchy.
T	Displays the top page for a topic. Typically, this is the page that you used to enter the system.
Q	Exits the info page system.

As an example of info pages in use, try the following:

1. Log in to the computer in text mode or open a terminal window.
2. Type **info info**. You should see the top node for the info documentation appear.
3. Read the main page, using the arrow keys or the Page Down key to view the entire page.
4. Using the arrow keys, select the link to the Expert Info node near the bottom of the main page.
5. Press the Enter key to view the Expert Info node.
6. Press the U key to browse up one level—back to the main node.
7. Browse to the Advanced node.
8. Press the N key to go on to the next node on the current level, which in fact is the Expert Info node.
9. Press the Q key to exit from the info reader.

If you're more comfortable with GUIs than with text-mode tools, you can access info pages with point-and-click tools:

**Emacs** The GNU Emacs editor, which is an extremely powerful text editor, provides an info page browser as part of its info package.

**tkinfo** This stand-alone program (which is not installed by default on all distributions) provides a point-and-click interface to the info page system. You can use most of the same keyboard options as with the info browser, but you can also navigate by clicking links or by using the buttons or menu options that it provides.

Unlike the text-mode info program, neither the Emacs' info browser nor tkinfo can display man pages.



## Finding Additional Documentation

▶ Documentation categories can blur together. For instance, documentation might be available online but not on your computer until you install an appropriate package.

Although `man` pages and `info` pages are both useful resources, other documentation is available too, and it is sometimes preferable to these forms of documentation. Broadly speaking, help on Linux can come in three forms: additional documentation on your computer, additional documentation online, and help from experts.

## Locating Program Documentation on Your Computer

Most Linux programs ship with their own documentation, even aside from `man` or `info` pages. In fact, some programs have so much documentation that it's installed as a separate package, typically with the word `documentation` or `doc` in the package name, such as `samba-doc`.

The most basic and traditional form of program documentation is a file called `README`, `readme.txt`, or something similar. Precisely what information this file contains varies greatly from one program to another. For some, the file is so terse that it's nearly useless. For others, it is extremely helpful. These files are almost always plain-text files, so you can read them with `less` or with your favorite text editor.

If you downloaded the program as a source code file from the software package maintainer's site, the `README` file typically appears in the *build directory* extracted from the compressed source code file. If you installed the program from a package file, though, the `README` file could be in any of several locations. The most likely places are as follows:

- ▶ `/usr/doc/packagename`
- ▶ `/usr/share/doc/packagename`
- ▶ `/usr/share/doc/packages/packagename`

In the previous list, *packagename* is the software package's name. The package name sometimes includes a version number, but more often it does not.

In addition to (or instead of) the `README` file, many programs provide other documentation files. These may include a file that documents the history of the program in fine detail, descriptions of compilation and installation procedures, information on configuration file formats, and so on. Check the source

▶ `README` files often contain information on building the software package that doesn't apply to program files provided with a distribution. Distribution maintainers seldom change such information in their `README` files, though.

Certification  
Objective

code's build directory or the directory in which you found the README file for other files.

Some larger programs ship with extensive documentation in PostScript, Portable Document Format (PDF), Hypertext Markup Language (HTML), or other formats. Depending on the format and package, you might find a single file or a large collection of files. As with the README files, these files are well worth consulting, particularly if you want to learn how to use a package to its fullest.

Some programs rely on configuration files, typically located in the `/etc/` directory, to control their behavior. Although the syntax in configuration files is often difficult to understand, many distributions provide default configuration files that include extensive comments. Details vary from one program to another, but comment lines often begin with hash marks (`#`). You may be able to learn enough about a program to adjust its configuration merely by reading the comments in its configuration file.

If you can't find a README or similar file, you can employ various tools to help find documentation files:

- ▶ You can use your distribution's package management system to locate documentation. For instance, on an RPM-based system, you might type `rpm -ql apackage | grep doc` to locate documentation for *apackage*. Using `grep` to search for the string `doc` in the file list is a good trick because documentation directories almost always contain the string `doc`.
- ▶ The Linux `find` command can search your entire directory tree, or a subset of it, for files that match a specified criterion. To search for a file that includes a certain string in its name, for instance, you might type `find /usr/share/doc -name "*string*"`, where *string* is the keyword that you want to find in a filename. This command searches the `/usr/share/doc` directory tree, but you can search another directory tree instead. If you search a directory with lots of files and subdirectories, this command can take a long time to complete.
- ▶ The `whereis` program searches for files in a restricted set of locations, such as standard *binary* file directories, library directories, and `man` page directories. This tool does *not* search user directories. The `whereis` utility is a quick way to find program executables and

Chapter 9 describes the principles of package management tools.

Chapter 8, "Searching, Extracting, and Archiving Data," describes many of these searching tools, such as `grep` and `find`, in greater detail.

related files like documentation or configuration files. To use it, type **whereis** followed by the name of the command or file, as in **whereis less** to find the `less` binary and related documentation.

- ▶ The Linux `locate` command searches a database of filenames that Linux maintains. It can therefore do its job much quicker than `find` can, but you can't control the part of the computer that the system searches. Type **locate** followed by the string that you want to find, as in **locate xterm** to find any files related to the XTerm terminal program.

Once you've located documentation files, you must know how to read them. The details, of course, depend on the documentation's file format. You can use `less` to read many files. Most distributions configure `less` in such a way that it can interpret common file formats, such as HTML, and to automatically decompress files that are stored in compressed format to save disk space. Table 6.5 summarizes common documentation file formats and the programs that you can use to read them. Which formats are used varies from one program to another.

The `locate` database is typically updated every 24 hours. If you are working on a freshly installed distribution, or you are searching for newly installed package files, the `updatedb` command will need to be run using superuser privileges in order to update the `locate` database manually prior to using the `locate` command.

If you want to see a formatted text file, such as an HTML file, in a raw form, use the `-L` option to `less`, as in `less -L file.html`.

Manually uncompressing a file with `gunzip`, `unxz`, or `bunzip2` may require writing the uncompressed version to disk, so you may need to copy the file to your home directory. See Chapter 8 for more details.

**TABLE 6.5** Common documentation file formats

Filename extension	Description	Programs for reading
.1 through .9	Unix man pages	<code>man</code> , <code>info</code> , <code>less</code>
.gz, .xz, or .bz2	File compressed with <code>gzip</code> , <code>xz</code> , or <code>bzip2</code>	Use <code>gunzip</code> , <code>unxz</code> , or <code>bunzip2</code> to uncompress; or use <code>less</code> , which may be able to uncompress the file and read its underlying format
.txt	Plain text	<code>less</code> or any text editor
.html or .htm	HTML	Any web browser
.odt	OpenDocument text	OpenOffice.org, LibreOffice, or many other word processors
.pdf	Portable Document Format (PDF)	Evince, Okular, Adobe Reader, <code>xpdf</code>
.tif, .png, .jpg	Graphics file formats	The GIMP, Eye of GNOME ( <code>eog</code> )

## Locating Program Documentation Online

In addition to the documentation that you find on your computer, you can locate documentation on the Internet. Most packages have associated Internet websites, which may be referred to in `man` pages, `info` pages, `README` files, or other documentation. Check these pages to look up documentation.

A few general Linux documentation resources are available on the Internet. The documentation offered by these sites, however, is often out-of-date. Typically, distributions have their own online sites providing up-to-date documentation. Helpful online documentation resources include the following:

- ▶ The Linux Documentation Project, or LDP ([www.tldp.org](http://www.tldp.org))
- ▶ Red Hat Product Documentation (<https://access.redhat.com/documentation>)
- ▶ Official Ubuntu Documentation (<https://help.ubuntu.com/>)
- ▶ openSUSE Documentation—ActiveDoc (<https://activedoc.opensuse.org/>)
- ▶ Fedora Documentation (<https://docs.fedoraproject.org/>)

Many Linux distributions use community volunteers to write and/or improve their documentation. These volunteers' practical experience adds to the accuracy and depth of the distribution's documentation, which makes these sites valuable resources.

## Consulting Experts

Whatever the issue is that has you looking for documentation, chances are that you're not the first person to do so. In some cases, you can save yourself a lot of time by asking another person for help. Some specific resources that you can use include the following:

**Program Authors** Many open source authors are happy to answer questions or provide limited support, particularly if a bug causes your problem. Bigger projects (including most Linux distributions) have many authors, and these projects often provide web forums or mailing lists to help users and developers communicate.

**Web Forums and Mailing Lists** These resources differ in format but serve similar purposes: they enable users to communicate with one another and share their expertise. Many distributions have dedicated web forums; try a web search on your distribution name and *forum* to find yours. Mailing lists are more



Be aware that items on the LDP site can be rather out-of-date. Be sure to check an item's revision date prior to using it!

common for individual programs. Search the program's main website for information on mailing lists.

**IRC** Internet Relay Chat (IRC) is a tool for real-time text-mode communication among small groups of people. To use IRC, you need an IRC client program, such as Irssi ([www.irssi.org](http://www.irssi.org)), HexChat (<https://hexchat.github.io/>), or Smuxi (<https://smuxi.im/>). You can then join an IRC channel in which IRC users exchange messages in real time.

Some Linux distributions, such as Red Hat Enterprise Linux and SUSE Enterprise Linux, come with support. If you're using such a distribution, you may have already paid for consulting.

**Paid Consultants** Paying somebody a consulting fee can often be worthwhile to fix a thorny problem, particularly if you're facing a "time is money" situation in which a delay in solving the problem will literally cost more money. A web search will turn up numerous Linux consulting firms.

**Web Searches** Web search engines index many Internet resources, including man pages, program documentation sites, web forums, and even IRC channel discussions. A web search can provide you with an answer from an expert without your needing to contact the expert directly.

Careful use of these resources can help you with many Linux problems, whether those problems are simply a lack of knowledge on your part, a misconfiguration, a program bug, or some terrible disaster such as a software update that rendered your computer unbootable.

The problem today is that there's often *too much* information available; sifting through the irrelevant (or just plain bad) information to find the helpful advice can be difficult. To overcome this challenge, being specific can be helpful. You can narrow a web search by adding keywords that you believe are relevant to the problem but that are uncommon. Words found in error messages can be helpful in this respect. If you post a problem to a web forum or send a bug report to a program author, be as specific as possible. Include information on the distribution that you're using, the version of the software with which you need help, and specific details about what it's doing. If the program displays error messages, quote them exactly. Such details will help experts zero in on the cause of the problem.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Command lines are powerful tools in Linux; they're the basis on which many of the friendlier GUI tools are built. They can be accessed without the help of a GUI, and they can be scripted. To use the text-mode tools described in other chapters of this book, you should be familiar with the basics of a Linux shell. These include knowing how to start a shell, how to run programs in a shell, and how to use a shell's time-saving features.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND *(Continued)*

Whether you need to learn more about a program to use it effectively, or solve a problem with a misbehaving program, getting help is often necessary. Linux provides several documentation resources for such situations. The first of these is the `man` page system, which documents most text-mode commands, configuration files, and system calls. The `info` page system is similar to the `man` page system, but `info` pages employ a more advanced hypertexted file format. If you need more tutorial information than the `man` or `info` pages provide, you can often obtain help in the form of extended official user manuals, web pages, and other documents, both on your computer and on the Internet. Finally, interacting with experts can help resolve a problem, so you can use numerous in-person and online resources to get the help that you need.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ Launch a GUI program, such as `firefox`, with and without a trailing ampersand (&). When you launch it without an ampersand, use `Ctrl+Z` to put it into the background and see how the program reacts to mouse clicks. Use `fg` to return it to the foreground, and then repeat the process but use `bg` to run the program in the background. See what happens in your terminal when you exit from the GUI program.
- ▶ In a shell, type a single letter, such as `m`, and press the Tab key. What happens? What happens if you type a less common letter, such as `z`, and then press Tab?
- ▶ Experiment with the command history. Use it to search on strings that are part of both command names and filenames that you've used. Use the arrow keys and editing features described in Table 6.1 to edit commands that you've used previously.
- ▶ Read the `man` pages for the following items: `man`, `less`, `whereis`, `find`, and `locate`. What have you learned about these commands that goes beyond the descriptions in this book?
- ▶ Search `/usr/share/doc` for documentation on important programs that you use frequently, such as the GIMP, Firefox, or GNOME.
- ▶ Check your distribution's website, or perform a web search, to find a web forum that supports your distribution. Read some of the discussion threads to get a feel for some of the topics that come up.

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. What keystroke moves the cursor to the start of the line when typing a command in Bash?
  - A. `Ctrl+A`
  - B. Left arrow
  - C. `Ctrl+T`
  - D. Up arrow
  - E. `Ctrl+E`

*(Continues)*

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** (Continued)

2. How can you run a program in the background when launching it from a shell? (Select all that apply.)
  - A. Launch the program by typing **start *command***, where *command* is the command that you want to run.
  - B. Launch the program by typing **bg *command***, where *command* is the command that you want to run.
  - C. Append an ampersand (&) to the end of the command line.
  - D. Launch the program normally, type Ctrl+Z in the shell, and then type **bg** in the shell.
  - E. Launch the program normally, type Ctrl+Z in the shell, and then type **fg** in the shell.
3. Which of the following commands is an improved version of `more`?
  - A. `grep`
  - B. `html`
  - C. `cat`
  - D. `less`
  - E. `man`
4. True or false: Pressing **Alt+F2** in the GUI brings up a text-mode display that you can use to log in to Linux.
5. True or false: You can force `man` to display a man page in a specific section of the manual by preceding the search name with the section number, as in `man 5 passwd`.
6. True or false: `info` pages are a web-based documentation format.
7. True or false: Linux documentation in the `/usr/share/doc` directory tree is almost always in OpenDocument text format.
8. Type `logout` or \_\_\_\_\_ to end a text-mode terminal session.
9. Each document in an `info` page is known as a(n) \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The \_\_\_\_\_ command searches a database of filenames, enabling you to identify files quickly whose names match a term that you specify.

# Managing Files

*Much of what you* do with a computer involves manipulating files. Most obvious, files hold the correspondence, spreadsheets, digital photos, and other documents that you create. Files also hold the configuration settings for Linux—information on how to treat the network interfaces, how to access hard disks, and what to do as the computer starts up. Indeed, even access to most hardware devices and kernel settings is ultimately done through files. Knowing where to find the files and how to manage them is critically important for administering a Linux computer.

This chapter begins with a description of the basic layout of Linux file storage. It then shows how to navigate your way around the Linux filesystem to get to your files. Finally, it goes through the basic text-mode commands for manipulating files and directories.

- ▶ **Understanding where things go**
- ▶ **Navigating directories**
- ▶ **Manipulating files**
- ▶ **Manipulating directories**

## Understanding Where Things Go

The term *filesystem* can refer to low-level data structures or to the organization of files and directories on the computer. In this chapter, the latter meaning is the most common.

As discussed in Chapter 5, “Managing Hardware,” Linux uses a unified directory tree: every partition, removable disk, network file share, and other disk or disk-like storage device is accessible as a directory in a single directory tree (or *filesystem*). This filesystem is structured. Some directories have a specific purpose that’s common among all Linux distributions, whether the directories exist as regular subdirectories on one partition or are separate devices that are mounted off the root (/) device. Understanding the purpose of the main directories will help you to locate files and avoid making disastrous mistakes. Before delving into those specifics, however, you should understand the distinction between user files and system files.

## User Files vs. System Files

To understand the distinction between user files and system files, recall that Linux is a multiuser OS. In principle, a single computer can host thousands of users. Consider such a computer for a moment—perhaps it’s a mainframe at a university, a large business, or a cloud-computing server. The vast majority of this computer’s users will be unfamiliar with the details of Linux system administration—they want only to use their word processors, email clients, and other applications. These users don’t need to deal with system configuration files, for example. Indeed, giving them access to such files—especially write access—could be disastrous. On a computer with 1,000 users, each of whom can change the system configuration, *somebody* will make a change that will bring down the computer, whether through ignorance or malice.

Of course, the issues involved in protecting the computer from its users are just a special case of more-general user-account issues; on that 1,000-user computer, you probably don’t want its users to be able to read and write each others’ files except in limited ways. As described in Chapter 13, “Creating Users and Groups” and Chapter 14, “Setting Ownership and Permissions,” you can set permissions on files to prevent unauthorized access.

*System files* are files that control how the computer operates. They include the following:

- ▶ System startup scripts that launch servers and other important daemons
- ▶ Program files—both binary files and scripts
- ▶ Program support files, such as fonts and icons
- ▶ Configuration files that define how the system works (network configuration settings, disk layout information, and so on)
- ▶ Configuration files for most servers and other daemons
- ▶ Data storage for system programs, such as the database that describes what programs are installed
- ▶ System log files, which record normal system activity

Obviously, nontechnical users should not be able to alter system files, except perhaps indirectly. (Log files record activities such as login attempts, for instance.) Users must be able to read some types of system files, such as the fonts and icons they use, but some system files should be protected even from read access. (Users should not be able to read the `/etc/shadow` file, because it holds encrypted passwords, for instance.)

Certification  
Objective

Chapter 9, “Exploring Processes and Process Data,” describes package management.

To achieve the goal of restricting ordinary users' access to system files, such files are normally owned by `root` or by another system account that has a more limited purpose. For instance, many server programs rely on their own specific system accounts. System files can then be protected from unwanted access by setting permissions in some appropriate way, depending on their specific needs. Ordinary users are then unable to write to most system files, protecting these files from harm. Because `root` can read and write to any file, you must acquire `root` privileges to perform most system maintenance tasks.

Immediately after installing Linux, most of the files that it contains are system files, and most of the directories and subdirectories on a fresh Linux installation are system directories. As described shortly, a few directories, such as `/home` and `/tmp`, are set aside for user files, although even these are structured or configured in such a way as to prevent problems with multiuser access.

The distinction between system files and user files exists even on single-user Linux computers, such as your personal laptop. This may seem strange or even frustrating; after all, if you're the only user, and if you have `root` access, why bother with the distinction between system files and user files? The answer is that it provides a layer of protection against accidental or malicious damage. If a typo, a bug, or malware would, say, delete all files on the computer, the damage is contained if this action is performed as a standard user rather than as `root`; a standard user *can't* delete all of the files on the computer. Thus the distinction between these two account types (and, by extension, these two classes of files) is useful even on a single-user computer.

## The Filesystem Hierarchy Standard

Although each Linux distribution has its own way of doing certain things, all Linux developers recognize the need for some standardization in the layout of their directories. For instance, programs should be able to locate key system configuration files consistently in the same places on all distributions. If this weren't the case, programs that rely on such features would become more complex and might not work on all distributions. To address this need, the *Filesystem Hierarchy Standard (FHS)* was created. Aside from Linux, some Unix-like OSs also follow the FHS to one degree or another.

The FHS makes an important distinction between shareable files and unshareable files. *Shareable files* may be reasonably shared between computers, such as user data files and program binary files. (Of course, you don't *need* to share such files, but you may do so.) If files are shared, they're typically shared through an NFS server. *Unshareable files* contain system-specific information, such as configuration files. For instance, you're not likely to want to share a server's configuration file between computers.

Users' home directories traditionally reside in `/home`, whereas `/tmp` is accessible to all users and holds temporary files.

FHS evolved from an earlier Linux-only standard, the *Filesystem Standard (FSSTND)*.

The FHS makes a second important distinction between *static files* and *variable files*. The former don't usually change except through direct intervention by the system administrator. Most program executables are good examples of static files. Users, automated scripts, servers, or the like may change *variable files*. For instance, users' home directories and mail queues are composed of variable files.

The FHS tries to isolate each directory into one cell of this 2×2 (shareable/unshareable × static/variable) matrix. Figure 7.1 illustrates these relationships. Some directories contain subdirectories in multiple cells, but in these cases, the FHS tries to specify the status of particular subdirectories. For instance, `/var` is variable, and it contains some shareable and some unshareable subdirectories, as shown in Figure 7.1.

	Shareable	Unshareable
Static	<code>/usr</code> <code>/opt</code>	<code>/etc</code> <code>/boot</code>
Variable	<code>/home</code> <code>/var/mail</code>	<code>/var/run</code> <code>/var/lock</code>

**FIGURE 7.1** The FHS attempts to fit each important directory in one cell of a 2×2 matrix.

The FHS comes in numbered versions. Version 2.3, the latest version as we write, was released in January 2004. A push is underway to release version 3.0 in mid-2015, so that may be the current version by the time you read this book (see FHS's web page at [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/lsb/fhs](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/lsb/fhs)).

## Important Directories and Their Contents

The FHS defines the names and purposes of many directories and subdirectories on a Linux system. Table 7.1 summarizes the most important directories. Most of these are system directories, the main exceptions being `/home`, `/tmp`, `/mnt`, and `/media`.



**TABLE 7.1** Important Linux directories according to the FHS

Directory	Purpose
<code>/</code>	The root directory. All files appear in this directory or in subdirectories of it.
<code>/etc</code>	Holds system configuration files.

Directory	Purpose
/boot	Holds important boot files, such as the Linux kernel, the initial RAM disk, and often boot-loader configuration files.
/bin	Holds program files that are critical for normal operation and that ordinary users may run.
/sbin	Holds program files that are critical for normal operation and that ordinary users seldom run.
/lib	Holds libraries—code used by many other programs—that are critical for basic system operation.
/usr	Holds programs and data that are used in normal system operation but are not critical for a bare-bones boot of the system. This directory is split into subdirectories that mirror parts of the root organization—/usr/bin, /usr/sbin, /usr/lib, and so on.
/home	Holds users' home directories. Separating this directory into its own low-level filesystem effectively isolates most user data from the OS, which can be useful if you want to reinstall the OS without losing user data.
/root	The root user's home directory.
/var	Holds miscellaneous transient files, such as log files and print spool files. One subdirectory of /var, /var/tmp, deserves special mention. Like /tmp (described next), /var/tmp holds temporary files. These files should <i>not</i> be deleted when the computer reboots.
/tmp	Holds temporary files, often including temporary files created by user programs. Such files may theoretically be deleted when the computer reboots, although in practice many distributions don't do this.
/mnt	The traditional mount point for removable media; sometimes split into subdirectories for each mounted filesystem.
/media	The new mount point for removable media; typically split into subdirectories for each mounted filesystem.
/dev	Holds <i>device files</i> , which provide low-level access to hardware.
/run	Holds information about the running system.

▶  
Ordinary users can't write to most system directories, such as `/usr`. Thus you can't damage your installation by checking out these directories—that is, if you're running as an ordinary user!

As an ordinary user, you will create most of your files in your home directory, which is normally a subdirectory of `/home`. You might also access removable media mounted at `/media` (or sometimes `/run/media`), and perhaps network resources that might be mounted elsewhere. You can use `/tmp` and certain subdirectories of `/var`, too, although most users don't need to be aware of these locations explicitly—programs are usually hard-coded to use them for temporary files or for specific types of files, such as incoming email files. As a system administrator, you might manipulate files located in any of these directories; however, for a system administrator, `/etc` is particularly important, since that's where most system configuration files reside. As you explore your computer with GUI or text-mode utilities, you should keep this directory structure in mind.

Of these directories, several individual directories or collections of them bear special attention:

**The Configuration Directory** The `/etc` directory holds most system configuration files. Previous chapters have referred to several such files, such as `/etc/fstab` (which defines where partitions are mounted) and `/etc/passwd` (which is the primary account definition file). Many more exist. Indeed, you'll find subdirectories in `/etc` to house multiple configuration files for complex subsystems and servers, such as `/etc/x11` (for the X Window System) and `/etc/samba` (for the Samba file server).

**Executable Directories** Program files reside mainly in `/sbin`, `/bin`, `/usr/sbin`, and `/usr/bin`. (Additional directories can house program files on some systems. Most notably, `/usr/local/sbin` and `/usr/local/bin` hold locally compiled programs.)



**Library Directories** *Libraries* are collections of programming functions that can be useful to many programs. They're stored in separate files to save disk space and RAM when programs run, and they enable easy updates to library files without reinstalling all the programs that rely on them. In Linux, most libraries reside in `/lib` and `/usr/lib`, although some can reside elsewhere (such as `/usr/local/lib`) on some systems.

▶  
The package system does not manage user configuration files, so they can linger after you delete a program. This causes no harm aside from the disk space consumed.

If you've administered Windows computers, you should be aware of an important difference between Windows and Linux: in Windows, it's common for a program binary, its configuration files, and all of its support files to reside in a single directory tree that belongs to the program, such as `C:\Program Files\SomeProgram`. In Linux, by contrast, most of a program's key files are likely to reside in standard locations that are shared with other programs and to be scattered about. For instance, the program's executable might be in `/usr/bin`, related libraries in `/usr/lib`, configuration files in `/etc` or in users' home directories, and so on. This works well in Linux because Linux's packaging

systems, described in Chapter 9, keep track of where a package’s many files go, enabling you to delete or upgrade a package easily. Linux has the advantage of simplifying the *path*, which is the list of directories in which program files reside. (Paths also exist for libraries and man pages.) If you’re used to looking for files in program-specific locations, though, adjusting to the Linux system can be awkward. The key is to use your package system to identify where a package’s files reside; for instance, typing `rpm -ql someprogram` shows where every file in the *someprogram* package resides on an RPM-based system.

## Navigating Files and Directories

Once you’re comfortable with the layout of the Linux files, you may be ready to do some exploring. In the next few pages, we describe how to learn what files are on your hard disk, how to change directories, how to refer to files that aren’t in the current directory, and how to use the most common commands for manipulating files.

### Obtaining File Listings

To manipulate files, it’s helpful to know what they are. The `ls` command, whose name is short for *list*, provides this information by displaying the names of files in a directory. If you pass it no options, it shows the files in the current directory. However, you can pass it both options and file or directory specifications. This command supports a huge number of options; consult its man page for details. Table 7.2 summarizes the most important `ls` options.

Certification Objective

Certification Objective

**TABLE 7.2** Common `ls` options

Option (long form)	Option (short form)	Description
<code>--all</code>	<code>-a</code>	Normally, <code>ls</code> omits files whose names begin with a dot ( <code>.</code> ). These <i>dot files</i> (also known as <i>hidden files</i> ) are often configuration files that aren’t usually of interest. Adding this parameter displays dot files.
<code>--color</code>	N/A	This option produces a color-coded listing that differentiates directories and other special file types by displaying them in different colors. Some Linux distributions configure their shells to use this option by default.

(Continues)

TABLE 7.2 (Continued)

Option (long form)	Option (short form)	Description
<code>--directory</code>	<code>-d</code>	Normally, if you type a directory name as an option, <code>ls</code> displays the contents of that directory. The same thing happens if a directory name matches a wildcard. Adding this parameter changes this behavior to list only the directory name, which is sometimes preferable.
N/A	<code>-l</code>	The <code>ls</code> command normally displays filenames only. The <code>-l</code> parameter (a lowercase <i>l</i> ) produces a long listing that includes information such as the file's permission string, owner, group, size, and creation date.
<code>--classify</code>	<code>-F</code>	This option appends an indicator code to the end of each name so you know what type of file it is.
<code>--recursive</code>	<code>-R</code>	The <code>-R</code> or <code>--recursive</code> option causes <code>ls</code> to display directory contents recursively: if the target directory contains a subdirectory, <code>ls</code> displays both the files in the target directory <i>and</i> the files in its subdirectory. The result can be a huge listing if a directory has many subdirectories.

You may optionally give `ls` one or more file or directory names, in which case `ls` displays information about those files or directories, as in this example:

```
$ ls -F /usr /bin/ls
/bin/ls

/usr:
X11R6/  games/          include/  man/      src/
bin/    i386-glibc20-linux/  lib/      merge@   tmp@
doc/    i486-linux-libc5/   libexec/  sbin/
etc/    i586-mandrake-linux/ local/    share/
```

This output shows both the `/bin/ls` program file and the contents of the `/usr` directory. The latter consists mainly of subdirectories, indicated by a trailing slash (`/`) when `-p` is used. By default, `ls` creates a listing that's sorted by filename, as shown in this example. Note, though, that uppercase letters (as in `X11R6`) always appear before lowercase letters (as in `bin`).

One of the most common `ls` options is `-l`, which creates a listing like this:

```
$ ls -l t*
-rwxr-xr-x 1 rich rich      111 Apr 13 13:48 test
-rw-r--r-- 1 rich rich    176322 Dec 16 09:34 thttpd-2.20b-1.i686.rpm
-rw-r--r-- 1 rich rich   1838045 Apr 24 18:52 tomsrtbt-1.7.269.tar.gz
-rw-r--r-- 1 rich rich    3265021 Apr 22 23:46 tripwire.rpm
```

This output includes permission strings (such as `-rwxr-xr-x`), ownership (an owner of `rich` and a group of `rich` for all of these files), file sizes, and file creation dates in addition to the filenames. This example also illustrates the use of the `*` wildcard, which matches any string: `t*` matches any filename that begins with `t`.

## Changing Directories

The `cd` command changes the current directory in which you're working. Although your current directory doesn't matter for many commands, it does matter when you begin to refer to files. As described in the next section, "Using Absolute and Relative File References," some types of file references depend on your current directory.

When you change your current directory, your shell's prompt may change (depending on your distribution's settings), to something like this:

```
$ cd /usr/bin
$
```

Many distributions' default configurations display only the final part of the current directory—`bin` rather than `/usr/bin` in the preceding example. If you need to know the complete path of your current location, you can use `pwd`:

```
$ pwd
/usr/bin
```

Linux uses a slash (`/`) character as a directory separator. If you're familiar with Windows, you may know that Windows uses a backslash (`\`) for this purpose. Don't confuse the two! In Linux, a backslash serves as a "quote" or "escape" character to enter otherwise hard-to-specify characters, such as spaces, as part of a filename. Also, take note that a slash isn't a legal character in a Linux filename for this reason.

◀ A trailing at-sign (`@`) denotes a *symbolic link*, which is a file that points to another file.

◀ Chapter 14 covers these topics in detail.

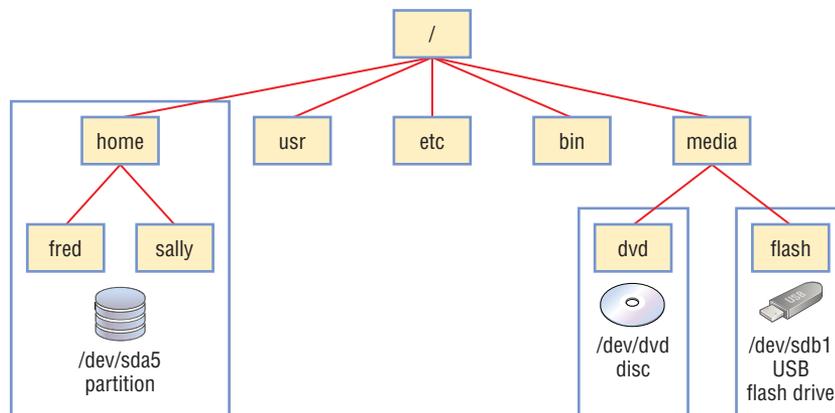
Certification Objective

◀ In this book, we shorten most shell prompts to a single character, such as `$`, when we display commands on their own lines.

## Using Absolute and Relative File References

▶ Don't confuse the root (/) directory with the /root directory, which is the root user's home directory.

As described in Chapter 5, Linux uses a unified directory tree, which means that all files can be located relative to a single *root* directory, which is often referred to using the slash (/) character. If your disk contains multiple partitions, one of these devices becomes the *root filesystem*, and others are *mounted* at some location within the overall directory tree. The same thing happens when you mount a USB flash drive, DVD, or other removable disk device. The result might resemble Figure 7.2, which shows a subset of the directories found on a typical Linux installation, along with a couple of removable media types. Most commonly, removable media appear as subdirectories of the /media directory, but some Linux distributions prefer to use /run/media. Most subdirectories can be split off as separate partitions or even placed on separate disks. In Figure 7.2, the /home directory is on its own partition, but it's accessed in exactly the same way as it would be if it were part of the root (/) partition.



**FIGURE 7.2** In Linux, all files are referenced relative to a single root (/) directory.

Files and directories can be referenced in three ways:

**Absolute References** These file references are relative to the root (/) directory, as in /home/fred/afile.txt to refer to the afile.txt file in Fred's home directory. Such references always begin with a slash (/) character.

**Home Directory References** The tilde (~) character refers to the user's home directory. If a filename begins with that character, it's as if the path to the user's home directory were substituted. For Fred, ~/afile.txt is equivalent to /home/fred/afile.txt.

**Relative References** These file references are relative to the current directory. If Fred is working in his home directory, `afile.txt` refers to `/home/fred/afile.txt`. Relative references can include subdirectories, as in `somedir/anotherfile.txt`. In Linux, every directory includes a special hidden subdirectory (`.`), which refers to its parent directory. If Sally is working in `/home/sally`, she can refer to Fred's `afile.txt` file as `../fred/afile.txt`.

To understand these concepts better, you should try these operations:

1. Launch a new shell, or use an existing one.
2. Type `cd ~` to change into your home directory.
3. Type `cat /etc/fstab` to view this configuration file using an absolute file reference. Its contents should appear in your terminal.
4. Type `pwd` to view your current directory. It will probably be `/home/yourusername`, where *yourusername* is—you guessed it!—your username.
5. Type `cat ../../etc/fstab` to view this configuration file using a relative file reference. The first `..` in this command refers to `/home`, and the second refers to the root (`/`) directory. (If your home directory is in an unusual location, you may need to adjust the number of `../` elements in this command, which is why we had you use `pwd` to find your current directory in the previous step.)
6. Type `cat ~/../../etc/fstab` to view this configuration file by using a home directory reference.

Of course, steps 5 and 6 use rather awkward file references; in real life, you'd probably use an absolute file reference to access `/etc/fstab` from your home directory. If you were in a subdirectory of `/etc`, though, typing `../fstab` would be slightly easier than typing `/etc/fstab`; and typing `~/afile.txt` would be easier than typing the complete path to your home directory.

## Manipulating Files

If you've used Windows or Mac OS X, chances are that you've used a GUI file manager to manipulate files. Such tools are available in Linux, as noted in Chapter 4, "Using Common Linux Programs," and you can certainly use a file manager for many common tasks. Linux's text-mode shells, such as Bash, provide simple but powerful tools for manipulating files too. These tools can



File permissions can block your access to another user's files, but that's an issue that's described in Chapter 14.

simplify some tasks, such as working with all files with names that include the string `invoice`. Thus you should be familiar with these text-mode commands.

To begin this task, we describe some ways that you can create files. With files created, you can copy them from one location to another. You also may sometimes want to move or rename files. Linux enables you to create *links*, which are ways to refer to the same file by multiple names. If you never want to use a file again, you can delete it. *Wildcards* provide the means to refer to many files by using a compact notation. Finally, we cover the case-sensitive nature of Linux's file manipulation commands.

## Creating Files

Normally, you create files using the programs that manipulate them. For instance, you might use a graphics program to create a new graphics file. This process varies from one program to another, but GUI programs typically use a menu option called Save or Save As to save a file. Text-mode programs provide similar functionality, but the details of how it's done vary greatly from one program to another.

One program deserves special mention as a way to create files: `touch`. You can type this program's name followed by the name of a file that you want to create, such as `touch newfile.txt` to create an empty file called `newfile.txt`. Ordinarily, you don't need to do this to create a file of a particular type, since you'll use a specialized program to do the job. Sometimes, though, it's helpful to create an empty file just to have the file itself—for instance, to create a few “scratch” files to test some other command.

If you pass `touch` the name of a file that already exists, `touch` updates that file's access and modification time stamps to the current date and time. This can be handy if you're using a command that works on files based on their access times, and you want the program to treat an old file as if it were new. You might also want to do this if you plan to distribute a collection of files and you want them all to have identical time stamps.

You can use a number of options with `touch` to modify its behavior. The most important of these are as follows:

**Don't Create a File** The `-c` or `--no-create` option tells `touch` not to create a new file if one doesn't already exist. Use this option if you want to update time stamps but do not want to create an empty file accidentally, should you mistype a filename.

**Set the Time to a Specific Value** You can use `-d string` or `--date=string` to set the date of a file to that represented by the specified string, which can take any number of forms. For instance, `touch -d "July 4 2015" afile.txt` causes

Chapter 10, “Editing Files,” describes how to create text files with the text-mode editors `pico`, `nano`, and `vi`.

Certification Objective

A programmer's tool known as `make` compiles source code if it's new, so programmers sometimes use `touch` to force `make` to recompile a source-code file.

the date stamps on `afile.txt` to be set to July 4, 2015. You can achieve the same effect with `-t [[CC]YY]MMDDhhmm[.ss]`, where `[[CC]YY]MMDDhhmm[.ss]` is a date and time in a specific numeric format, such as `201507041223` for 12:23 p.m. on July 4, 2015.

Consult the man page for `touch` to learn about its more obscure options.

## Copying Files

If you're working in a text-mode shell, the `cp` command copies a file. (Its name is short for *copy*.) You can use it in three ways: pass it a source filename and a destination filename, a destination directory name, or both. Table 7.3 shows examples.

Certification  
Objective

**TABLE 7.3** Examples of the use of `cp`

Example command	Effect
<code>cp orig.txt new.txt</code>	Copies <code>orig.txt</code> to <code>new.txt</code> in the current directory.
<code>cp orig.txt /otherdir</code>	Copies <code>orig.txt</code> to the <code>/otherdir</code> directory. The copy will be called <code>orig.txt</code> .
<code>cp orig.txt /otherdir/new.txt</code>	Copies <code>orig.txt</code> to the <code>/otherdir</code> directory. The copy will be called <code>new.txt</code> .

Although these example filenames suggest that the original file is in your current working directory, this need not be the case; `orig.txt` could include a directory specification, such as `/etc/fstab` or `../afile.txt`. The critical point to understand is how the destination filename is specified. This can be less than obvious in some cases, since file and directory specifications can look alike. For instance, consider the following command:

```
$ cp outline.pdf ~/publication
```

This command can produce any of three results:

- ▶ If `~/publication` is a directory, the result is a file called `~/publication/outline.pdf`.
- ▶ If `~/publication` is a file, the result is that this file will be replaced by the contents of `outline.pdf`.
- ▶ If `~/publication` doesn't yet exist, the result is a new file, called `~/publication`, which is identical to the original `outline.pdf`.



If you follow a directory name with a slash (/), as in `~/publication/`, `cp` returns an error message if `~/publication` doesn't exist or is a regular file.

Keeping these results straight can be confusing if you're new to command-line file copying. We encourage you to experiment by creating a test directory via `mkdir` (described later, in “Creating Directories”), creating subdirectories in this directory, and then copying files into this test directory tree by using all of these methods of referring to files. (In this type of situation, `touch` can be handy for creating test files.)

The `cp` command provides many options that modify its behavior. Some of the more useful options enable you to modify the command's operation in helpful ways:

**Force Overwrite** The `-f` or `--force` option forces the system to overwrite any existing files without prompting.

**Use Interactive Mode** The `-i` or `--interactive` option causes `cp` to ask you before overwriting any existing files.

**Preserve Ownership and Permissions** Normally, the user who issues the `cp` command owns the copied file and uses that account's default permissions. The `-p` or `--preserve` option preserves ownership and permissions, if possible.

**Perform a Recursive Copy** If you use the `-R` or `--recursive` option and specify a directory as the source, the entire directory, including its subdirectories, is copied. Although `-r` also performs a recursive copy, its behavior with files other than ordinary files and directories is unspecified. Most `cp` implementations use `-r` as a synonym for `-R`, but this behavior isn't guaranteed.

**Perform an Archive Copy** The `-a` or `--archive` option is similar to `-R`, but it also preserves ownership and copies links as is. The `-R` option copies the files to which symbolic links point, rather than to the symbolic links themselves. (Links are described in more detail later in this chapter, in “Using Links.”)

**Perform an Update Copy** The `-u` or `--update` option tells `cp` to copy the file only if the original is newer than the target or if the target doesn't exist.

This list of `cp` options is incomplete but covers the most useful options. Consult `cp`'s man page for information about additional `cp` options.

## Moving and Renaming Files

In a text-mode shell, the same command, `mv`, is used both to move and rename files and directories. Its use is similar to that of `cp`; for instance, if you wanted to move `outline.pdf` to `~/publication`, you would type the following:

```
$ mv outline.pdf ~/publication
```

Chapter 13 describes Linux accounts. Chapter 14 describes file permissions.

If you specify a filename with the destination, the file will be renamed as it's moved. If you specify a filename, and the destination directory is the same as the source directory, the file will be renamed but not moved. In other words, `mv`'s effects are much like `cp`'s, except that the new file replaces, rather than supplements, the original.

Behind the scenes, `mv` does the following:

- ▶ When the source and target are on the same filesystem, `mv` rewrites directory entries without actually moving the file's data.
- ▶ When you move a file from one filesystem to another, `mv` copies the file and then deletes the original file.

The `mv` command takes many of the same options as `cp` does. From the earlier list, `--preserve`, `--recursive`, and `--archive` don't apply to `mv`, but the others do.

## Using Links

Sometimes it's handy to refer to a single file by multiple names. Rather than create several copies of the file, you can create multiple *links* to one file. Linux supports two types of links, both of which are created with the `ln` command:

**Hard Link** A *hard link* is a duplicate directory entry. Both entries point to the same file. Because they work by tying together low-level filesystem data structures, hard links can exist only on a single filesystem. In a hard link scenario, neither filename holds any sort of priority over the other; both tie directly to the file's data structures and data. Type `ln origname linkname`, where `origname` is the original name and `linkname` is the new link's name, to create a hard link.

**Symbolic Link** A *symbolic link* (aka a *soft link*) is a file that refers to another file by name. That is, the symbolic link is a file that holds another file's name, and when you tell a program to read to or write from a symbolic link file, Linux redirects the access to the original file. Because symbolic links work by filename references, they can cross filesystem boundaries. Type `ln -s origname link-name` to create a symbolic link.

You can identify links in long directory listings (using the `-l` option to `ls`) in a couple of ways. The following example illustrates this:

```
$ ln report.odt hardlink.odt
$ ln -s report.odt softlink.odt
$ ls -l
total 192
-rw-r--r-- 2 rod users 94720 Jan 10 11:53 hardlink.odt
-rw-r--r-- 2 rod users 94720 Jan 10 11:53 report.odt
lrwxrwxrwx 1 rod users   10 Jan 10 11:54 softlink.odt -> report.odt
```



Linux uses `mv` for renaming files because the two operations are identical when the source and destination directories are the same.

Certification  
Objective



Symbolic links are similar to *shortcuts* on the Windows desktop.

This example begins with a single file, `report.odt`. The first two commands create two links, a hard link (`hardlink.odt`) and a symbolic link (`softlink.odt`). Typing `ls -l` shows all three files. The original file and the hard link can be identified as links by the presence of the value 2 in the second column of the `ls -l` output; this column identifies the number of filename entries that point to the file, so a value higher than 1 indicates that a hard link exists. The symbolic link is denoted by an `l` (a lowercase letter *L*) as the first character of the `softlink.odt` file's permissions string (`lrwxrwxrwx`). Furthermore, the symbolic link's filename specification includes an explicit pointer to the linked-to file.

Both types of links are useful for referring to files by multiple names or in multiple directories. For instance, if you write a letter that you send to multiple recipients, you might want to store copies in directories devoted to each recipient. In such a situation, either type of link will probably work fine, but each type has implications. Most important, if you use symbolic links, deleting the original file makes the file completely inaccessible; the symbolic links remain but point to a nonexistent file. If you use hard links, by contrast, you must delete *all* copies of the file to delete the file itself. This is because hard links are duplicate directory entries that point to the same file, whereas symbolic links are separate files that refer to the original file by name.

If you modify a file by accessing its soft link, or by any hard-linked name, you should be sure that the program you use will modify the original file. Some programs create a backup of the original file that you can use to recover the original in case you find that your changes were in error. Most editors do this in such a way that the backup is a new file, and they write changes to the original file, thus affecting it as well as the link. Some programs, though, rename the original file and then write a new file with the changes. If a program does this and you've accessed the file via a link, the linked-to file will be unaffected by your changes. If in doubt, test your program to be sure that it does what you expect.

If you want to create a link to a directory, be aware that you can normally do this only via symbolic links. Hard links between directories are potentially dangerous in terms of low-level filesystem data structures, so the `ln` utility permits only the superuser to create such links. Even then, most filesystems disallow hard links between directories, so in practice even `root` usually can't create them. Any user can create symbolic links to a directory, though.

Linux installations use links (mostly symbolic links) in various places. For instance, system startup scripts are often referred to via symbolic links located in directories dedicated to specific startup conditions, known as *runlevels*. Runlevel management is beyond the scope of this book.

## Deleting Files

The `rm` command deletes files in a text-mode shell. As you might expect, you pass the names of one or more files to this command:

```
$ rm outline.pdf outline.txt
```

This example deletes two files, `outline.pdf` and `outline.txt`. If you want to delete an entire directory tree, you can pass `rm` the `-r`, `-R`, or `--recursive` option along with a directory name:

```
$ rm -r oldstuff/
```

The `-i` option causes `rm` to prompt before deleting each file. This is a useful safety measure. You can use the `-f` (`--force`) option to override this setting, if `-i` is configured as the default. Several other options to `rm` exist; consult its man page to learn about them.

It's important to realize that `rm` does *not* implement any functionality like a file manager's "trash can." Once you delete a file with `rm`, it's gone, and you can't recover it except by using low-level filesystem tools—a topic that's well beyond the scope of this book. You should be careful when using `rm`—and even more careful when using it with its `-r` option or as root!

## Using Wildcards

A *wildcard* is a symbol or set of symbols that stands in for other characters. You can use wildcards to refer to files. (Using wildcards is also sometimes called *globbing*.) Three classes of wildcards are common in Linux:

? A question mark (?) stands in for a single character. For instance, `b??k` matches `book`, `ba1k`, `buck`, or any other four-character filename that begins with `b` and ends with `k`.

\* An asterisk (\*) matches any character or set of characters, including no character. For instance, `b*k` matches `book`, `ba1k`, and `buck` (just as `b??k` does). But `b*k` also matches `bk`, `bbk`, and `backtrack`.

**Bracketed Values** Characters enclosed in square brackets ([]) normally match any character in the set. For instance, `b[ao][1o]k` matches `ba1k` and `book` but not `buck`. It's also possible to specify a range of values; for instance, `b[a-z]ck` matches `back`, `buck`, and other four-letter filenames of this form whose second character is a lowercase letter. This differs from `b?ck`—because Linux treats filenames in a case-sensitive way and because ? matches any character (not just any letter), `b[a-z]ck` doesn't match `bAck` or `b3ck`, although `b?ck` matches both of these filenames.



The `rm` command's name is short for *remove*.



Distributions sometimes set the `-i` option by default for root, but not for ordinary users.

Certification  
Objective

Wildcards are implemented in the shell and passed to the command that you call. For instance, if you type `ls b??k`, and that wildcard matches the three files `balk`, `book`, and `buck`, the result is precisely as if you'd typed `ls balk book buck`.

The way Bash expands wildcards can lead to unexpected, and sometimes undesirable, consequences. For instance, suppose that you want to copy two files, specified via a wildcard, to another directory, but you forget to give the destination directory. The `cp` command will interpret the command as a request to copy the first of the files over the second.

## Understanding Case Sensitivity

Certification  
Objective

Linux's native filesystems are case-sensitive: filenames that differ only in case are distinct files. For instance, a single directory can hold files called `afile.txt`, `Afile.txt`, and `AFILE.TXT`, and each is a distinct file. This case sensitivity also means that if you type a filename, you must enter it with the correct case; if a file is called `afile.txt` but you type its name as `Afile.txt`, the program you're using will tell you that the file doesn't exist.

This is different from what happens in Windows or (usually) in Mac OS X, in which filenames that differ only in case are treated identically. In these OSs, you can't have two files that differ only in case in the same directory, and you can specify a filename using any case variant that you like. Windows also creates a short filename (eight characters with an optional three-character extension) for every file with a longer name in order to help out older software that works only with such filenames. Linux doesn't create such alternate filenames.

Case sensitivity is primarily a function of the filesystem, not of the operating system. If you access a non-Linux filesystem (on a removable disk, a non-Linux partition on a dual-boot computer, or using a network filesystem), you may find that case-insensitive rules will apply. This is particularly likely when accessing FAT and NTFS volumes, which are common on Windows computers, external hard disks, and USB flash drives. A further twist on this rule is that many Linux programs, such as Bash, assume case sensitivity even on case-insensitive filesystems. Features such as command completion, described in Chapter 6, "Getting to Know the Command Line," may work only if you use the case in which filenames are recorded, even on case-insensitive filesystems.

Ordinarily, case sensitivity creates few real problems, particularly if you use GUI programs that enable you to click to select files. You should be aware of these issues, however, when copying files or directories to FAT, NTFS, HFS+, or other case-insensitive filesystems. If a directory that you want to copy contains files with names that differ only in case, you'll end up with a disk that contains just one of the offending files.

Apple's Hierarchical File System Plus (HFS+) supports both case-sensitive and case-insensitive variants. Apple uses the case-insensitive mode by default.

# Manipulating Directories

There is no doubt that you're familiar with the concept of directories, although you may think of them as "folders," since most GUI file managers represent directories by using file folder icons. Naturally, Linux provides text-mode commands to manipulate directories. These include directory-specific commands to create and delete directories, as well as some file-manipulation commands described earlier to manage directories.

## Creating Directories

You can use the `mkdir` command to create a directory. Ordinarily, you'll use this command by typing the name of one or more directories following the command:

```
$ mkdir newdir
$ mkdir dirone newdir/dirtwo
```

The first example creates just one new directory, `newdir`, which will then reside in the current directory. The second example creates two new directories: `dirone` and `newdir/dirtwo`. In this example, `mkdir` creates `dirtwo` inside the `newdir` directory, which was created with the preceding command.

In most cases, you'll use `mkdir` without options, other than the name of a directory, but you can modify its behavior in a few ways:

**Set Mode** The `-m mode` or `-mode=mode` option causes the new directory to have the specified permission mode, expressed as an octal number. (Chapter 14 describes this topic in more detail.)

**Create Parent Directories** Normally, if you specify the creation of a directory within a directory that doesn't exist, `mkdir` responds with a `No such file or directory` error and doesn't create the directory. If you include the `-p` or `-parents` option, though, `mkdir` creates the necessary parent directory. For instance, typing `mkdir first/second` returns an error message if `first` doesn't exist, but typing `mkdir -p first/second` succeeds, creating both `first` and its subdirectory, `second`.

## Deleting Directories

The `rmdir` command is the opposite of `mkdir`; it destroys a directory. To use it, you type the command followed by the names of one or more directories that you want to delete:

```
$ rmdir dirone
$ rmdir newdir/dirtwo newdir
```

Certification  
Objective

Chapter 6 includes information on how to specify locations other than the current directory, as well as how to change your current directory with the `cd` command.

Certification  
Objective

These examples delete the three directories created by the `mkdir` commands shown earlier.

Like `mkdir`, `rmdir` supports a few options, the most important of which handle these tasks:

**Ignore Failures on Nonempty Directories** Normally, if a directory contains files or other directories, `rmdir` doesn't delete it and returns an error message. With the `--ignore-fail-on-non-empty` option, `rmdir` still doesn't delete the directory, but it doesn't return an error message.

**Delete Tree** The `-p` or `--parents` option causes `rmdir` to delete an entire directory tree. For instance, typing `rmdir -p newdir/dirtwo` causes `rmdir` to delete `newdir/dirtwo` and then `newdir`. You could use this command rather than `rmdir newdir/dirtwo newdir` to delete both of these directories.

You should understand that `rmdir` can delete only *empty* directories; if a directory contains any files at all, this command won't work. (You can use the `-p` option, however, to delete a set of nested directories, as long as none of them holds any nondirectory files.) Of course, in real life you're likely to want to delete directory trees that hold files. In such cases, you can use the `rm` command, described earlier, in "Deleting Files," along with its `-r` (or `-R` or `-recursive`) option:

```
$ rm -r newdir
```

This command deletes `newdir` and any files or subdirectories that it might contain. This fact makes `rm` and its `-r` option potentially dangerous, so you should be particularly cautious when using it.

## LINUX SECURITY FEATURES

When you log in as an ordinary user, you can accidentally delete your own files if you err in your use of `rm` or various other commands. You cannot, however, do serious damage to the Linux installation itself. Unix was designed as a multiuser OS with multiuser security features in mind, and because Linux is a clone of Unix, Linux has inherited these security features. Among these features are the concepts of file ownership and file permissions. You can delete only your own files—or more precisely, you can delete files only if you have write access to the directories in which they reside. You have such access to your own home directory, but not to the directories containing Linux system files. Thus you can't damage these Linux system files.

Chapter 13 covers these concepts in more detail, as well as describing how to acquire the power to administer the computer. With this power comes the ability to damage the system, though, so you should be careful to do so only when necessary.

## Managing Directories

Directories are just special files—they're files that hold other files. Thus you can use most of the file-manipulation tools described elsewhere in this chapter to manipulate directories. There are some caveats, though:

- ▶ You can use `touch` to update a directory's time stamps, but you can't use `touch` to create a directory; `mkdir` handles that task.
- ▶ You can use `cp` to copy a directory; however, you must use the `-r`, `-R`, `--recursive`, `-a`, or `--archive` option to copy the directory and all its contents.
- ▶ You can use `mv` to move or rename a directory.
- ▶ You can use `ln` with its `-s` option to create a symbolic link to a directory. No common Linux filesystem supports hard links to directories, though.

As an example, suppose that you have a directory in your home directory called `Music/Satchmo`, which contains Louis Armstrong music files. You want to reorganize this directory so that the files appear under the performer's last name, but you want to retain access to the files under the name `Satchmo`, since your music players refer to them this way. You could type the following commands to achieve this goal:

```
$ cd ~/Music
$ mv Satchmo Armstrong
$ ln -s Armstrong Satchmo
```

Alternatively, you could omit the first command and specify the complete path to each of the directories or links in the `mv` and `ln` commands. As written, the first two of these commands rename the `~/Music/Satchmo` directory to `~/Music/Armstrong`. The final command creates a symbolic link, `~/Music/Satchmo`, that points to `~/Music/Armstrong`.

### THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Much of what you do with a computer qualifies as file management. Thus you must understand the basic tools for managing files in Linux. These include commands to create, delete, copy, move, and rename files, as well as to create links to files. Directories in Linux are just files that contain other files, so most of the same commands that you can use on files also work on directories. Special commands to create and delete directories exist too.

*(Continues)*

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** (Continued)**SUGGESTED EXERCISES**

- ▶ Create a file with `touch` (or some other program) and then practice copying it with `cp`, renaming it with `mv`, moving it to another directory with `mv`, and deleting it with `rm`.
- ▶ Create a directory with `mkdir`, and then practice using `cp`, `mv`, and `rm` on it, just as with files. Try copying files into it and then try deleting the directory with both `rmdir` and `rm`. Do both commands work?

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

1. Which of the following commands would you type to rename `newfile.txt` to `afile.txt`?

- A. `mv newfile.txt afile.txt`
- B. `cp newfile.txt afile.txt`
- C. `ln newfile.txt afile.txt`
- D. `rn newfile.txt afile.txt`
- E. `touch newfile.txt afile.txt`

2. You want to copy a directory, `MyFiles`, to a USB flash drive that uses the FAT filesystem. The contents of `MyFiles` are as follows:

```
$ ls -l MyFiles/  
total 276  
-rw-r--r- 1 jen  users 129840 Nov 8 15:13 contract.odt  
-rw-r--r- 1 rod  users  42667 Nov 8 15:12 outline.pdf  
-rw-r--r- 1 sam  users 105979 Nov 8 15:12 Outline.PDF
```

The USB flash drive is mounted at `/media/usb`, and so you type `cp -a MyFiles/ /media/usb`. What problem will occur when you attempt to copy these files?

- A. The command will fail because it tries to create links.
  - B. The `MyFiles` directory will be copied, but none of its files will be copied.
  - C. One file will be missing on the USB flash drive.
  - D. One file's name will be changed during the copy.
  - E. Everything will be fine; the command will work correctly.
3. You type `mkdir one/two/three` and receive an error message that reads, in part, `No such file or directory`. What can you do to overcome this problem? (Select all that apply.)

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)*

- A. Add the `--parents` parameter to the `mkdir` command.
  - B. Issue three separate `mkdir` commands: `mkdir one`, then `mkdir one/two`, and then `mkdir one/two/three`.
  - C. Type `touch /bin/mkdir` to be sure that the `mkdir` program file exists.
  - D. Type `rmdir one` to clear away the interfering base of the desired new directory tree.
  - E. Type `rm -r one` to clear away the entire interfering directory tree.
4. True or false: You can create a symbolic link from one low-level filesystem to another.
  5. True or false: You can easily damage your Linux installation by mistyping an `rm` command when you log into your regular account.
  6. True or false: You can set a directory's time stamps with the `touch` command.
  7. You want to copy a file (`origfile.txt`) to the `backups` directory, but if a file called `origfile.txt` exists in the `backups` directory, you want to go ahead with the copy only if the file in the source location is newer than the one in `backups`. The command to do this is `cp ____ origfile.txt backups/`.
  8. You've typed `rmdir junk` to delete the `junk` directory, but this command has failed because `junk` contains word processing files. What command might you type to do the job?
  9. Which wildcard character matches any one symbol in a filename?
  10. What directory primarily contains system configuration files?



# Searching, Extracting, and Archiving Data

*An important part of* any OS's job, including Linux, is the storage, management, and analysis of data. Data is valuable because of the knowledge that can be gleaned from it, so you need to be able to search and extract it properly, as well as to protect it. This chapter covers some of the tools that you can use to search, extract, and archive data.

The chapter begins with a look at *regular expressions*, which are a way to describe patterns that you might want to look for in data files. You can use regular expressions with many commands, two of which (`find` and `grep`) are described in more detail. This chapter also covers tools that you can use to redirect programs' input and output, which is a useful trick in many situations. Finally, tools for creating archive files are described, which can be useful in transferring many files over a network or in creating backups.

- ▶ Using regular expressions
- ▶ Searching for and extracting data
- ▶ Redirecting input and output
- ▶ Archiving data

Certification  
Objective

## Using Regular Expressions

Documentation  
sometimes uses the  
abbreviation *regex*  
to refer to a regular  
expression.

Many Linux programs employ regular expressions, which are tools for expressing patterns in text. Regular expressions are similar in principle to the wildcards that can be used to specify multiple filenames, as described in Chapter 7, “Managing Files.” At their simplest, regular expressions can be plain text without adornment. Certain characters are used to denote patterns, though.

Two forms of regular expression are common: basic and extended. The form that you must use depends on the program. Some accept just one expression form, while others can use either type (depending on the options passed to the program). The differences between basic and *extended regular expression* forms can be complex and subtle, but the fundamental principles of both are similar.

The simplest type of regular expression is an alphabetic or alphanumeric string, such as `HWaddr` or `Linux3`. These regular expressions match any string of the same size or longer that contains the regular expression. For instance, the `HWaddr` regular expression matches `HWaddr`, `This is the HWaddr`, and `The HWaddr is unknown`. The real strength of regular expressions comes in the use of nonalphanumeric characters, which activate advanced matching rules.

The most powerful basic regular expression features include the following:

**Bracket Expressions** Characters enclosed in square brackets (`[]`) constitute bracket expressions, which match any one character within the brackets. For instance, the regular expression `b[aeiou]g` matches the words `bag`, `beg`, `big`, `bog`, and `bug`. Including a caret (`^`) after the opening square bracket matches against any character *except* the ones specified. For instance, `b[^aeiou]g` matches `bbg` or `bAg` but not `bag` or `beg`.

**Range Expressions** A range expression is a variant on a bracket expression. Instead of listing every character that matches, range expressions list the start and end points separated by a dash (`-`), as in `a[2-4]z`. This regular expression matches `a2z`, `a3z`, and `a4z`.

**Any Single Character** The dot (`.`) represents any single character except a newline. For instance, `a.z` matches `a2z`, `abz`, `aQz`, or any other three-character string that begins with `a` and ends with `z`.

**Start and End of Line** The caret (`^`) represents the start of a line, and the dollar sign (`$`) denotes the end of a line. For instance, `^bag` matches `bag` only if it is *first* in a line of characters, while `bag$` matches `bag` only if it is *last* in a line of characters.

**Repetition** A full or partial regular expression may be followed by a special symbol to denote repetition of the matched item. Specifically, an asterisk (`*`) denotes zero or more matches. The asterisk is often combined with the dot (as in `.*`) to specify a match with any substring. For instance, `A.*Lincoln` matches any string that contains `A` and `Lincoln`, in that order—`Abe Lincoln` and `Abraham Lincoln` are just two possible matches.

**Escaping** If you want to match one of the special characters, such as a dot, you must *escape* it—that is, precede it with a backslash (`\`). For instance, to

match a computer hostname (say, `www.sybex.com`), you must escape the dots, as in `www\.sybex\.com`.

Extended regular expressions add more features that you can use to match in additional ways:

**Additional Repetition Operators** These operators work like an asterisk, but they match only certain numbers of matches. Specifically, a plus sign (+) matches one or more occurrences, and a question mark (?) specifies zero or one match.

**Multiple Possible Strings** The vertical bar (|) separates two possible matches; for instance, `car|truck` matches either `car` or `truck`.

**Parentheses** Ordinary parentheses (()) surround subexpressions. Parentheses are often used to specify how operators are to be applied; for example, you can put parentheses around a group of words that are concatenated with the vertical bar to ensure that the words are treated as a group, any one of which may match, without involving surrounding parts of the regular expression.

Whether you use basic or extended regular expressions depends on which form the program supports. For programs such as `grep` that support both, you can use either; which you choose is mostly a matter of personal preference. Note that a regular expression that includes characters associated with extended regular expressions will be interpreted differently depending on which type you're using. Thus it's important to know which type of regular expression a program supports, or how to select which type to use if the program supports both types.

Regular expression rules can be confusing, particularly when you're first introduced to them. Some examples of their use, in the context of the programs that use them, will help. The next section provides such examples, with reference to the `grep` program.

## Searching for and Extracting Data

The `grep` command uses regular expressions and is helpful in locating data. The `grep` utility locates files by scanning their contents. The `grep` program also returns some of the data included in files, which can be useful if you want to extract just a little data from a file or from a program's output. As its name suggests, `find` locates files. It uses surface features, such as the filename and the file's date stamps. Another command, `wc`, provides basic statistics on text files. To extract individual data items from a file's lines, the `cut` command is useful. Two additional commands, `sort` and `cat`, allow the display of resulting data to be manipulated, which can be helpful in your search.



Unlike `grep`, `find` does not use regular expressions. However, it does support pattern matching by using a similar mechanism.

Certification  
Objective

If you don't specify a filename, `grep` uses standard input. This can be useful with pipelines, as described shortly in the section "Redirecting Input and Output."

## Using `grep`

The `grep` command searches for files that contain a specified string and returns the name of the file and (if it's a text file) the line containing that string. You can also use `grep` to search a specified file for a specified string. To use `grep`, you type the command's name, an optional set of options, a regular expression, and an optional filename specification. The `grep` command supports a large number of options, the most common of which appear in Table 8.1.

**TABLE 8.1** Common `grep` options

Option (long form)	Option (short form)	Description
<code>--count</code>	<code>-c</code>	Instead of displaying the lines that contain matches to the regular expression, displays the number of lines that match.
<code>--file=file</code>	<code>-f file</code>	This option takes pattern input from the specified file rather than from the command line. The <code>fgrep</code> command is a shortcut for this option.
<code>--ignore-case</code>	<code>-i</code>	You can perform a case-insensitive search, rather than the default case-sensitive search, by using the <code>-i</code> or <code>--ignore-case</code> option.
<code>--recursive</code>	<code>-R</code> or <code>-r</code>	This option searches in the specified directory and all of the subdirectories rather than simply the specified directory. You can use <code>rgrep</code> rather than specify this option.
<code>--extended-regexp</code>	<code>-E</code>	The <code>grep</code> command uses basic regular expressions by default. To use an extended regular expression, you can pass this option. Alternatively, you can call <code>egrep</code> rather than <code>grep</code> ; this variant command uses extended regular expressions by default.

A simple example of `grep` uses a regular expression with no special components:

```
$ grep -r eth0 /etc/*
```

This example finds all of the files in `/etc` that contain the string `eth0` (the identifier for the first Ethernet device on most distributions). Because the example includes the `-r` option, it searches recursively, so `grep` searches files in subdirectories of `/etc` as well as those in `/etc` itself. For each matching text file, the line that contains the string is printed.

Suppose that you want to locate all of the files in `/etc` that contain the string `eth0` or `eth1`. You can enter the following command, which uses a bracket regular expression to specify both variant devices:

```
$ grep eth[01] /etc/*
```

A more complex example searches just the `/etc/passwd` file for lines that contain the word `games` or `mail` and, later on the same line, the word `nologin`. This task requires extended regular expression notation; the needed command looks like this:

```
$ grep -E "(games|mail).*nologin" /etc/passwd
```

The preceding command illustrates another feature that you may need to use: *shell quoting*. Because the shell uses certain characters, such as the vertical bar (`|`) and the asterisk (`*`), for its own purposes, you must enclose certain regular expressions in quotes. Otherwise, the shell will incorrectly treat the regular expression as shell commands.

You can use `grep` in conjunction with commands that produce a lot of output in order to sift through that output for the material that's important to you. (Several examples throughout this book use this technique.) To accomplish this, you need to use input and output redirection. This topic is covered (along with additional `grep` examples) in the upcoming section, "Redirecting Input and Output."

## Using *find*

The `find` utility implements a brute-force approach to finding files. This program finds files by searching through the specified directory tree, checking filenames, file creation dates, and so on to locate the files that match the specified criteria. Because of this operation method, `find` tends to be slow. It's flexible, however, and likely to succeed, assuming that the file for which you're searching exists. To use `find`, type its name, optionally followed by a directory tree pathname (sometimes called a *starting point directory*) and a series of options, some of which use specifications that are similar to regular expressions.

Ordinary users can't read some files in `/etc`. If you type this command as a non-root user, you'll see error messages relating to `grep`'s inability to open files.

If you type this command on your computer, it may find no matches because of your distribution's configuration. Try other words instead of `games` and `mail`, such as `pulse` or `rpc`.

Certification Objective

In practice, you must use a directory tree pathname or a search criterion with `find`, and often both.

You can specify one or more paths in which `find` should operate; the program will restrict its operations to these paths. The `man` page for `find` includes information about its search criteria, but Table 8.2 summarizes common criteria.

**TABLE 8.2** Common `find` search criteria

Option	Description
<code>-name pattern</code>	You can search for files using their names with this option. Doing so finds files that match the specified <i>pattern</i> . This <i>pattern</i> is not technically a regular expression, but it does support many regular expression features.
<code>-perm mode</code>	If you need to find files that have certain permissions, you can do so by using the <code>-perm mode</code> expression. The <i>mode</i> may be expressed either symbolically or in octal form. If you precede <i>mode</i> with a <code>+</code> , <code>find</code> locates files in which any of the specified permission bits are set. If you precede <i>mode</i> with a <code>-</code> , <code>find</code> locates files in which <i>all</i> of the specified permission bits are set.
<code>-size n</code>	You can search for files based on size with this expression. Normally, <i>n</i> is specified in 512-byte blocks, but you can modify this by trailing the value with a letter code, such as <code>c</code> for characters (bytes) or <code>k</code> for kilobytes.
<code>-group name</code>	This option searches for files that belong to the specified group.
<code>-gid GID</code>	This expression searches for files whose group ID (GID) is set to <i>GID</i> .
<code>-user name</code>	This option searches for files that are owned by the specified user.
<code>-uid UID</code>	You can search for files by user ID (UID) number by using this option.
<code>-maxdepth levels</code>	If you want to search a directory and, perhaps, some limited number of subdirectories, you can use this expression to limit the search.

Chapter 14, “Setting Ownership and Permissions,” covers file permissions.

If you lack permission to list a directory’s contents, `find` will return that directory name and the error message `Permission denied`.

Many variant and additional options exist; `find` is a powerful command. As an example of its use, consider the task of finding all C source-code files, which normally have names that end in `.c`, in all users’ home directories. If these home directories reside in the `/home` directory tree, you might issue the following command:

```
# find /home -name "*.c"
```

The result will be a listing of all files that have names ending in `.c` and reside within the `/home` directory tree.

## Using `wc`

A file's size in bytes, as revealed by `ls` or searched for using `find`, can be a useful metric. This size value isn't always the most useful one for text files, though. You might need to know how many words or lines are in a text file—say, because you want to know how many pages a text document will consume when printed at 52 lines per page. The `wc` utility provides this information. For instance, to discover the information for a newly created file named `newfile.txt` in your present working directory:

```
$ wc newfile.txt
 37  59 1990 newfile.txt
```

This output reveals that the file `newfile.txt` contains 37 lines, 59 words, and 1,990 bytes. By default, `wc` displays a count of lines, words, and bytes for each file you pass to it.

You can pass options to limit or expand `wc`'s output, as summarized in Table 8.3. Of the options in Table 8.3, `-l`, `-w`, and `-c` are the defaults, so typing `wc file.txt` is equivalent to typing `wc -lwc file.txt`. The program's man page describes a few more options, but the ones in Table 8.3 are the ones you're most likely to use.

**TABLE 8.3** Common `wc` options

Option (long form)	Option (short form)	Description
<code>--bytes</code>	<code>-c</code>	Displays the file's byte count
<code>--chars</code>	<code>-m</code>	Displays the file's character count
<code>--lines</code>	<code>-l</code>	Displays the file's newline count
<code>--words</code>	<code>-w</code>	Displays the file's word count
<code>--max-line-length</code>	<code>-L</code>	Displays the length of the longest line in the file

Be aware that `wc` works correctly on plain-text files, but it may produce incorrect or even nonsensical results on formatted text files, such as HTML files or word processor files. You're better off using a word processor or other specialized editor to find the number of words and other statistics for such files.

Certification  
Objective

Some text files use multibyte encodings, meaning that one character can consume more than one byte. Thus the `-c` and `-m` options may not produce identical results, although they often do.



## Using *cut*

When extracting data, *grep* is helpful in pulling out entire file lines (sometimes called a *record*). Sometimes, though, you need only parts of a file record. The *cut* command can help in this case. It extracts text from fields in a file record. It's frequently used to extract variable information from a file whose contents are highly patterned.

To use *cut*, you pass to it one or more options that specify what information you want, followed by one or more filenames. For instance, users' home directories appear in the sixth colon-delimited field of the */etc/passwd* file. Therefore, to extract only the directory names, issue this command:

```
$ cut -f 6 -d ":" /etc/passwd
```

Table 8.4 shows the options that you're most likely to need with the *cut* command. Consult its man page for additional options and a complete description of the *cut* command.

**TABLE 8.4** Common *cut* options

Option (long form)	Option (short form)	Description
<code>--characters</code>	<code>-c</code>	Selects only designated character position(s).
<code>--delimiter</code>	<code>-d</code>	Uses designated delimiter as field delimiter instead of the default delimiter (Tab).
<code>--fields</code>	<code>-f</code>	Selects only designated fields.
<code>--only-delimited</code>	<code>-s</code>	Lines without a delimiter are not printed (default is to print them when the <code>-f</code> option is used).

You can capture the *cut* command's results into a file by using output redirection. Redirection is covered later in this chapter, in the "Redirecting Input and Output" section.



## Using *sort*

When dealing with a large amount of data, being able to sort it is often useful. The *sort* command does just that. However, you need to be aware of its features in order to achieve the desired results.

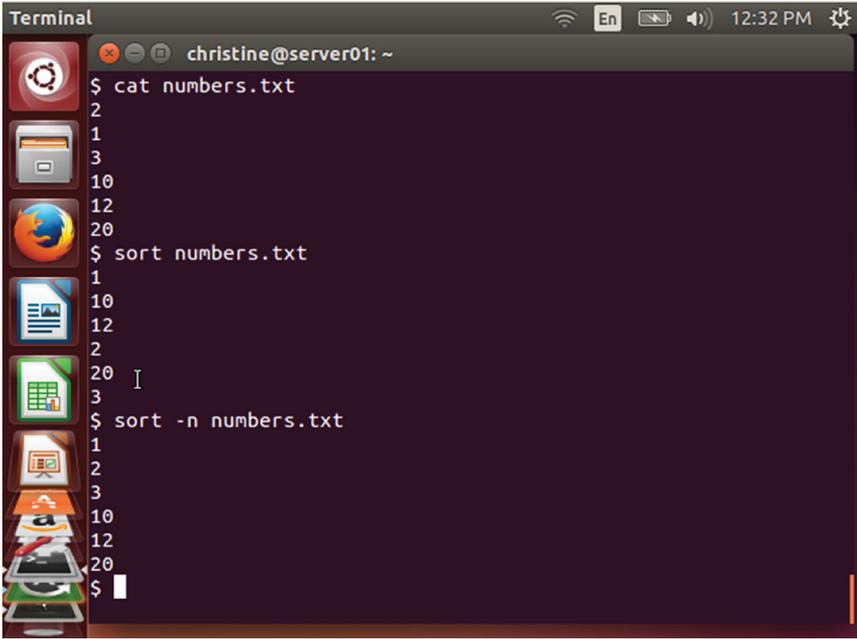
When using the *cut* command, the extracted information is displayed to the screen. Be aware, however, that the specified file(s) remains unchanged.

For a simple data list with only words, you can use `sort` without any options, as shown here:

```
$ cat pets.txt
fish
dog
cat
bird
$ sort pets.txt
bird
cat
dog
fish
```

Like the `cut` command, when using `sort`, no changes are made to the file's data. Only the output is sorted.

You may need to use options when sorting numeric data to achieve the desired results. The example in Figure 8.1 shows what happens when the `sort` command is used to sort a numeric data list. The numbers are not properly sorted in numerical order until the `-n` option is used.



```
Terminal
christine@server01: ~
$ cat numbers.txt
2
1
3
10
12
20
$ sort numbers.txt
1
10
12
2
20
$ sort -n numbers.txt
1
2
3
10
12
20
$
```

**FIGURE 8.1** Sorting a numeric data list

Figure 8.1 shows the importance of using the appropriate `sort` command option to achieve the results you desire. A few of the more popular `sort` options are listed in Table 8.5.

TABLE 8.5 Common sort options

Option (long form)	Option (short form)	Description
--dictionary-order	-d	Considers only blanks and alphanumeric characters; doesn't consider special characters
--ignore-case	-f	Ignores case (default is to consider case and order capitalized letters first)
--numeric-sort	-n	Sorts by string numeric value
--output= <i>file</i>	-o	Writes results to file specified
--reverse	-r	Sorts in descending order (default is to sort ascending)

Many other useful sort options are available besides just the ones listed in Table 8.5. To explore the other options, review the man pages for sort.

Certification  
Objective

## Using cat

Chapter 6, “Getting to Know the Command Line,” introduced the cat command. Though cat is often used for displaying short text files on the screen, it also has the ability to concatenate files together. The example in Figure 8.2 shows both of these uses in action.

To display only the *first* 20 lines of a file, use the head command instead of cat. If the *last* 20 lines of a file need to be viewed, the tail command can be helpful. Find out how to display fewer or additional file lines with these commands by viewing their man pages.

```

christine@localhost:~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
$ cat fileA.txt
fileA Line 1
fileA Line 2
$ cat fileB.txt
fileB Line 1
fileB Line 2
$ cat fileA.txt fileB.txt
fileA Line 1
fileA Line 2
fileB Line 1
fileB Line 2
$

```

FIGURE 8.2 Using cat to display and concatenate files

Notice in Figure 8.2 that when the `cat` command is issued with a single filename as an argument, it simply displays the file's contents on the screen, as you would expect. However, when two files are used as an argument, the files' contents are chained together. The files themselves are not modified; only the output is concatenated. This can be quite handy. In this chapter's "Redirecting Input and Output" section, how to preserve this output for future use is covered in detail.

## Redirecting Input and Output

If you want to save a program's output for future reference, you can *redirect* it to a file. You can also redirect the input to a program from a file. Although input redirection may sound strange, some programs rely on this feature to enable them to process data, such as raw text files fed through a program that searches the text for patterns. In addition to redirecting output to files or input from files, you can pass one program's output to another one as its input. A related technique involves the `xargs` command, which enables you to generate command-line options from files or other programs' output.

### Using Basic Redirection Operators

Redirection is achieved with the help of *redirection operators*, which are short strings that appear after the command and its arguments. Table 8.6 shows the most common redirection operators. Be aware that output comes in two types:

**Standard Output** This is for normal program messages.

**Standard Error** This contains error messages.

TABLE 8.6 Common redirection operators

Redirection operator	Effect
>	Creates a new file containing standard output. If the specified file exists, it's overwritten.
>>	Appends standard output to the existing file. If the specified file doesn't exist, it's created.
2>	Creates a new file containing standard error. If the specified file exists, it's overwritten.

(Continues)

Certification  
Objective

Having two types of output enables them to be separated so that error messages don't confuse programs that might be expecting certain types of input from another program.

TABLE 8.6 (Continued)

Redirection operator	Effect
2>>	Appends standard error to the existing file. If the specified file doesn't exist, it's created.
&>	Creates a new file containing both standard output and standard error. If the specified file exists, it's overwritten.
<	Sends the contents of the specified file to be used as standard input.
<<	Accepts text on the following lines as standard input.
<>	Causes the specified file to be used for both standard input and standard output.

As an example of redirecting output, consider a `grep` command to search for information on a particular user in all of the configuration files in `/etc`. Without redirection, such a command might look like this:

```
# grep david /etc/*
```

Assuming that superuser privileges are used, this command will return a series of output lines like the following:

```
Binary file /etc/aliases.db matches
/etc/group:wheel:x:10:root,david
/etc/group:audio:x:18:mythtv,david,pulse
/etc/group:cdrom:x:19:haldaemon,david
[...]
```

Such output can be quite lengthy, and you might want to peruse it later. To do so, you could redirect the output to a file, like this:

```
# grep david /etc/* > david-in-etc.txt
```

Using the `>` redirection operator takes the output from the `grep` command and puts it into a file called `david-in-etc.txt`. If you then wanted to see the output, you could use `less`:

```
# less david-in-etc.txt
Binary file /etc/aliases.db matches
/etc/group:wheel:x:10:root,david
```

Be careful when using the `>` redirection operator: if the file already exists, this operator will overwrite the file's current contents.

```
/etc/group:audio:x:18:mythtv,david,pulse
/etc/group:cdrom:x:19:haldaemon,david
[...]
```

In this example, you haven't gained anything compared to simply typing **grep david /etc/\***, but you might in other cases. For instance, suppose a command is producing several error messages. You might then redirect standard error to a file and search for strings that might be relevant, and so on, even as you attempt to run the command, or a modified version of it, once more.

This next example illustrates how standard error and standard output are separate. If you type **grep david /etc/\*** as a normal user (perhaps substituting your own username for `david`), you're likely to see output such as that shown earlier, specifying the files in which your username appears; however, you're also likely to see error messages, since you lack permission to read some of the files in `/etc`:

```
grep: /etc/securetty: Permission denied
grep: /etc/shadow: Permission denied
```

The information on the files in which `david` appears is shown via standard output, but the errors are shown via standard error. If you're not interested in the errors, you can redirect them to `/dev/null`—a device file that serves as a trash can for data that you want to discard:

```
$ grep david /etc/* 2> /dev/null
```

Likewise, if you redirect standard output to a file but do *not* redirect standard error, you'll see the error messages on your screen. However, the file you create (such as `david-in-etc.txt` from the earlier command) will not contain the error messages. You may want to try all of the different types of output redirection by using **grep david /etc/\*** (substituting your own username for `david`) to get a feel for how they work.

## Using Pipes

Another type of redirected output is a command-line *pipe* or *pipeline*. In a pipe, the standard output from one program is redirected as the standard input to a second program. You create a pipe by using a vertical bar (`|`) between the two commands; this key is usually above the Enter key and accessed with Shift. Pipelines can be useful when applied in various ways. For instance, you might pipe the lengthy output of a program through the `less` pager, which enables you to page up and down through the output. In this

Many programs have options, set on the command line or in configuration files, that affect the wordiness of their output. Check a program's man page to learn about such options.

The only difference between redirecting standard output by using the `>` redirection operator and redirecting standard error by using the `2>` operator is the number 2. This is because the number 2 represents *standard error* at the command line.

Certification  
Objective

Chapter 6 describes the `less` pager.

The `/etc/passwd` file and user accounts are covered in detail in Chapter 12, “Understanding Basic Security.”

example, the `cut` command is used to pull the users’ home directories from the `/etc/passwd` file and then piped as input into the `less` command for an easier viewing of the results:

```
$ cut -f 6 -d ":" /etc/passwd | less
```

Often `grep` is used in pipelines to search for keywords in the output. In this example, the `cut` command is used to pull the users’ default shells from the `/etc/passwd` file and then piped as input to the `grep` command to search for the `bash` keyword:

```
$ cut -f 7 -d ":" /etc/passwd | grep bash
```

You are not limited to one pipe in your command line. For example, you can make the previous example more useful by putting in a second pipe. To determine the number of users who have the `bash` shell in their `/etc/passwd` record, another pipe is used and the `wc` command is tacked onto the pipeline’s end:

```
$ cut -f 7 -d ":" /etc/passwd | grep bash | wc -l
237
```

In the previous example, three commands were included in the pipeline. There are 237 user accounts that have the `bash` shell in their `/etc/passwd` record on this system.

## Generating Command Lines

Pipelines can be useful for tricky tasks. For instance, suppose that you want to remove every file in a directory tree with a name that ends in a tilde (~). (This filename convention denotes backup files created by certain text editors.) With a large directory tree, this task can be daunting. The usual file-deletion command (`rm`, described in detail in Chapter 7) doesn’t provide an option to search for and delete every file in a directory tree that matches such a specific criterion. The `find` command could do the search part of the job (described in depth earlier), but not the deletion.

The solution is to combine the output of `find` to create a series of command lines using `rm`. This can be accomplished in three primary ways:

**xargs** The `xargs` command’s purpose in a pipeline is to build a command from its standard input. The basic syntax for this command is as follows:

```
xargs [options] [command [initial-arguments]]
```

The *command* is the command that you want to execute, and *initial-arguments* is a list of arguments that you want to pass to the command. The *options* are *xargs* options; they aren't passed to *command*. When you run *xargs*, it runs *command* once for every word passed to it on standard input, adding that word to the argument list for *command*. If you want to pass multiple options to the command, you can protect them by enclosing the group in quotation marks.

For instance, consider the task of deleting all of those backup files, denoted by tilde characters. You can do this by piping the output of `find` to `xargs`, which then calls `rm`:

```
$ find ./ -name "*~" | xargs rm
```

The first part of this pipeline (`find ./ -name "*~"`) finds all of the files in the current directory (`./`) or its subdirectories with a name that ends in a tilde (`*~`). This list is then piped to `xargs`, which adds each found file to its own `rm` command. The tricky task of finding and deleting all of those backup files is accomplished.

**Backticks** A tool that's similar to `xargs` in many ways is the backtick (```), which is a character to the left of the `1` key on most keyboards. The backtick is *not* the same as the single quote character (`'`), which is located to the right of the semicolon (`;`) on most keyboards.

Text within backticks is treated as a separate command whose results are substituted on the command line. For instance, to delete those backup files, you can type the following command:

```
$ rm `find ./ -name "*~"`
```

Using backticks in this way is called *command substitution*, because you are providing a substitution for one of the command's arguments. In the previous example, the results of the `find` command took the place of the file's name as the `rm` command argument.

**`$()` Format** Because it is so easy to confuse a backtick (```) with a single quotation mark (`'`), using backticks for command substitution is generally falling out of favor. If it is available on your distribution, it's better to use another form of command substitution, the `$()` format:

```
$ rm $(find ./ -name "*~")
```

The results are the same using this form of command substitution and they are generally easier to read.

## Archiving Data

A file-archiving tool collects a group of files into a single “package” file that you can easily move around on a single system; back up to a recordable DVD, USB flash drive, or other removable media; or transfer across a network. Linux supports several archiving commands, the most prominent being `tar` and `zip`. In addition to understanding these commands, you should be familiar with the consequences of using compression with them.

Certification  
Objective

### Using `tar`

Another archive program, `cpio`, is sometimes used in Linux. It's similar in principle to `tar`, but different in operational details.

The `tar` program's name stands for *tape archiver*. Regardless of its name, you can use `tar` to back up (also called *archive*) data to your hard disk or other media, not just to tapes. The `tar` program is a popular tool used to archive various data files into a single file, called an *archive file* (the original files remain on your disk). Because the resulting archive file can be quite large, it is often compressed on the fly via the `tar` program into a *tarball*. In fact, tarballs are often used for transferring multiple files between computers in one step, such as when distributing source code.

The `tar` program is a complex package with many options, but most of what you'll do with the utility can be covered with a few common commands. Table 8.7 lists the primary `tar` commands, and Table 8.8 lists the qualifiers that modify what the commands do. Whenever you run `tar`, you use exactly one command, and you usually use at least one qualifier.

Certification  
Objective

Unlike most single-letter program options in Linux, you can use single-letter `tar` commands and qualifiers without a leading dash (-).

TABLE 8.7 `tar` commands

Command	Abbreviation	Description
<code>--create</code>	<code>c</code>	Creates an archive
<code>--concatenate</code>	<code>A</code>	Appends <code>tar</code> files to an archive
<code>--append</code>	<code>r</code>	Appends non- <code>tar</code> files to an archive
<code>--update</code>	<code>u</code>	Appends files that are newer than those in an archive
<code>--diff</code> or <code>--compare</code>	<code>d</code>	Compares an archive to files on disk
<code>--list</code>	<code>t</code>	Lists an archive's contents
<code>--extract</code> or <code>--get</code>	<code>x</code>	Extracts files from an archive

TABLE 8.8 tar qualifiers



Qualifier	Abbreviation	Description
<code>--directory <i>dir</i></code>	C	Changes to directory <i>dir</i> before performing operations
<code>--file [<i>host:</i>]<i>file</i></code>	f	Uses the file called <i>file</i> on the computer called <i>host</i> as the archive file
<code>--listed-incremental <i>file</i></code>	g	Performs an incremental backup or restore, using <i>file</i> as a list of previously archived files
<code>--one-file-system</code>	(none)	Backs up or restores only one file-system (partition)
<code>--multi-volume</code>	M	Creates or extracts a multitape archive
<code>--tape-length N</code>	L	Changes tapes after N kilobytes
<code>--same-permissions</code>	p	Preserves all protection information
<code>--absolute-names</code>	P	Retains the leading / on filenames
<code>--verbose</code>	v	Lists all files read or extracted; when used with <code>--list</code> , displays file sizes, ownership, and time stamps
<code>--verify</code>	W	Verifies the archive after writing it
<code>--exclude <i>file</i></code>	(none)	Excludes <i>file</i> from the archive
<code>--exclude-from <i>file</i></code>	X	Excludes files listed in <i>file</i> from the archive
<code>--gzip</code> or <code>--ungzip</code>	z	Processes an archive through gzip
<code>--bzip2</code>	j (some older versions used I or y)	Processes an archive through bzip2
<code>--xz</code>	J	Processes an archive through xz

The `tar` utility preserves Linux's ownership and permission information, even when the archive is stored on a filesystem that doesn't support such metadata.

An example of archiving and compressing files to create a tarball is shown in Figure 8.3. The files, which are located in the `/home/christine/my-work` directory, are archived to a USB flash drive. The flash drive is mounted at `/run/media/christine/TRAVELDRIVE`, as shown in Figure 8.3. The `czvf` options are used with the `tar` command to create (c), compress using `gzip` (z), display the files being archived (v), and create an archive file (f).

```
christine@localhost:~$
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
$ ls -l /home/christine/my-work
total 304
-rw-r--r--. 1 christine christine 1680 Mar 31 11:02 project1
-rw-r--r--. 1 christine christine 292292 Mar 31 11:03 project2
-rw-rw-r--. 1 christine christine 10752 Mar 31 11:10 project3
$
$ tar czvf /run/media/christine/TRAVELDRIVE/my-work.tgz /home/christine/my-work
tar: Removing leading '/' from member names
/home/christine/my-work/
/home/christine/my-work/project1
/home/christine/my-work/project3
/home/christine/my-work/project2
$
$ ls -l /run/media/christine/TRAVELDRIVE/my-work.tgz
-rw-r--r--. 1 christine christine 2259 Mar 31 11:20 /run/media/christine/TRAVELDRIVE/my-work.tgz
$
$
```

FIGURE 8.3 Creating an archive tarball

Notice in Figure 8.3 that the leading `/` is removed from the archived filenames (called *member names* in the figure). This allows you to extract the files easily to a new location. For example, if you transfer the flash drive from Figure 8.3 to another system, mount it, copy the `my-work.tgz` tarball archive file to a directory, and want to extract the archive, you can do so with another command:

```
$ tar xzvf my-work.tgz
```

This command creates a subdirectory in the current working directory called `home/christine/my-work` and populates it with the files from the tarball archive. Notice that only one `tar` command option change is needed from the `tar` options used in Figure 8.3. The `c` (create) was switched to an `x` for extracting the files.

If you don't know what's in an archive, it's a good practice to examine it with the `--list` command before extracting its contents. Although common practice creates tarballs that store files within a single subdirectory, sometimes tarballs drop many files in the current working directory, which can make them difficult to track down if you run the command in a directory that already has many files.

## Using Compression

In Linux, the `gzip`, `bzip2`, and `xz` programs all compress individual files. For instance, you might compress a large graphics file like this:

```
$ xz biggraphics.tiff
```

The result is a file with a name like the original but with a new filename extension to identify it as a compressed format. In this specific case, the result would be `biggraphics.tiff.xz`.

Most graphics programs won't read files compressed in this way. Thus to use a file that's been compressed, you must uncompress it with a matching program. To uncompress the `biggraphics.tiff.xz` file compressed in the previous example, use this command:

```
$ unxz biggraphics.tiff.xz
```

Table 8.9 summarizes the compression programs, their matching uncompression programs, and the filename extensions that they create.

**TABLE 8.9** Compression and uncompression programs and filename extensions

Compression program	Uncompression program	Filename extension
<code>gzip</code>	<code>gunzip</code>	<code>.gz</code>
<code>bzip2</code>	<code>bunzip2</code>	<code>.bz2</code>
<code>xz</code>	<code>unxz</code>	<code>.xz</code>

The `tar` program provides explicit support for all three of these compression standards, and tarballs often have their own unique filename extensions that indicate the compression used:

- ▶ `.tgz` for tarballs compressed with `gzip`
- ▶ `.tbz` or `.tbz2` or `.tb2` for tarballs compressed with `bzip2`
- ▶ `.txz` for tarballs compressed with `xz`

When you use compression to create a tarball (using the `z`, `j`, or `J` option to `tar`), the compression program works on the entire tarball with all of its files rather than individually compressing each file within the tarball. This can improve the compression ratio compared to compressing individual files and then bundling them together. However, it makes it harder to extract data from a file if it becomes damaged.

Certification  
Objective

As a general rule, `gzip` provides the least compression, and `xz` the most compression. This is why the Linux kernel is now compressed with `xz`.

Sometimes two extensions are used on a tarball archive file, resulting in a filename such as `my-work.tar.bz2`.

Typically, plain-text files compress extremely well, binary program files compress moderately well, and precompressed data (such as most video file formats) compress poorly or may even expand in size when compressed again.

The `gzip`, `bzip2`, and `xz` compression programs all apply *lossless* compression, meaning that the data recovered by uncompressing the file is identical to what went into it. Some graphics, audio, and audio-visual file formats apply *lossy* compression, in which some data are discarded. Lossy compression tools should never be used on program files, system configuration files, or most user data files; any loss in such files could be disastrous. That's why `tar` supports only lossless compression tools.



## Using `zip`

Outside of the Unix and Linux world, the `zip` file format is a common one that fills a role similar to a compressed tarball. Linux provides the `zip` command to create `zip` files, and the `unzip` utility to extract files from a `zip` archive. `Zip` files typically have filename extensions of `.zip`.

In most cases, you can create a `zip` archive by passing the utility the name of a target `zip` file followed by a filename list:

```
$ zip newzip.zip afile.txt figure.tif
```

This command creates the `newzip.zip` file, which holds the `afile.txt` and `figure.tif` files. (The original files remain on your disk.) In some cases, you'll need to use options to `zip` to achieve the desired results. Table 8.10 summarizes the most important `zip` options; however, the program supports many more. Consult its man page for details.

**TABLE 8.10** Common `zip` options

Option (long form)	Option (short form)	Description
N/A	-0 through -9	Sets the amount of compression; -0 applies no compression, -1 applies minimal (but fast) compression, and so on through -9, which applies maximum (but slow) compression.
--delete	-d	Deletes the specified files from the archive file.
--encrypt	-e	Encrypts the archive with a password. ( <code>zip</code> prompts you for this password.)

Option (long form)	Option (short form)	Description
<code>--freshen</code>	<code>-f</code>	Updates files in an archive if they've changed since the original archive's creation.
<code>--fix</code> or <code>--fixfix</code>	<code>-F</code> or <code>-FF</code>	Performs repairs on a damaged archive file. The <code>--fix/-F</code> option performs minimal repairs, whereas <code>--fixfix/-FF</code> is more thorough.
<code>--filesync</code>	<code>-FS</code>	Updates files in an archive if they've changed since the original archive's creation, and deletes files from the archive if they've been deleted on the filesystem.
<code>--grow</code>	<code>-g</code>	Appends files to an existing archive file.
<code>--help</code>	<code>-h</code> or <code>-?</code>	Displays basic help information.
<code>--move</code>	<code>-m</code>	Moves files into the zip archive; that is, the original files are deleted.
<code>--recurse</code> <code>--paths</code>	<code>-r</code>	Includes files and subdirectories inside the directories that you specify.
<code>--split</code> <code>--size size</code>	<code>-s size</code>	Creates a potentially multifile archive, with each file no larger than <i>size</i> bytes. (A <i>k</i> , <i>m</i> , <i>g</i> , or <i>t</i> can be appended to the size to specify larger units.)
<code>--exclude files</code>	<code>-x files</code>	Excludes the specified files.
<code>--symlinks</code>	<code>-y</code>	Includes symbolic links as such. (Ordinarily, <code>zip</code> includes the linked-to files.)

Of the options in Table 8.10, the `-r` option is probably the most important, at least if you want to compress an entire directory tree. If you fail to use this option, your archive will contain no subdirectories. Given the speed of modern CPUs, using `-9` on a regular basis also makes sense to achieve maximum compression.

To uncompress and extract files in a zip archive file, you can use the `unzip` program:

```
$ unzip anarchiver.zip
```

This example uncompresses the files in the `anarchiver.zip` file into the current directory. Like `zip`, `unzip` supports a large number of options, the most important of which appear in Table 8.11.

**TABLE 8.11** Common `unzip` options

Option	Description
<code>-f</code>	Freshens files from the archive; that is, extracts only those files that exist on the main filesystem and that are newer in the archive than on the main filesystem
<code>-l</code>	Lists files in the archive but does not extract them
<code>-p</code>	Extracts files to a pipeline
<code>-t</code>	Tests the integrity of files in the archive
<code>-u</code>	Updates files; similar to <code>-f</code> , but also extracts files that don't exist on the filesystem
<code>-v</code>	Lists files in the archive in a more verbose format than <code>-l</code> does
<code>-L</code>	Converts filenames to lowercase if they originated on an uppercase-only OS, such as DOS
<code>-n</code>	Never overwrites existing files
<code>-o</code>	Overwrites existing files without prompting

As a general rule, using `unzip` without any options except for the input filename works well. However, you might want to use one or more of its options on occasion. The `-l` option is particularly useful for examining the archive's contents without extracting it.

Zip files typically contain "loose" files in the main directory, so you should generally extract zip archives in an empty subdirectory that you create for this purpose.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Managing your files often requires locating them, and tools such as `grep` and `find` help you with this task. The `grep` utility in particular makes use of regular expressions, which provide a way to describe patterns that you might want to find in files or in the output of another program. The `wc`, `cut`, and `sort` utilities assist in extracting information and reorganizing it for desired analysis. The `cat` command also allows you to reorganize data by combining multiple files into one as well as viewing simple text files. If you need to view only a portion of a file, the `head` and `tail` programs are better to use. You can redirect such output into `grep` (or other programs or files) by using redirection operators, and many Linux command-line tools and techniques rely on such redirection. The `tar` and `zip` programs both enable you to create archive files that hold many other files. In fact, the tarballs that `tar` creates are a common means of distributing source code and even binary programs between Linux computers. The `tar` command uses `xz`, `gzip`, and `bzip2` compression for creating tarballs. However, these utilities are available to use for general lossless file compression as well.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ Use `find` and `grep` to locate files in your own directory and on the Linux computer at large. For instance, try locating references to your own username in configuration files in `/etc`.
- ▶ Use `gzip`, `bzip2`, and `xz` to compress a couple of instances of various types of files, such as text files and digital photos. What file types compress well? Which compression tool works best for each file type?

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Which of the following commands will print lines from the file `world.txt` that contain matches to `changes` and `changed`?
  - A. `grep change[ds] world.txt`
  - B. `tar change[d-s] world.txt`
  - C. `find "change'd|s'" world.txt`
  - D. `cat world.txt changes changed`
  - E. `find change[^ds] world.txt`
2. Which of the following redirection operators appends a program's standard output to an existing file without overwriting that file's original contents?
  - A. `|`
  - B. `>`
  - C. `&>`

*(Continues)*

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)*

- D. >
  - E. >>
3. You've received a tar archive called `data79.tar` from a colleague, but you want to check the names of the files it contains before extracting them. Which of the following commands would you use to do this?
    - A. `tar uvf data79.tar`
    - B. `tar cvf data79.tar`
    - C. `tar xvf data79.tar`
    - D. `tar tvf data79.tar`
    - E. `tar Avf data79.tar`
  4. True or false: The regular expression `Linu[^x]*lds` matches the string `Linus Torvalds`.
  5. True or false: The `find` command enables you to locate files based on their sizes.
  6. True or false: To compress files archived with `zip`, you must use an external compression program such as `gzip` or `bzip2` in a pipeline with `zip`.
  7. The character that represents the start of a line in a regular expression is \_\_\_\_\_.
  8. The \_\_\_\_\_ command can extract specified data fields from a file's records.
  9. Complete the following command to redirect both standard output and a standard error from the `bigprog` program to the file `out.txt`.  
`$ bigprog _____ out.txt`
  10. The `gzip`, `bzip2`, and `xz` programs all perform \_\_\_\_\_ compression, in which the uncompressed data exactly matches the original precompression data.

## Exploring Processes and Process Data

*Computers are dynamic and* multipurpose machines; they use many tools to do a variety of jobs. This chapter describes the ways that you can manage these tools. One aspect of this task is installing, uninstalling, and upgrading software packages. Another aspect of software management is in managing programs after they're running. (Running programs are often called *processes*.) Finally, this chapter covers *log files*, which record details of what running programs do—particularly programs that run automatically and in the background.

- ▶ **Understanding package management**
- ▶ **Understanding the process hierarchy**
- ▶ **Identifying running processes**
- ▶ **Using log files**

### Understanding Package Management

Package management is an area of Linux that varies a lot from one distribution to another. Nonetheless, certain principles are common across most Linux distributions, so we describe these principles, followed by some of the basics of the two major Linux package management systems. We then describe how to manage packages using both the RPM Package Manager (RPM, a recursive acronym) and Debian package systems.

### Linux Package Management Principles

If you've installed software in Windows, you're likely familiar with the procedure of double-clicking an installer program, which places all the files associated with a program where they should go. A Windows software installer

is similar to a Linux package file, but there are differences. Linux packages have the following characteristics:

Many program packages depend on *library* packages; libraries provide code that can be used by many programs.



You can compile and install software from source code manually, without using a packaging tool. This advanced topic is beyond the scope of this book.



Certification  
Objective

Packages can, and frequently do, contain files that will be installed to many directories on the computer. This fact makes tracking package contents critical.



- ▶ Each package is a single file that can be stored on a disk or transmitted over the Internet.
- ▶ Linux package files, unlike Windows installers, are not programs; packages rely on other programs to do the work of installing the software.
- ▶ Packages contain *dependency* information, which indicates to the packaging software what other packages or individual files must be installed in order for the package to work correctly.
- ▶ Packages contain version information, so that the packaging software can tell which of two packages is more recent.
- ▶ Packages contain architecture information to identify the CPU type (*x86*, *x86-64*, *ARM*, and so on) for which they're intended. A separate code identifies packages that are architecture-independent, such as fonts and desktop themes.
- ▶ *Binary packages* (which contain executable programs that are CPU-specific) are typically built from *source packages* (which contain source code that a programmer can understand). It's possible to build a new binary package, given the source package, which can be useful in some unusual circumstances.

The package software maintains a database of information about installed packages (the *package database*). This information includes the names and version numbers of all the installed packages, as well as the locations of all the files installed from each package. This information enables the package software to uninstall software quickly, establish whether a new package's dependencies have been met, and determine whether a package that you're trying to install has already been installed and, if so, whether the installed version is older than the one that you're trying to install.

## Understanding Package Systems

As noted earlier, two package systems, RPM and Debian, are common (although others exist as well). These systems differ in various technical details, as well as in the commands used to manage packages and in the format of the package files that they use. You cannot install a Debian package on an RPM-based system, or vice versa. Indeed, installing a package intended for one distribution on another is a bit

risky even when they use the same package type. This is because a non-native package may have dependencies that conflict with the needs of native packages.

Originally, package systems worked locally. To install a package on your computer, you would have to first download a package file from the Internet or in some other way. Only then could you use a local command to install the package. This approach, however, can be tedious when a package has many dependencies; you might attempt an installation, find unmet dependencies, download several more packages, find that one or more of them has unmet dependencies, and so on. By the time you've tracked down all of these depended-upon packages, you might need to install a dozen or more.

Modern distributions provide network-enabled tools to help automate the process. These tools rely on network software *repositories*, from which the tools can download packages automatically. The network-enabled tools vary from one distribution to another, particularly among RPM-based distributions.

In practice, then, managing software in Linux requires using text-mode or GUI tools to interface with a software repository. A typical software installation task works something like this:

1. You issue a command to install a program.
2. The software locates dependencies of the specified program and notifies you of any additional software that must be installed.
3. You issue a final approval for software installation (or decide against it, in which case the process stops).
4. The software downloads all of the necessary packages.
5. The software installs all the packages.

Upgrading software works in a similar way, although upgrades are less likely to require downloading depended-upon packages. Removing software can be done entirely locally, of course. Many distributions automatically check with their repositories from time to time and notify you when updates are available. Thus you can keep your system up-to-date by clicking a few buttons when you're prompted to do so. As an example, Figure 9.1 shows the Software Update utility in Fedora 21, which shows a list of available updates.

Package management necessarily involves root access, which is described in more detail in Chapter 13, "Creating Users and Groups." If you follow the automatic prompts to update your software, you can keep the system up-to-date by entering the root password, or your regular password on some distributions, when the update software prompts for it.

Table 1.1 in Chapter 1, "Selecting an Operating System," summarizes some features of several popular Linux distributions, including the package system each uses.

Certification  
Objective

You can configure most distributions to use local media instead of or in addition to Internet repositories.

Immediately after installing a distribution, you may find that many updates are available.

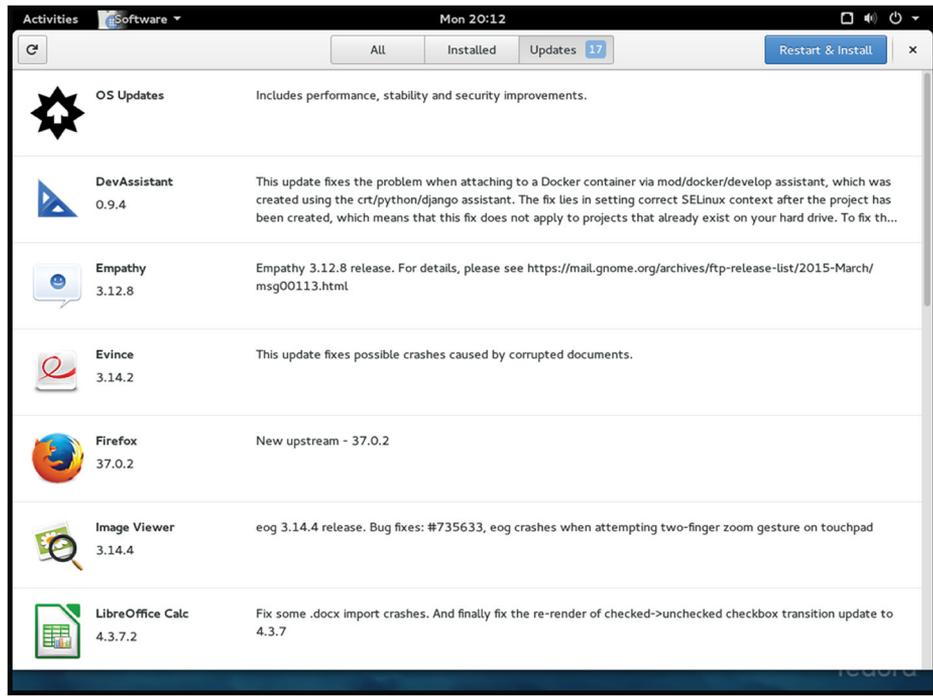


FIGURE 9.1 Most Linux distributions tell you when updates are available for your software.

## Managing Red Hat Systems

RPM-based distributions include Red Hat, Fedora, CentOS, SUSE Enterprise, openSUSE, and Mandriva. The basic tool for installing software on these distributions is the text-mode `rpm` command. This program works on local files, though; to use a network repository, you must use another tool, which varies by distribution:

- ▶ Red Hat, Fedora, and CentOS use the text-mode `yum` or various GUI front-ends to it, such as `Yumex`.
- ▶ SUSE Enterprise and openSUSE use `zypper` or a GUI front-end such as `YaST2`.
- ▶ Mandriva uses the text-mode `urpmi` or the GUI `Rpmdrake`.

Because of the variability between these distributions, particularly for network-enabled updates, providing a complete description of all these tools is impractical here. Fortunately, the GUI tools are easy to use and accessible. Even

the text-mode tools are fairly straightforward, although you may need to consult their man pages to learn the details. Typically, they use logical subcommands, such as `install` to install a package, as in the following:

```
# yum install yumex
```

You might use this command to install the GUI Yumex tool on a Red Hat, Fedora, or CentOS system. Similarly, you can remove a specific package by using the `remove` subcommand or upgrade all of a computer's packages by using `upgrade`:

```
# yum remove zsh
# yum upgrade
```

This example removes the `zsh` package and then upgrades the remaining packages on the system. Both of these commands will produce a number of lines of output, and you may be asked to verify their actions. Consult the man page for `yum` (or whatever package management software your distribution uses) to learn more about this tool.

If you need to deal with RPM package files directly, you should be aware that they have filename extensions of `.rpm`. These files also usually include codes for architecture type (such as `i386` or `x86_64`), and often codes for the distribution for which they're intended (such as `fc21` for Fedora 21). For instance, `samba-4.1.17-1.fc21.x86_64.rpm` is a package file for the Samba package, version 4.1.17, release 1, for Fedora 21, on the `x86-64` platform. To install it using the `rpm` command, you'd use this:

```
# rpm -i samba-4.1.17-1.fc21.x86_64.rpm
```

That takes a bit more work than using the `yum` command, as you need to know the complete filename of the installation package.

## Managing Debian Systems

The Debian GNU/Linux distribution created its own package system, and distributions based on Debian, such as Ubuntu and Mint, use the same system. Atop the basic Debian package system lies the Advanced Package Tool (APT), which provides access to network repositories.

The `dpkg` command is the lowest-level interface to the Debian package system; it's roughly equivalent to the `rpm` utility on RPM-based systems. Just like the `rpm` utility, to use the `dpkg` command you need to know the exact name of the package to install:

```
# dpkg -i samba_3.6.1-3_amd64.deb
```

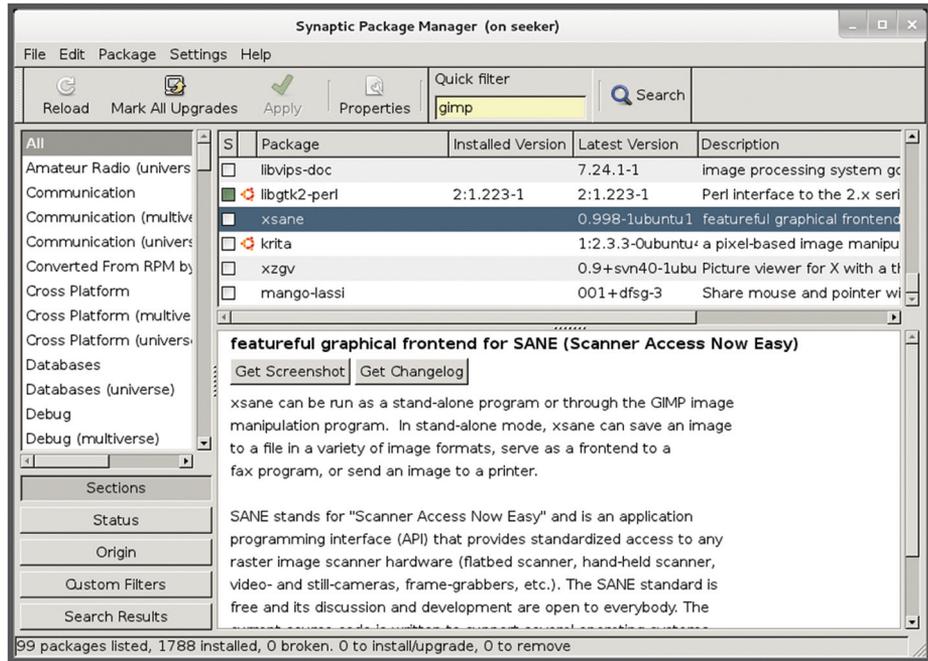


If you want to both upgrade software and remove packages, it's generally best to remove software first. This can obviate some downloads, reducing the upgrade time.

Third-party implementations of APT for many RPM-based distributions also exist. See <http://apt4rpm.sourceforge.net> for details. At least one RPM-based distribution, PCLinuxOS, uses APT natively.



Several tools provide text-mode and graphical interfaces atop `dpkg`, the most important of these being the text-mode `apt-get` and the GUI Synaptic. As their names imply, `apt-get` and Synaptic provide access to network repositories via APT. Figure 9.2 shows Synaptic in use.



**FIGURE 9.2** Synaptic enables you to search for, select, install, and uninstall software on Debian-based systems.

Debian package files have names that end in `.deb`. Like RPM packages, these names typically include codes for the software version and architecture (such as `i386` or `amd64`). For instance, `samba_3.6.1-3_amd64.deb` is a Debian package file for the Samba package, version 3.6.1, revision 3, for AMD64 (`x86-64`) CPUs. You can install such files using `dpkg` or `apt-get`, or you can use `apt-get` to download a package and its dependencies from the Internet, using its `install` command, as follows:

```
# apt-get install samba
```

As with RPM packages, you can remove packages or upgrade your computer's software, too:

```
# apt-get remove zsh
# apt-get upgrade
```

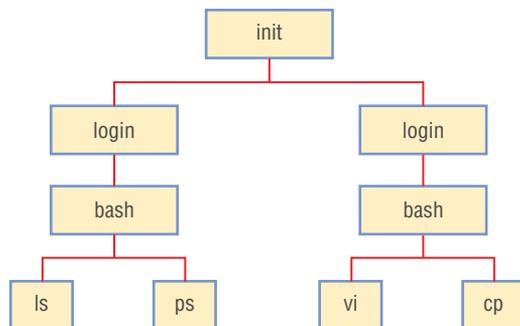
APT is a powerful tool, as is the underlying `dpkg`. You should consult these programs' `man` pages to learn more about how to use these programs.

## Understanding the Process Hierarchy

The Linux *kernel* is the core of a Linux installation. The kernel manages memory, provides software with a way to access the hard disk, doles out CPU time, and performs other critical low-level tasks. The kernel is loaded early in the boot process, and it's the kernel that's responsible for managing every other piece of software on a running Linux computer.

One of the many ways that the kernel imposes order on the potentially chaotic set of running software is to create a sort of hierarchy. When it boots, the kernel runs just one program—normally `/sbin/init`. The `init` process is then responsible for starting all the other basic programs that Linux must run, such as the programs that manage logins and always-up servers. Such programs, if launched directly by `init`, are called its *children*. The children of `init` can in turn launch their own children. This happens when you log into Linux. The process that launched a given process is called its *parent*.

The result of this system is a treelike hierarchy of processes, as illustrated in Figure 9.3. (“Trees” in computer science are often depicted upside down.) Figure 9.3 shows a small subset of the many processes that run on a typical Linux installation: just a few processes associated with a text-mode login, including the `login` tool that manages logins, a couple of `bash` shells, and a few user programs. A working Linux system will likely have dozens or hundreds of running processes. The one on which I'm typing these words has 213 processes going at once!



**FIGURE 9.3** Linux processes are arranged in a hierarchical tree.

You can change which program runs as the first process by adding the `init=` option to your boot loader's kernel option line, as in `init=/bin/bash` to run `bash`.

Certification  
Objective

Occasionally, a process will terminate but leave behind children. When this happens, `init` “adopts” those child processes.

Internally, the kernel maintains process information in the *process table*. Tools such as `ps` and `top` (described shortly) enable you to view and manipulate this table.

Every process has associated with it a process ID (PID) number. These numbers begin with 1, so `init`'s PID is normally 1. Each process also has a parent process ID (PPID) number, which points to its parent. Many of the tools for managing processes rely on these numbers, and particularly on the PID number.

## Identifying Running Processes

Before you can manage processes, you must be able to identify them. The `ps` and `top` utilities can help you identify processes. In either case, you can search for processes in various ways, such as by name or by resource use. You may also want to identify how much memory your processes are consuming, which you can do with the `free` command.

Certification Objective

### Using `ps` to Identify Processes

The simplest tool for identifying processes is `ps`, which produces a process listing. Listing 9.1 shows an example of `ps` in action. In this example, the `-u` option restricts output to processes owned by the specified user (`rich`), while `-forest` creates a display that shows parent/child relationships.

**LISTING 9.1:** Output of `ps -u rich -forest`

```
$ ps -u rich -forest
  PID TTY          TIME CMD
 2451 pts/3        00:00:00 bash
 2551 pts/3        00:00:00 ps
 2496 ?              00:00:00 kvt
 2498 pts/1        00:00:00 bash
 2505 pts/1        00:00:00  \_ nedit
 2506 ?              00:00:00    \_ csh
 2544 ?              00:00:00      \_ xeyes
19221 ?              00:00:01 dfm
```

Listing 9.2 shows a second example of `ps`. In this example, the `u` option adds informational columns, while `U rich` restricts output to processes owned by `rich`. The `ps` command supports a huge number of options (consult its `man` page for details).

**LISTING 9.2:** Output of `ps u U rich`

```
$ ps u U rich
USER      PID %CPU %MEM    VSZ   RSS TTY      STAT START   TIME
COMMAND
```

The version of `ps` used in most Linux distributions combines features from several earlier `ps` implementations. The result is a huge selection of (sometimes redundant) options.

```
rich 19221 0.0 1.5 4484 1984 ?      S   May07  0:01 dfm
rich 2451 0.0 0.8 1856 1048 pts/3   S   16:13  0:00 -bash
rich 2496 0.2 3.2 6232 4124 ?      S   16:17  0:00 /opt/kd
rich 2498 0.0 0.8 1860 1044 pts/1   S   16:17  0:00 bash
rich 2505 0.1 2.6 4784 3332 pts/1   S   16:17  0:00 nedit
rich 2506 0.0 0.7 2124 1012 ?      S   16:17  0:00 /bin/cs
rich 2544 0.0 1.0 2576 1360 ?      S   16:17  0:00 xeyes
rich 2556 0.0 0.7 2588 916 pts/3   R   16:18  0:00 ps u U
```

Given the large number of `ps` options, different users can have different favorite ways to use the program. For example, typing `ps ax` usually produces the desired information, including PID values and command names (including command-line options) for all processes on the computer. Adding `u` (as in `ps aux`) adds usernames, CPU loads, and a few other tidbits. The sheer scope of the information produced, however, can be overwhelming. One way to narrow this scope is to pipe the results through `grep`, which eliminates lines that don't include the search criterion that you specify. For instance, if you want to know the PID number for the `gedit` process, you can do so like this:

```
$ ps ax | grep gedit
27946 pts/8    Sl      0:00 gedit
27950 pts/8    S+     0:00 grep-colour=auto gedit
```

This command reveals that `gedit` has a PID value of 27946. This is usually the most important information when you use `ps`, since you'll use the PID value to change a process's priority or terminate it.

## Using *top* to Identify Processes

Although `ps` can return process priority and CPU use information, the program's output is usually sorted by PID number, and it provides information at only a single moment in time. If you want to locate CPU- or memory-hogging processes quickly, or if you want to study how resource use varies over time, `top` is a more appropriate tool. This program is essentially an interactive version of `ps`. Figure 9.4 shows `top` running in a GNOME Terminal window.

By default, `top` sorts its entries by CPU use, and it updates its display every few seconds. You'll need to be familiar with the purposes and normal habits of programs running on *your* system in order to determine if a CPU-hungry application is misbehaving; the legitimate needs of different programs vary so much that it's impossible to give a simple rule for judging when a process is consuming too much CPU time.

Because `ps ax` produces commands with their options, using `grep` to search for a string in the output returns the searched-for command, as well as the `grep` command itself.

```

rblum@localhost:~
File Edit View Search Terminal Help
top - 19:43:24 up 23 min,  2 users,  load average: 0.41, 0.42, 0.41
Tasks: 154 total,  2 running, 152 sleeping,  0 stopped,  0 zombie
%Cpu(s):  2.1 us,  0.7 sy,  0.0 ni, 95.5 id,  0.7 wa,  0.0 hi,  1.0 si,  0.0 st
KiB Mem : 2049100 total, 106752 free,  735112 used, 1207236 buff/cache
KiB Swap:  839676 total,  839512 free,   164 used, 1127648 avail Mem

  PID USER      PR  NI   VIRT   RES   SHR  S  %CPU  %MEM    TIME+  COMMAND
 1370 root        20   0 1004400 140256 19856 S   3.3   6.8   1:15.57 packagekitd
 1756 rblum       20   0 1584664 279804 74324 S   1.0  13.7   0:57.65 gnome-shell
    3 root        20   0     0     0     0 S   0.3   0.0   0:05.97 ksoftirqd/0
    7 root        20   0     0     0     0 S   0.3   0.0   0:03.49 rcu_sched
 1822 rblum       20   0  476128   9500   7032 S   0.3   0.5   0:00.31 ibus-daemon
 2403 rblum       20   0  556224  28948  21988 S   0.3   1.4   0:04.05 gnome-termi+
 3605 rblum       20   0 146476   3820   3188 R   0.3   0.2   0:00.29 top
    1 root        20   0  123308   8892   5196 S   0.0   0.4   0:02.78 systemd
    2 root        20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kthreadd
    5 root        0 -20     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kworker/0:0H
    8 root        20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 rcu_bh
    9 root        20   0     0     0     0 R   0.0   0.0   0:02.57 rcuos/0
   10 root        20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 rcuob/0
   11 root        rt    0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 migration/0
   12 root        rt    0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.16 watchdog/0
   13 root        0 -20     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 khelper
   14 root        20   0     0     0     0 S   0.0   0.0   0:00.00 kdevtmpfs

```

**FIGURE 9.4** The `top` command shows system summary information and information about the most CPU-intensive processes on a computer.

You can do more with `top` than watch it update its display. When it's running, you can enter any of several single-letter commands, some of which prompt you for additional information, as summarized in Table 9.1. Additional commands are described in `top`'s man page.

One of the pieces of information provided by `top` is the *load average*, which is a measure of the demand for CPU time by applications. In Figure 9.4, you can see three load-average estimates on the top line; these correspond to the current load average and two previous measures. Load averages can be interpreted as follows:

- ▶ A system on which no programs are demanding CPU time has a load average of 0.
- ▶ A system with one program running a CPU-intensive task has a load average of 1.
- ▶ Higher load averages on a single-CPU system reflect programs competing for available CPU time.
- ▶ On a computer with multiple CPUs or CPU cores, load averages can reach the number of CPUs or cores before competition for CPU time

Most computers sold today are multicore models, but single-core models dominated the marketplace prior to about 2006.

begins. For instance, a load average of 4.0 on a system with a four-core CPU reflects processes demanding exactly as much CPU time as the computer has available.

**TABLE 9.1** Common `top` commands

Command	Description
h or ?	These keystrokes display help information.
k	You can kill a process with this command. The <code>top</code> program will ask for a PID number, and if it's able to kill the process, it will do so.
q	This option quits from <code>top</code> .
r	You can change a process's priority with this command.
s	This command changes the display's update rate, which you'll be asked to enter (in seconds).
P	This command sets the display to sort by CPU usage, which is the default.
M	You can change the display to sort by memory usage with this command.

The load average can be useful in detecting runaway processes. For instance, if a system normally has a load average of 0.5 but suddenly gets stuck at a load average of 2.5, a couple of CPU-hogging processes may have *hung*—that is, become unresponsive. Hung processes sometimes needlessly consume a lot of CPU time. You can use `top` to locate these processes and, if necessary, stop them.

## Measuring Memory Use

Processes consume system resources, the most important of these being CPU time and memory. As already noted, `top` sorts your processes by CPU time by default, so you can identify processes that are consuming the most CPU time. You can press the M key within `top` to have it sort by memory use, thus identifying the processes that are consuming the most memory. As with CPU time, you can't say that a process is consuming too much memory simply because it's at the top of the list, though; some programs legitimately consume a great deal

◀ The `w` command, described in Chapter 13, can tell you how much CPU time entire terminal sessions are consuming.

Certification Objective

The kernel grants programs access to sets of memory addresses, which the programs can then use. When a program is done, it should release its memory back to the kernel.

of memory. Nonetheless, sometimes a program consumes too much memory, either because of inefficient coding or because of a *memory leak*—a type of program bug in which the program requests memory from the kernel and then fails to return it when it's done with the memory. A program with a memory leak consumes increasing amounts of memory, sometimes to the point where it interferes with other programs. As a short-term solution, you can usually terminate the program and launch it again, which resets the program's memory consumption, something like draining a sink that's filled with water from a leaky faucet. The problem will recur, but if the memory leak is small enough, you'll at least be able to get useful work done in the meantime.

If you want to study the computer's overall memory use, the `free` command is useful. This program generates a report on the computer's total memory status:

```
$ free
              total        used        free     shared    buffers     cached
Mem:           7914888    7734456    180432         0     190656    3244720
-/+ buffers/cache:  4299080    3615808
Swap:           6291452    1030736    5260716
```

The `Mem:` line reveals total random access memory (RAM) statistics, including the total memory in the computer (minus whatever is used by the motherboard and kernel), the amount of memory used, and the amount of free memory. This example shows that most of the computer's memory is in use. Such a state is normal, since Linux puts otherwise unused memory to use as buffers and caches, which helps speed up disk access. Thus the `Mem:` line isn't the most useful; instead, you should examine the `-/+ buffers/cache:` line, which shows the total memory used by the computer's programs. In this example, 4,299,080 KiB of 7,914,888 KiB are in use, leaving 3,615,808 KiB free. In other words, a bit over half of the computer's memory is in use by programs, so there should be no memory-related performance problems.

The `Swap:` line reveals how much *swap space* Linux is using. Swap space is disk space that's set aside as an adjunct to memory. Linux uses swap space when it runs out of RAM, or when it determines that RAM is better used for buffers or caches than to hold currently inactive programs. In this example, 1,030,736 KiB of swap space is in use, with 6,291,452 KiB total, for 5,260,716 free. Swap space use is generally quite low, and if it rises very much, you can suffer performance problems. In the long run, increasing the computer's RAM is generally the best solution to such problems. If you're suffering from performance problems because of excessive swap use and you need immediate relief, terminating some memory-hogging programs can help. Memory leaks, described earlier, can lead

to such problems, and terminating the leaking program can restore system performance to normal.

The `free` command supports several options, most of which modify its display format. The most useful of these is `-m`, which causes the display to use units of mebibytes (MiB) rather than the default of kibibytes (KiB).

## Using Log Files

Many programs that run in the background (daemons) write information about their normal operations to *log files*, which record such notes. Consulting log files can therefore be an important part of diagnosing problems with daemons. The first step in doing this is to locate your log files. In some cases, you may need to tell the program to produce more-verbose output to help track down the problem. In this section, you'll learn some pointers on how to do that. Finally, this section describes the kernel ring buffer, which isn't technically a log file but can fill a similar role for kernel information.

### Locating Log Files

Linux stores most log files in the `/var/log` directory tree. Table 9.2 summarizes some common log files on many Linux systems. In addition, many server programs not described in this book add their own log files or subdirectories of `/var/log`. If you experience problems with such a server, checking its log files can be a good place to start troubleshooting.

**TABLE 9.2** Important log files

Log file	Contents
<code>boot.log</code>	This file summarizes the services that are started late in the boot process via SysV startup scripts.
<code>cron</code>	This file summarizes processes that are run at regular intervals via the <code>cron</code> daemon. Although this book doesn't cover <code>cron</code> , a problem with it can cause glitches that recur at regular intervals, so you should be aware of it.
<code>cups/</code>	This directory holds log files related to the Linux printing system.
<code>gdm/</code>	This directory holds log files related to the GNOME Display Manager (GDM), which handles GUI logins on many systems.

(Continues)

Certification  
Objective

Log file details vary between distributions, so some of the files in Table 9.2 may not be present on your system, or the files that you find may have different names.

TABLE 9.2 (Continued)

Log file	Contents
messages or syslog	This is a general-purpose log file that contains messages from many daemons that lack their own dedicated log files.
secure	You can find security-related messages in this file, including notices of when users employ <code>su</code> , <code>sudo</code> , and similar tools to acquire root privileges.
Xorg.0.log	Information on the most recent startup of the X Window System (X) appears in this log file.

▶  
Log file rotation occurs late at night, so it won't happen if you shut off your computer. Leave it running overnight periodically to ensure that log files are rotated.

Log files are frequently *rotated*, meaning that the oldest log file is deleted, the latest log file is renamed with a date or number, and a new log file is created. For instance, if it's rotated on December 1, 2016, `/var/log/messages` will become `/var/log/messages-20161201`, `/var/log/messages-1.gz`, or something similar, and a new `/var/log/messages` will be created. This practice keeps log files from growing out of control.

Most log files are plain-text files, so you can check them using any tool that can examine text files, such as `less` or a text editor. One particularly handy command is `tail`, which displays the last 10 lines of a file (or as many lines as you specify with the `-n` option). For instance, typing `tail /var/log/messages` shows you the last 10 lines of that file.

Not all programs log messages. Typically, only daemons do so; ordinary user programs display error messages in other ways—in GUI dialog boxes or in a text-mode terminal. If you think a program should be logging data but you can't find it, consult its documentation. Alternatively, you can use `grep` to try to find the log file to which the program is sending its messages. For instance, typing `grep sshd /var/log/*` finds the files in which the string `sshd` (the SSH daemon's name) appears.

Certification  
Objective

## CREATING LOG FILES

Some programs create their own log files; however, most rely on a utility known generically as the *system log daemon* to do this job. This program's process name is generally `syslog` or `syslogd`. Like other daemons, it's started during the boot process by the system startup scripts. Several system log daemon

packages are available. Some of them provide a separate tool, `klog` or `klogd`, to handle logging messages from the kernel separately from ordinary programs.

You can modify the behavior of the log daemon, including adjusting the files to which it logs particular types of messages, by adjusting its configuration file. The name of this file depends on the specific daemon in use, but it's typically `/etc/rsyslog.conf` or something similar. The details of log file configuration are beyond the scope of this book, but you should be aware that such details can be altered. This fact accounts for much of the distribution-to-distribution variability in log file features.

Once it's running, a log daemon accepts messages from other processes by using a technique known as *system messaging*. It then sorts through the messages and directs them to a suitable log file depending on the message's source and a priority code.

## Producing More-Verbose Log File Entries

Sometimes log files don't provide enough information to pin down the source of a problem. Fortunately, many programs that produce log file output can be configured to produce more of such output. Unfortunately, doing so can sometimes make it harder to sift through all of the entries for the relevant information.

The procedure for increasing the verbosity of log file output varies from one program to another. Typically, you must set an option in the program's configuration file. You should consult the program's documentation to learn how to do this.

## Examining the Kernel Ring Buffer

The kernel ring buffer is something like a log file for the kernel; however, unlike other log files, it's stored in memory rather than in a disk file. Like regular log files, its contents continue to change as the computer runs. To examine the kernel ring buffer, you can type `dmesg`. Doing so creates copious output, though, so you'll typically pipe the output through `less`:

```
$ dmesg | less
```

Alternatively, if you know that the information you want will be associated with a particular string, you can use `grep` to search for it. For instance, to find kernel ring buffer messages about the first hard disk, `/dev/sda`, you might type the following:

```
$ dmesg | grep sda
```

Certification  
Objective

Because the kernel ring buffer has a limited size, its earliest entries can be lost if the computer runs for a long time or if something produces many entries.

Kernel ring buffer messages can be particularly arcane; however, they can also be invaluable in diagnosing hardware and driver problems, since it's the kernel's job to interface with hardware. You might try searching the kernel ring buffer if a hardware device is behaving strangely. Even if you don't understand a message that you find, you could try feeding that message into a web search engine or passing it on to a more knowledgeable colleague for advice.

Some distributions place a copy of the kernel ring buffer when the system first boots in `/var/log/dmesg` or a similar file. You can consult this file if the computer has been running for long enough for its earliest entries to be lost. If you want to create such a file on a distribution that doesn't do so by default, you can edit the `/etc/rc.d/rc.local` file and add the following line to its end:

```
dmesg > /var/log/dmesg
```

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

An operating Linux computer can be thought of as consisting of running programs, or *processes*. Managing processes begins with managing the programs that are installed on the computer, which is a task that you can perform with package management tools such as `rpm` or `dpkg`. You can learn what processes are running by using tools such as `ps` and `top`. Log files can help you learn about the actions of daemons, which may not be able to communicate error messages through the type of text-mode or GUI output that other programs can generate.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ Is your distribution's software up-to-date? Locate the option in your desktop environment's menus to run a package manager and check that the system is up-to-date. A computer running out-of-date software can be vulnerable to bugs and security threats, so keeping your software updated is important!
- ▶ Type `ps ax | less` and browse through the process list. You might not recognize many of the processes, but some should be familiar. Try using `man` or a web search to learn more about some of the processes that you don't recognize.

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Which of the following tools is best suited to installing a software package and all of its dependencies on a Debian computer?
  - A. `yum`
  - B. `zypper`

- C. dmesg
  - D. rpm
  - E. apt-get
2. What is the usual name of the first process that the Linux kernel runs, aside from itself?
    - A. init
    - B. bash
    - C. cron
    - D. login
    - E. grub
  3. Where do most log files reside on a Linux computer?
    - A. /var/log
    - B. /etc/logging
    - C. /usr/log
    - D. /home/logging
    - E. /log/usr
  4. True or false: When using suitable commands, you can install a program and be sure that all of the software on which it depends will also be installed, provided you have an Internet connection.
  5. True or false: By default, the first process listed in `top` is currently consuming the most CPU time.
  6. True or false: The `dmesg` command may produce different output after a computer has been running for weeks than when it first started.
  7. Most Linux distributions maintain information on what packages are installed in the \_\_\_\_\_. (Two words.)
  8. You're using `bash`, and you type `emacs` to launch the `emacs` editor. In this case, `emacs` is `bash`'s \_\_\_\_\_.
  9. General system messages are likely to be found in `/var/log/messages` or `/var/log/_____`, depending on your distribution.
  10. The command that you use to read messages generated during the boot process and stored in the kernel ring buffer is the \_\_\_\_\_ command.



# Editing Files

*Computer documents come in* many forms, but one of the most basic and flexible is a text file. Typically, configuration files and shell scripts are text files. Because you will often be modifying configuration files and creating shell scripts, you must be able to edit text files. This chapter covers this task with an emphasis on the simple text-mode `pico`, `nano`, and `vi` editors. A few roles played by text files are described first; then how to select a text editor is covered. To edit text files, of course, you must be able to start the editor, either on an existing document or a new one. The `pico` and `nano` editors are quite similar, so their operation is described together, followed by `vi`, which is a much more unusual editor by modern standards.

- ▶ **Understanding the role of text files**
- ▶ **Choosing an editor**
- ▶ **Launching an editor**
- ▶ **Editing files with `pico` or `nano`**
- ▶ **Editing files with `vi`**

## Understanding the Role of Text Files

▶ If a text file is encoded in ASCII, it's encoded in Unicode too. ASCII encoding is a subset of Unicode.

A text editor lets you edit documents that are stored in plain-text format. The American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) used to be the common form, but now files typically use Unicode formats to support additional characters. These formats store text documents that, by themselves, include no special formatting or embedded features. Text files can't include graphics, use multiple fonts, emphasize words by italicizing them, or use other features that you probably associate with word processors (although markup tools provide a partial exception to this rule).

## ASCII AND UNICODE

ASCII dates to the 1960s. It's a 7-bit code, meaning that it supports a maximum of  $2^7$ , or 128, characters. (In practice, ASCII uses 8 bits, so an extra 128 characters are available. These bits encode various control characters or are used in ASCII extensions.) ASCII was created to encode the letters used in English, digits, and symbols. This original intent, combined with ASCII's limited character count, makes it rather unhelpful for many non-English languages. ASCII just doesn't have enough characters to handle all the requirements of non-English languages.

Over the years, extensions to, and variants of, ASCII have been used to support additional characters and alphabets that ASCII doesn't support. One way to do this is to use a code page to specify an alphabet. Each code page specifies a variant of ASCII that's suitable for a particular alphabet. For instance, code page 866 encodes Cyrillic (the alphabet used by Russian and most other Slavic languages). The problem with code pages is that you can generally use only one at a time.

Unicode is a more modern approach. It provides a much larger character set, allowing the encoding of any alphabet in common use on Earth, including the huge logographic writing systems used in languages such as Chinese and Japanese. The problem is that Unicode requires many more bits, and several ways to encode it efficiently exist. Fortunately, these Unicode Transformation Format (UTF) schemes are limited in number compared to code pages. Some, such as UTF-8, map the first characters in the same way as ASCII, so an ASCII file is also a valid UTF-8 file. Many text editors today handle UTF-8 (or other Unicode formats) automatically, so you can use a text editor to write text files in any language that you like. You may still need to set localization options to tell Linux what sort of keyboard you use and what code page to use by default for programs that still rely on code pages.

Text files encode the ends of lines by using one or two special ASCII characters. End-of-line encoding differs between Unix (or Linux) and Windows, but most programs can handle either method.



Formatted text files encode special formatting using unique character sequences. Although you can edit such files with a text editor, specialized editors also exist for many of these file types.



Text files consist of lines that can vary in length from 0 characters to the file's entire size and that can hold any number of data types. You might want to create or edit some of these as an ordinary user, while others are important for administering a Linux system. The main file types include the following:

- ▶ Human language files
- ▶ Programming language files
- ▶ Formatted text files
- ▶ Program and system configuration files
- ▶ Program log files

Some files contain elements of multiple categories. Email, for instance, can be stored in text files. An email file consists largely of human language, but email

messages include headers, which describe the origin and destination computers, along with information on how the message traveled from one site to the other, which is similar to formatted text or log file data.

## Choosing an Editor

All Linux distributions ship with many text editors. Broadly speaking, text editors fall into one of two categories: text-mode and GUI. Beginners are generally more comfortable with GUI editors, which can be more convenient to use even for experts. But when a GUI is not available, you may have to use a text-mode editor. Thus it is recommended that you familiarize yourself with at least one text-mode editor. Some popular text-mode editors include the following:

**vi** This editor is a Unix staple. It's small and usually installed by default, so you can be fairly certain that it's present on any Linux computer. It is, however, strange by modern standards—it uses multiple *editing modes*, and you must switch between them to accomplish various tasks. Many longtime Unix and Linux administrators like `vi` for its flexibility, power, and small size.

**emacs** This editor is another Unix staple. It's a big editor with lots of features, so it's less likely to be installed by default, particularly on small, lightweight distributions. Its operating model is more like those of the text editors with which novices are familiar, but its commands can seem rather odd.

**pico** Several small editors are modeled after `emacs`, but they omit many of its advanced features in an effort to simplify the editor. One of these editors is `pico`, which originated as part of the `pine` email package.

**nano** This editor is a clone of `pico` that adds extra features. Even with the additional features, `nano` is small, lightweight, and easy to use.

The `nano` editor is probably the best place to start, because of its ease of use. If `nano` is not already installed, it's typically available in most distributions' software repositories. (If you don't find `nano` installed on your distribution, see Chapter 9, "Exploring Processes and Process Data," for help installing the `nano` package.) For the most part, `pico` works just like `nano`, but because `nano` adds to `pico`'s features, `nano` is a more capable editor. Figure 10.1 shows `nano` in operation within a text-mode login session, editing a file called `pets.txt`.

As with text-mode editors, several GUI editors are available, including the following:

**emacs** This editor is both a text-mode editor and a GUI editor. The GUI features of `emacs`, however, are sometimes a bit odd; for instance, the scroll bar to move through the file appears on the left side of the window rather than on the more common right side.

### Certification Objective

Most Linux distributions use a version of `vi` called "vi improved," or `vim`; you can typically still launch it by typing `vi`.

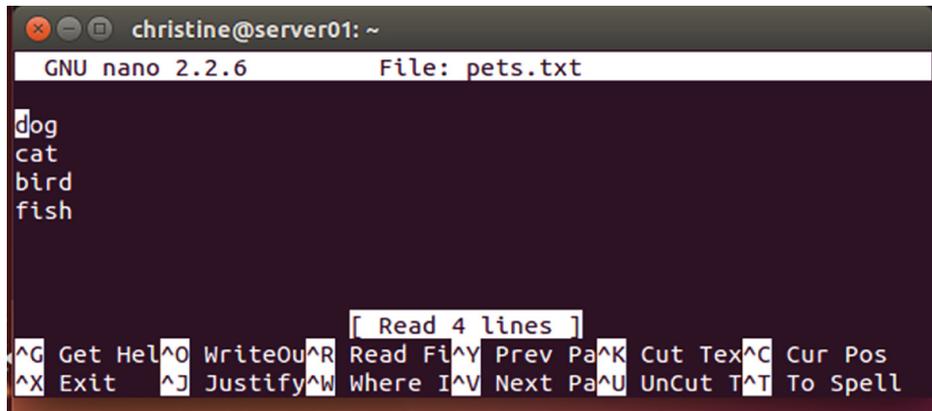


Bash's text-editing commands are modeled on those of `emacs`, so learning `emacs` can improve your ability to work in the Bash shell.

### Certification Objective



Some distributions provide `pico` and some don't. Some of those that don't provide `pico` cause `nano` to launch when you use the `pico` command.



**FIGURE 10.1** The nano editor enables you to edit a text file in text mode.

**gedit** The GNOME desktop environment has an associated text editor known as `gedit`. It's a fairly typical text editor, and it's often installed by default.

**KWrite and Kate** Just as `gedit` is associated with GNOME, KWrite and Kate are editors that are associated with the K Desktop Environment (KDE). KWrite is slightly more sophisticated than `gedit`, and Kate adds some more features, but neither is nearly as powerful as `emacs`.

**Geany** This editor is not tied to any particular desktop environment, and it's small, lightweight, and rather powerful. It also runs under other OSs besides Linux, such as Windows, which is handy if you want to use one editor for multiple platforms.

For a new Linux user, any of these is a good starting GUI editor; all offer the basic features that you need for light text-file editing. Your choice may depend on which is installed by default on your system. In the long term, you should probably try a variety of editors to find the one that you like best.

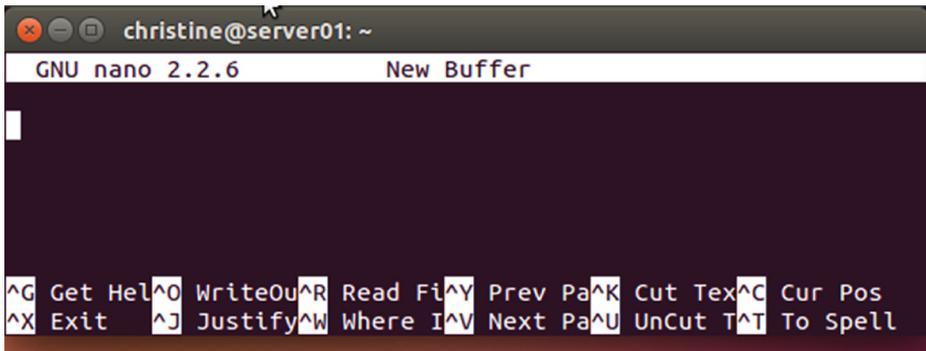
## Launching an Editor

If you're comfortable with a GUI desktop environment, you can launch a GUI text editor by using the desktop environment's menu system or by using a file manager to browse to a file that you want to edit and double-clicking that file. This approach works well for files that you own, but if you need to edit system files, you're likely to lack permissions to save changes if you launch a text editor in this way.

Another approach is to launch the text editor from the command line. You can do this as a normal user, using your default privileges to edit text files you own. To edit system files, you'll need to use superuser privileges. You can also select the editor that you want to use—you just need to know its filename, which you type to launch the editor:

```
$ nano
```

This example launches nano. When it opens, you'll see a display similar to the one shown in Figure 10.1, but the bulk of the window or text-mode console will be empty, since you didn't specify a filename. Instead, as shown in Figure 10.2, the center of the top line will read `New Buffer`. You can begin typing in the desired text. When you save the file, as described later in "Saving Your Changes from nano," nano will ask for a filename.



**FIGURE 10.2** The nano editor launched with no filename provided

Alternatively, you can provide a filename when you launch the text editor as follows:

```
$ nano great_american_novel.txt
```

This example opens the `great_american_novel.txt` file and displays it. If the file doesn't exist, nano displays `New File` near the bottom of the display, where `Read 4 lines` appears in Figure 10.1. If you see `Warning: no write permission` in the third line from the bottom, you've loaded a file that you have no permission to change. You'll need to run nano using superuser privileges or modify file permissions, as described in Chapter 14, "Setting Ownership and Permissions," if you want to save the file's modified contents.

◀ Chapter 12, "Understanding Basic Security," describes how to obtain super-user privileges needed to edit system text files.

◀ If you mistype the filename, nano will show an empty file. Thus if you see an empty file instead of the file that you were expecting to see, you may have mistyped the filename.

## Editing Files with *pico* or *nano*

If you're familiar with text-mode text editors, you should have few problems learning *pico* or *nano*. If you've used only GUI editors to edit text, you'll have to learn a few keyboard conventions. You must move about the document by using the keyboard rather than the mouse, for instance. You can insert, replace, and delete text much as you do in a GUI text editor or word processor.

### Using Text Editor Conventions

Every text editor has its own conventions for displaying information on the screen, manipulating text, and so on. Most text-mode text editors are similar up to a point—for instance, one or more lines at the top or bottom of the display typically show summary information or brief command prompts. Figure 10.1 and Figure 10.2 show this information for *nano*, which includes the following:

In *nano* documentation, a caret (^) preceding a letter refers to a control character. In this book, such key combinations are indicated with Ctrl+ rather than a caret.

**The Title Bar** The first line of the display is the title bar. This line includes *nano*'s version number, the name of the file being edited, and the modification status.

**The Status Bar** The third line from the bottom of the display is reserved for status information and interactions with the user. This line will prompt you for information such as a filename to write when you save your document or terms that you want to find in the document when you perform a search operation.

**The Shortcut List** The bottom two lines of the editor show a summary of some of the most common operations, along with the keystrokes that trigger them.

In addition to control characters, *nano* uses *metacharacters* to activate some functions. These key combinations use either the Esc, Alt, or Meta key (depending on your keyboard's configuration) followed by another key. In *nano*'s documentation, meta sequences are denoted by M-*k*, where *k* is a key. For instance, M-? is the key sequence to move to the last line of the document. Note that these are distinct keystrokes, unlike Ctrl key sequences; that is, you would press Esc (or Alt or Meta), release it, and *then* press the question mark (?) key, including its Shift modifier, to move to the last line of the document.

Typically, modern keyboards do not have a Meta key (consult your keyboard manufacturer's documentation). As a substitute, first try using the Esc key in place of the Meta key for meta key sequences in *nano*. If that does not work, try the Alt key as the Meta key.

### Exploring Basic *nano* Text-Editing Procedures

To learn *nano*, consider the tasks of creating and editing `pets.txt`, as shown in Figure 10.1. You can easily follow along on your system using this example. First the file will be populated with pet types, as shown in Listing 10.1. After the file's data has been saved to disk, a new pet type will be added using the text editor.

**LISTING 10.1:** Sample `pets.txt` file

```
dog
cat
bird
fish
```

For this example, the first step to using `nano` is to launch it and have it create a blank empty file called `pets.txt` as follows:

1. Open a terminal program, and in your home directory, type **`nano pets.txt`** and press the Enter key. You should see the words `File: pets.txt` displayed at the center of the title bar as well as the words `New File` listed in the status bar's center. This indicates that you have created an empty new file called `pets.txt`.
2. Type **`dog`** and press Enter to add the first pet type to the file. Continue with the pet types from Listing 10.1 until you have added all four pet types.

At this point, your result should resemble Figure 10.1 (shown earlier), which illustrates `nano` editing the `pets.txt` file. You can add a new entry to `pets.txt` in a couple of ways. The first way is to create a new empty line and type an entry manually. You can do this as follows:

1. Press the arrow keys as needed to move the cursor over the `f` in `fish`.
2. Press the Enter key. This action opens a new line between the `bird` line and the `fish` line.
3. Press the up-arrow key once to reposition the cursor on the empty new line.
4. Type **`reptile`**, and do *not* press the Enter key.

A second way of creating a new entry demonstrates how to copy, cut, and paste text in the editor:

1. Move the cursor to the beginning of the `reptile` line that you've just created by using the arrow keys; you should see the cursor resting on the `r` in `reptile`.
2. Press M-6. (The second keystroke is the digit 6, not the letter `g`, and remember that the Meta key may be the Esc or the Alt key, depending on your keyboard's configuration.) It may not look like anything

◀ If `nano` is not installed on your system, you can use the information from Chapter 9 to install the `nano` package.

For metacharacter keystrokes, you press Esc (or Alt or Meta), release it, and *then* press the next key. Do *not* press and hold the keystrokes as you would do for Ctrl key sequences.

◀

Alternatively, Ctrl+K cuts text, meaning that it's removed from the file and copied to the buffer. This is useful for moving lines to a new location in the file.

To save the new `pets.txt` file that you created with nano, read the upcoming section, "Saving Your Changes from nano."

happened, but this keystroke copies the line on which the cursor resides into a buffer. Your cursor should now be resting on the `f` on the `fish` line.

3. Press Ctrl+U. This keystroke pastes the contents of the buffer into the file in the current location. You should see that the `reptile` pet type is shown on two lines.
4. Use the arrow keys to move the cursor to the beginning of the second `reptile` line that you've just created; you should see the cursor resting on the `r` in `reptile`.
5. Press Ctrl+K to cut the entire second `reptile` line. The cursor should be at the start of the `fish` line.
6. Press Ctrl+N to go to the next line in the file. Your cursor should be below the `fish` line.
7. Type **rodent** to complete the addition of another pet type.

You can make additional changes in a similar way. Although nano lacks a GUI version, most of its principles are the same as the ones in GUI text editors and word processors; you just need to know the keystroke to activate the feature that you want.

Pressing Ctrl+G displays the nano help documentation, which summarizes the program's features. This can be handy as you get to know the editor. Some additional features that you might want to use include the following:

**Move to the Start or End of the File** You can use the arrow keys, Page Up, Page Down, Home, and End to move the cursor around in ways that are common to other editors. To move to the start of the file, press M-; and to move to the end of the file, press M-/\_.

**Copy or Move Multiple Lines** If you need to copy or move multiple consecutive lines, you can repeat the M-6 or Ctrl+K operation; nano retains all of the lines that you copy or cut, so that when you press Ctrl+U, all of them will be pasted back.

**Insert a File** Pressing Ctrl+R or F5 enables you to insert another file into the current one at the cursor's current position.

**Search for a String** Pressing Ctrl+W or F6 activates a search feature. When activated, nano prompts you for a search term. Type it, followed by the Enter key, and nano finds the next instance of that search term in the file. When you press Ctrl+W or F6 again, the default search term is the last one used, so you can

search repeatedly for the same term by pressing Ctrl+W or F6 followed by Enter for each search operation. Alternatively, M-W repeats the last search.

**Replace a String** You can replace one string with another by pressing Ctrl+\ or M-R. The program prompts you to enter a search term and the term to take its place. The search then commences, and nano asks you to verify each replacement. If you want to replace *all* of the occurrences without prompting, you can press the A key at the first prompt.

## Saving Your Changes from *nano*

Once you've made changes to a text file, of course, you probably want to save them. One way to do this is with the Ctrl+O option. (That's the letter O, not the number 0.) When you press this key, nano asks the following:

```
Write Selection to File:
```

Ordinarily, the prompt will include the file's original name, so you can press the Enter key to save the file using that name. If you want to use a different name, you can delete the old one and type a new name. If you launched nano without specifying a filename, you can type one at this prompt.

Another way to save the file is to press Ctrl+X. This command exits from nano, but if you've modified the file, it produces the following prompt:

```
Save modified buffer (ANSWERING "No" WILL DESTROY CHANGES) ?
```

Type **y** at this prompt to save the file. The program then shows you the filename prompt that you'd have seen if you'd pressed Ctrl+O, so you can change the filename if you like. Once nano saves the file, it terminates.

If you were following along on your system, creating and editing the `pets.txt` file from earlier in this chapter, here are the steps that you need to follow to save your changes and exit the nano text editor:

1. Assuming you are still in the nano text editor with the `pets.txt` file displayed, press Ctrl+O to start the process of saving the file.
2. The status bar should show the words `File Name to Write: pets.txt`. Press Enter to save the file. You should see something similar to `Wrote 6 lines` on the status bar.
3. Press Ctrl+X to exit the nano text editor and return to the command-line prompt.

To gain more experience, try editing the `pets.txt` file again with nano, making various changes and trying out the different editing commands. Be sure

to peruse the help feature as well, using Ctrl+G to access it and Ctrl+X to exit from the help documentation.

Certification  
Objective

## Editing Files with *vi*

*vi* was the first full-screen text editor written for Unix. It was designed to be small enough to fit on the old-fashioned, tiny, floppy-based emergency boot systems. When the GNU Project developed an open source replacement for the *vi* editor, they added several improvements to it and called it “*vi* improved,” or *vim*. Even though most Linux distributions ship with *vim*, it is still often referred to as the *vi* editor. *vim* is upward compatible with the *vi* editor, and the command to launch *vim* is typically *vi*—though some distributions have a *vim* command instead. The information presented in this chapter applies to both *vi* and *vim*.

Although the *vi* editor is useful for editing configuration files, it really shines in editing program files, such as shell scripts. Thus you will benefit from learning the *vi* editor, though it is considered by many to be the most complicated text editor to use.

## Understanding *vi* Modes

To use *vi*, you should first understand the modes in which it operates. Then you can begin to learn about the text-editing procedures that *vi* implements. At any given moment, *vi* is running in one of three modes:

**Command Mode** This mode accepts commands, which are usually entered as single letters. For instance, *i* and *a* both enter insert mode, although in somewhat different ways, as described shortly, and *o* opens a line below the current one.

**Ex Mode** To manipulate files (including saving your current file and running outside programs), you use *ex* mode. You enter *ex* mode from command mode by typing a colon (:), typically directly followed by the name of the *ex* mode command that you want to use. After you run the *ex* mode command, *vi* returns automatically to command mode.

**Insert Mode** You enter text in insert mode. Most keystrokes result in text appearing on the screen. One important exception is the Esc key, which exits insert mode and returns to command mode.

Unfortunately, terminology surrounding *vi* modes is inconsistent at best. For instance, command mode is sometimes referred to as *normal mode*, and insert mode is sometimes called *edit mode* or *entry mode*. *Ex* mode often isn't described as a mode at all, but is referred to as *colon commands*.

## CHECKING YOUR *vi/vim* EDITOR PACKAGE

Your Linux system may not have the full *vi/vim* editor package installed by default. For example, your distribution may come only with the *vim.tiny* or *vim.minimal* package installed. With these packages, you can still access a form of the *vi* editor, though you may not have full access to the editor's various features, including some of those described in this chapter. If you wish to learn and properly use the *vi* editor, it is recommended that you have the full *vim* package installed.

To check your system, enter **type vi** at the command line. You should receive the program name (*vi* or *vim*), including its directory location, similar to what is shown here:

```
$ type vi
vi is hashed (/usr/bin/vi)
```

Once you have the program name and its location, type **readlink -f /location/program** to determine whether the program is linked to another program. (Linked files are covered in Chapter 7, "Managing Files.") You may receive something similar to the following:

```
$ readlink -f /usr/bin/vi
/usr/bin/vim.tiny
```

Next, you still need to check the software package that provided the program. (In some cases, the program name does *not* indicate which software package provided it.) Use the appropriate software package tool to determine this required information. The example here is on an Ubuntu distribution, so the `dpkg -S` command is used along with superuser privileges (obtaining superuser privileges is covered in more detail in Chapter 12.)

```
$ sudo dpkg -S /usr/bin/vim.tiny
[sudo] password for christine:
vim-tiny: /usr/bin/vim.tiny
```

You can see that in this case the *vim.tiny* package is installed. If you find that the *vim* or *vim.basic* package is installed, you should have no problems using the *vi* editor commands in this chapter. However, if you do not find either of these packages installed, as in the preceding example, you'll want to install the *vim* package in order to follow along with the rest of this chapter. For the preceding example on the Ubuntu distribution, you would enter **sudo apt-get install vim** to install the full *vim* package. (Installing packages is covered in Chapter 9.)

You can now begin to learn about the text-editing procedures that `vi` implements. You'll also examine how to save files and exit `vi`.

## Exploring Basic `vi` Text-Editing Procedures

As a method for learning `vi`, consider the task of creating and editing the `pets.txt` file—the same task described earlier in “Exploring Basic nano Text-Editing Procedures.” Listing 10.1 (in that earlier section) shows the `pets.txt` file to be created in this example.

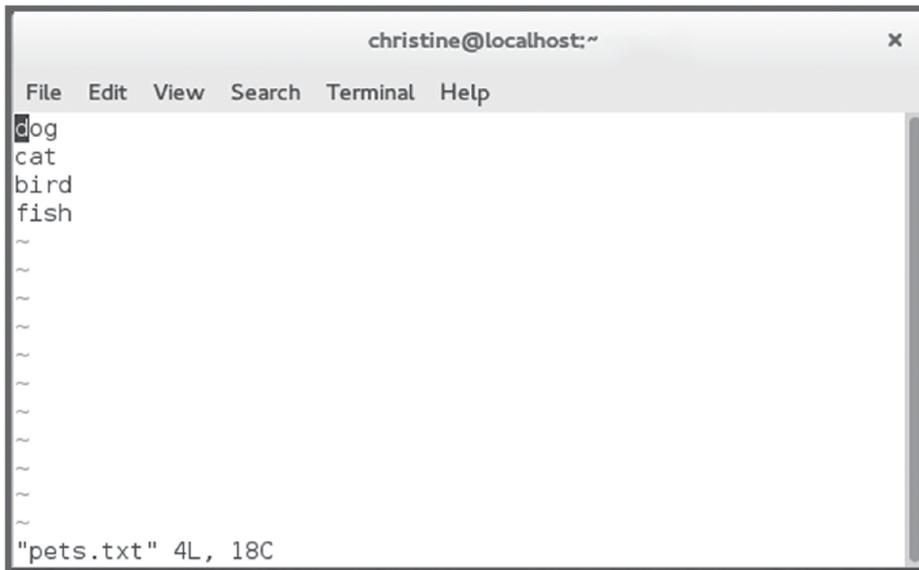
For this example, the first step to using `vi` is to launch it and have it create a blank file called `pets.txt` as follows:

If you created the `pets.txt` file earlier and want to follow along in this section, delete the file first by typing `rm pets.txt` and pressing Enter.

1. Open a terminal program and, in your home directory, type `vi pets.txt` and press Enter. You should see the words "pets.txt" [New File] displayed on the message line at the bottom of the window. This indicates that you have created a new empty file called `pets.txt`.
2. You are in command mode. Press the `I` key to enter insert mode. This mode should be indicated on the message line by the word `--INSERT--` at the bottom of the window.
3. Type `dog` and press Enter to add the first pet type to the file. Continue with the pet types from Listing 10.1 until you have added all four pet types.
4. Press `Esc` to exit insert mode. Notice that the message `--INSERT--` is no longer displayed in the message line. The `vi` editor is now in command mode.
5. Type `:wq` to enter ex mode, and finish the command by typing `wq` and pressing Enter. This writes (`w`) the `vi` buffer contents to the `pets.txt` file, quits (`q`) the `vi` editor, and returns you to the command line.
6. Reopen the `pets.txt` file in the `vi` editor by typing `vi pets.txt` and pressing Enter.

It may be tempting to try word processor shortcut keys in a text editor, such as `Ctrl+S` to save the file. This is not a wise practice, as this keystroke combination may cause your terminal to freeze. If you have done this, you can unfreeze your terminal by pressing `Ctrl+Q`.

Your result should resemble Figure 10.3, which shows `vi` displaying the `pets.txt` file in command mode. As shown in Figure 10.3, some systems display a line of tildes (`~`) down the left side of the screen to indicate the end of the file. The file in Figure 10.3 was newly loaded, and therefore the bottom line shows the status of the last command—an implicit file-load command that loaded 4 lines and 18 characters (`4L, 18C`) from the `pets.txt` file.



**FIGURE 10.3** The last line of a *vi* display is a status line that shows messages from the program.

As with *nano*, you can add a new entry to `pets.txt` by using *vi*, either by typing it in its entirety or by duplicating an existing line and then modifying the duplicated line. To do it the first way, follow these steps:

1. Move the cursor to the beginning of the `bird` line by using the arrow keys.
2. Press the `O` key (letter `O`, not number `0`). This opens a new line immediately below the current line, moves the cursor to that line, and enters insert mode.
3. Type in a new entry: **reptile**.
4. Press the `Esc` key to return from insert mode to command mode.

To practice making changes by modifying an existing entry, follow these steps:

1. Move the cursor to the beginning of the `reptile` line that you just created by using the arrow keys if necessary. You should see the cursor resting on the `r` of `reptile`.
2. You will now copy (yank) one line of text. The term *yank* is used much as *copy* is used in most text editors—you copy the text to a buffer from which you can later paste it back into the file. To yank

If you want to paste the text into the document starting on the line *before* the cursor, use an uppercase P command.



Both yy and dd are special cases of the y and d commands, respectively, which yank or delete text in amounts specified by the next character, as in dw to delete the next word.



If you need to change a text file's end-of-line encoding from the Windows method to the Unix/Linux method, open the file in the vi editor and type the command :set ff=unix.



text, you use the yy command preceded by the number of lines you want to yank. Therefore, type **1yy** (*do not* press the Enter key, though). It doesn't look like anything happened, but this keystroke copies the line on which the cursor resides into a buffer.

3. Move the cursor to the `bird` line, which is the line *before* the one where you want the new line to appear.
4. Type **p** (again, without pressing the Enter key). vi pastes the contents of the buffer (`reptile`) starting on the line after the cursor. The file should now have two identical `reptile` lines. The cursor should be resting at the start of the first one.
5. Move the cursor to the `r` in the word `reptile` on the line that you've just pasted, if it's not there already. You're about to delete this line.
6. The `dd` command works much like `yy`, but it deletes the lines as well as copying them to a buffer. Type **dd** to delete the `reptile` line. The file should now have only one `reptile` line.
7. Save the file and quit by typing **ZZ**. This command is equivalent to `:wq`.

Many additional commands are available that you may want to use in some situations. Here are some of the highlights:

**Change Case** Suppose that you need to change the case of a word in a file. Instead of entering insert mode and retyping the word, you can use the tilde (~) key in command mode to change the case. Position the cursor on the first character that you want to change, and press ~ repeatedly until the task is done.

**Undo** To undo any change, type `u` in command mode.

**Open Text** In command mode, typing `o` (a lowercase letter O) opens text—that is, it inserts a new line immediately below the current one and enters insert mode on that line.

**Search** To search forward for text in a file, type `/` in command mode, followed immediately by the text that you want to locate. Typing `?` searches backward rather than forward.

**Change Text** The `c` command changes text from within command mode. You invoke it much like the `d` or `y` command, as in `cw` to change the next word or `cc` to change an entire line.

**Go to a Line** The `G` key brings you to a line that you specify. The `H` key *homes* the cursor—that is, it moves the cursor to the top line of the screen. The `L` key brings the key to the bottom line of the screen.

**Replace Globally** To replace all occurrences of one string with another, type `:%s/original/replacement/g`, where *original* is the original string and replacement is its replacement. Change % to a starting line number, comma, and ending line number to perform this change on a small range of lines.

`vi` offers a great deal more depth than is presented here; the editor is quite capable, and some Linux users are very attached to it. Entire books have been written about `vi`. Consult one of these, or a `vi` web page such as [www.vim.org](http://www.vim.org), for more information.

## Saving Your Changes from `vi`

To save changes to a file without exiting the editor, type `:w` in command mode. This enters ex mode and runs the `w` ex-mode command, which writes the file using whatever filename you specified when you launched `vi`. Related commands enable other functions:

**Edit a New File** The `:e` command edits a new file. For instance, `:e /etc/inittab` loads `/etc/inittab` for editing. `vi` won't load a new file unless the existing one has been saved since its last change or unless you follow `:e` with an exclamation mark (!).

**Include an Existing File** The `:r` command includes the contents of an old file in an existing one.

**Execute an External Command** The ex mode command `:!` executes the external command that you specify. For instance, typing `:!ls` runs `ls`, enabling you to see what files are present in the current directory.

**Quit** Use the `:q` command to quit the program. As with `:e`, this command won't work unless changes have been saved or you append an exclamation mark to the command (as in `:q!`).

You can combine ex commands such as these to perform multiple actions in sequence. For instance, as shown previously, typing `:wq` writes changes and then quits from `vi`.

◀ The `/g` at the command's end is not needed if *original* is listed only one time in each file's line.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Plain-text files, which encode text using ASCII or Unicode, are important on most computer platforms, but they're particularly important on Linux. This is because many of Linux's configuration files use plain-text formats, so understanding how to use an editor, such as `pico`, `nano`, or `vi` to edit these files enables you to edit a wide variety of configuration files. In addition, to

(Continues)

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)*

be able to create shell scripts on Linux, you need to be able to handle at least one text editor. Basic text-editing skills are required, but the more you know about moving around, searching, and modifying a text file, the quicker you can complete needed tasks.

**SUGGESTED EXERCISES**

- ▶ Launch `nano` to create a new file, and type in a complete paragraph from this chapter. Proofread the text and correct any typos that you find. (If you do not find any, congratulations! Now create a few “errors” and correct them.)
- ▶ Launch `vi` to create a new file. Type in this chapter’s review questions and include the answers. Try out the various editing features, such as changing case and searching for text.

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

1. For which type of file is `nano` *least* likely to be useful for examining or editing?
  - A. A text file encoded in Unicode
  - B. A shell script file
  - C. A text file encoded in ASCII
  - D. A LibreOffice word processing document
  - E. A Linux configuration file
2. Which keystrokes invoke the `pico` or `nano` search function? (Select all that apply.)
  - A. F3
  - B. F6
  - C. Esc-S
  - D. Ctrl+F
  - E. Ctrl+W
3. How would you remove two lines of text from a file when using `vi`?
  - A. In command mode, position the cursor on the first line and type `2dd`.
  - B. In command mode, position the cursor on the last line and type `2yy`.
  - C. In insert mode, position the cursor at the start of the first line, hold down the Shift key while pressing the down-arrow key twice, and press the Delete key on the keyboard.
  - D. In insert mode, position the cursor at the start of the first line and press Ctrl+K twice.
  - E. Select the text with the mouse, and then select File > Delete from the menu.

4. True or false: Unicode is useful for encoding most European languages but not Asian languages.
5. True or false: GUI text editors for ASCII are superior to text-mode ASCII text editors because the GUI editors support underlining, italics, and multiple fonts.
6. True or false: If you have never used a text editor before, the nano text editor is usually the best one to learn first.
7. ASCII supports \_\_\_\_\_ unique characters (not including control characters).
8. Three keystrokes that can initiate a search-and-replace operation in nano are F14, \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_.
9. While in vi's command mode, you can type \_\_\_\_\_ to undo a change.
10. To save a file and exit the vi text editor in command mode, type \_\_\_\_\_.



## Creating Scripts

*A script is a* program written in an interpreted language, typically associated with a shell or a compiled program. In Linux, many scripts are *shell scripts*, which are associated with Bash or another shell. (If you're familiar with *batch files* in Windows, scripts serve a similar purpose.) You can write shell scripts to help automate tedious, repetitive tasks or to perform new and complex tasks. Scripts perform many of Linux's startup functions, so mastering scripting will help you manage the startup process.

This chapter covers Bash shell scripts, beginning with the task of creating a new script file. We then describe several important scripting features that help you to perform progressively more complex scripting tasks.

- ▶ **Beginning a shell script**
- ▶ **Using commands**
- ▶ **Using arguments**
- ▶ **Using variables**
- ▶ **Using conditional expressions**
- ▶ **Using loops**
- ▶ **Using functions**
- ▶ **Setting the script's exit value**

---

### LEARNING MORE

Like any programming task, shell scripting can be quite complex. Consequently, this chapter barely scratches the surface of what you can accomplish through shell scripting. Consult a book on the topic, such as our *Linux Command Line and Shell Scripting Bible, Third Edition* by Richard Blum and Christine Bresnahan (Wiley, 2015), for more information.

---

## Beginning a Shell Script

Certification  
Objective

Shell scripts are plain-text files, so you create them in text editors such as `vi`, `nano`, or `pico`, as described in Chapter 10, “Editing Files.” A shell script begins with a line that identifies the shell that’s used to run it, such as the following:

```
#!/bin/bash
```

Certification  
Objective

The first two characters are a special code that tells the Linux kernel that this is a script and to use the rest of the line as a pathname to the program that’s to interpret the script. (This line is sometimes called the *shebang*, *hashbang*, *hashpling*, or *pound bang* line.) Shell scripting languages use a hash mark (#) as a comment character, so the script utility ignores this line, although the kernel doesn’t. On most systems, `/bin/sh` is a symbolic link that points to `/bin/bash`, but it can point to another shell. Specifying the script as using `/bin/sh` guarantees that any Linux system will have a shell program to run the script. However, if the script uses any features specific to a particular shell, you should specify that shell instead—for instance, use `/bin/bash` or `/bin/tcsh` instead of `/bin/sh`. This chapter describes Bash shell scripts. Simple Bash scripts can run in other shells, but more-complex scripts are more likely to be shell-specific.

When you’re done writing the shell script, you should modify it so that it’s executable. You do this with the `chmod` command, which is described in more detail in Chapter 14, “Setting Ownership and Permissions.” For now, know that you use the `a+x` option to add execute permissions for all users. For instance, to make a file called `my-script` executable, you should issue the following command:

```
$ chmod a+x my-script
```

You’ll then be able to execute the script by typing its name, possibly preceded by `./` to tell Linux to run the script in the current directory rather than searching the current path. If you fail to make the script executable, you can still run the script by running the shell program followed by the script name (as in **bash my-script**), but it’s generally better to make the script executable. If the script is one you run regularly, you may want to move it to a location on your path, such as `/usr/local/bin`. When you do that, you won’t have to type the complete path or move to the script’s directory to execute it; you can just type **my-script**.

## Using Commands

One of the most basic features of shell scripts is the ability to run commands. You can use both commands that are built into the shell and external commands—that is, you can run other programs as commands. Most of the

As you start building more-complex shell scripts, you’ll want to have a good text editor program available. If you’re using a graphical desktop, that’s usually not a problem—the KWrite and GNOME `gedit` editors are excellent for creating text shell scripts. However, if you’re working from a command line, things could get interesting. The `vi` editor is the oldest one but is notoriously clunky to use. Newer editors, such as `pico` and `nano`, provide window-like features from a command-line environment.

commands that you type in a shell prompt are external commands; they're programs located in `/bin`, `/usr/bin`, and other directories on your path. You can run such programs, as well as internal commands, by including their names in the script. You can also specify parameters to such programs in a script. For instance, suppose that you want a script that launches two `xterm` windows and the KMail mail reader program. Listing 11.1 presents a shell script that accomplishes this goal.

**LISTING 11.1:** A simple script that launches three programs

```
#!/bin/bash
/usr/bin/xterm &
/usr/bin/xterm &
/usr/bin/kmail &
```

Aside from the first line that identifies it as a script, the script looks just like the commands that you might type to accomplish the task manually, except for one fact: the script lists the complete paths to each program. This is usually not strictly necessary, but listing the complete path ensures that the script will find the programs even if the `PATH` environment variable changes. On the other hand, if the program files move (say, because you upgrade the package from which they're installed and the packager decides to move them), scripts that use complete paths will break. If a script produces a `No such file or directory` error for a command, typing **which command**, where `command` is the offending command, should help you locate it.

Each program-launch line in Listing 11.1 ends in an ampersand (&). This character tells the shell to go on to the next line without waiting for the first to finish. If you omit the ampersands in Listing 11.1, the first `xterm` will open but the second won't open until the first is closed. Likewise, KMail won't start until the second `xterm` terminates.

Although launching several programs from one script can save time in startup scripts and some other situations, scripts are also frequently used to run a series of programs that manipulate data in some way. Such scripts typically do *not* include the ampersands at the ends of the commands because one command must run after another or may even rely on output from the first. A comprehensive list of such commands is impossible because you can run any program that you can install in Linux as a command in a script—even another script. A few commands that are commonly used in scripts include the following:

**Normal File-Manipulation Commands** The file manipulation commands, such as `ls`, `mv`, `cp`, and `rm`, are often used in scripts. You can use these commands to help automate repetitive file maintenance tasks.

Fedora is undertaking a project to standardize Linux distributions to eliminate the `/bin` folder. Currently in Fedora 21, all of the programs in the `/bin` folder are linked to the `/usr/bin` folder, but eventually all programs will be moved to the `/usr/bin` folder.

**grep** This command is described in Chapter 8, “Searching, Extracting, and Archiving Data.” It locates files that contain the string you specify, or displays the lines that contain those strings in a single file.

**find** Whereas `grep` searches for patterns within the contents of files, `find` does so based on filenames, ownership, and similar characteristics. Chapter 8 covers this command.

**cut** This command extracts text from fields in a file. It’s frequently used to extract variable information from a file whose contents are in a pattern. To use it, you pass it one or more options that specify what information you want, followed by one or more filenames. For instance, users’ home directories appear in the sixth colon-delimited field of the `/etc/passwd` file. You can therefore type `cut -f 6 -d ":" /etc/passwd` to extract this information. The same command in a script will extract this information, which you’ll probably save to a variable or pass to a subsequent command.

**sed** This program provides many of the capabilities of a conventional text editor (such as search-and-replace operations) but via commands that can be typed at a command prompt or entered in a script.



**echo** Sometimes a script must provide a message to the user; `echo` is the tool to accomplish this goal. You can pass various options to `echo` or just a string to be shown to the user. For instance, `echo "Press the Enter key"` causes a script to display the specified string. You can also use `echo` to display the value of variables (described later, in “Using Variables”).

**mail** The `mail` command can be used to send email from within a script. Pass it the `-s subject` parameter to specify a subject line, and give it an email address as the last argument. If it’s used at the command line, you type a message and terminate it with a Ctrl+D keystroke. If it’s used from a script, you might omit the subject entirely or pass it an external file as the message, using input redirection. You might want to use this command to send mail to the superuser about the actions of a startup script or a script that runs on an automated basis.

Many of these commands are extremely complex, and completely describing them is beyond the scope of this chapter. You can consult these commands’ man pages for more information. A few of them are described elsewhere in this book, as noted in the preceding brief descriptions.

Even if you have a full grasp of how to use some key external commands, simply executing commands as you might when typing them at a command prompt is of limited utility. Many administrative tasks require you to modify what you



Chapter 8 describes  
input redirection.

type at a command, or even what commands you enter, depending on information from other commands. For this reason, scripting languages include additional features to help you make your scripts useful.

## Using Arguments

Variables can help you expand the utility of scripts. A *variable* is a placeholder in a script for a value that will be determined when the script runs. Variables' values can be passed as parameters to a script, generated internally to a script, or extracted from a script's environment. (An *environment* is a set of variables that any program can access. The environment includes things like the current directory and the search path for running programs.)

Variables that are passed to the script are frequently called *parameters* or *arguments*. They're represented in the script by a dollar sign (\$) followed by a number from 0 up—\$0 stands for the name of the script, \$1 is the first parameter to the script, \$2 is the second parameter, and so on. To understand how this might be useful, consider the task of adding a user. As described in Chapter 13, “Creating Users and Groups,” creating an account for a new user typically involves running at least two commands—`useradd` and `passwd`. You may also need to run additional site-specific commands, such as commands that create unusual user-owned directories aside from the user's home directory.

As an example of how a script with an argument variable can help in such situations, consider Listing 11.2. This script creates an account and changes the account's password (the script prompts you to enter the password when you run the script). It creates a directory in the `/shared` directory tree corresponding to the account, and it sets a symbolic link to that directory from the new user's home directory. It also adjusts ownership and permissions in a way that may be useful, depending on your system's ownership and permissions policies.

Certification  
Objective

**LISTING 11.2:** A script that reduces account-creation tedium

```
#!/bin/bash
useradd -m $1
passwd $1
mkdir -p /shared/$1
chown $1.users /shared/$1
chmod 775 /shared/$1
ln -s /shared/$1 /home/$1/shared
chown $1.users /home/$1/shared
```

If you use Listing 11.2, you need to type only three things: the script name with the desired username and the password (twice). For instance, if the script is called `mkuser`, you can use it like this:

```
# mkuser ajones
Changing password for user ajones
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully
```

Most of the script's programs operate silently unless they encounter problems, so the interaction (including typing the passwords, which don't echo to the screen) is a result of just the `passwd` command. In effect, Listing 11.2's script replaces seven lines of commands with one. Every one of those lines uses the username, so by running this script, you also reduce the chance of a typo causing problems.

## Using Variables



Another type of variable is assigned within scripts—for instance, such variables can be set from the output of a command. These variables are also identified by leading dollar signs, but they're typically given names that at least begin with a letter, such as `$Addr` or `$Name`. (When values are assigned to variables, the dollar sign is omitted, as illustrated shortly.) You can then use these variables in conjunction with normal commands as if they were command parameters, but the value of the variable is passed to the command.

For instance, consider Listing 11.3, which checks to see if the computer's router is up with the help of the `ping` utility. This script uses two variables. The first is `$ip`, which is extracted from the output of `route` using the `grep`, `tr`, and `cut` commands. When you're assigning a value to a variable from the output of a command, that command should be enclosed in back-tick characters (```), which appear on the same key as the tilde (`~`) on most keyboards. These are *not* ordinary single quotes, which appear on the same key as the regular quote character (`"`) on most keyboards. The second variable, `$ping`, simply points to the `ping` program. It can just as easily be omitted, with subsequent uses of `$ping` replaced by the full path to the program or simply by `ping` (relying on the `$PATH` environment variable to find the program). Variables like this are sometimes used to make it easier to modify the script in the future. For instance, if you move the `ping` program, you need to modify only one line of the script. Variables can also be used in conjunction with conditionals to ensure that the script works on more systems—for instance, if `ping` were called something else on some systems.

**LISTING 11.3:** Script demonstrating assignment and use of variables

```
#!/bin/bash
ip=`route -n | grep UG | tr -s " " | cut -f 2 -d " "`
ping="/bin/ping"
echo "Checking to see if $ip is up..."
$ping -c 5 $ip
```

In practice, you use Listing 11.3 by typing the script's name. The result should be the message `Checking to see if 192.168.1.1 is up` (with `192.168.1.1` replaced by the computer's default gateway system) and the output from the `ping` command, which should attempt to send five packets to the router. If the router is up and configured to respond to pings, you'll see five return packets and summary information, similar to the following:

**\$ routercheck**

```
Checking to see if 192.168.1.1 is up...
PING 192.168.1.1 (192.168.1.1) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=1 ttl=63 time=23.0 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=2 ttl=63 time=0.176 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=3 ttl=63 time=0.214 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=4 ttl=63 time=0.204 ms
64 bytes from 192.168.1.1: icmp_seq=5 ttl=63 time=0.191 ms

-- 192.168.1.1 ping statistics--
5 packets transmitted, 5 received, 0% packet loss, time 4001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.176/4.758/23.005/9.123 ms
```

If the router is down, you'll see error messages to the effect that the host was unreachable.

Listing 11.3 is of limited practical use and contains bugs. For instance, the script identifies the computer's gateway merely by the presence of the string `UG` in the router's output line from `route`. If a computer has two routers defined, this won't work correctly, and the result is likely to be a script that misbehaves. The purpose of Listing 11.3 is to illustrate how variables can be assigned and used, not to be a flawless working script.

Scripts like Listing 11.3, which obtain information from running one or more commands, are useful in configuring features that rely on system-specific information or information that varies with time. You can use a similar approach to obtain the current hostname (using the `hostname` command), the current time (using `date`), the total time the computer's been running (using `uptime`), free disk space (using `df`), and so on. When combined with conditional expressions



In addition to several commands, the `ip=` line uses back-ticks (```) to assign the output of that command chain to `ip`. Chapter 8 describes this technique.

(described shortly), variables become even more powerful, because then your script can perform one action when one condition is met and another in some other case. For instance, a script that installs software can check free disk space and abort the installation if insufficient disk space is available.

Certification  
Objective

In addition to assigning variables with the assignment operator (=), you can read variables from standard input by using `read`, as in `read response` to read input for subsequent access as `$response`. This method of variable assignment is useful for scripts that must interact with users. For instance, instead of reading the username from the command line, Listing 11.2 may be modified to prompt the user for the username. Listing 11.4 shows the result. To use this script, you type its name *without* typing a username on the command line. The script will then prompt for a username and, after you enter one, the script will attempt to create an account with that name.

**LISTING 11.4:** Modified version of Listing 11.2 that employs user interaction

```
#!/bin/bash
echo -n "Enter a username:"
read name
useradd -m $name
passwd $name
mkdir -p /shared/$name
chown $name.users /shared/$name
chmod 775 /shared/$name
ln -s /shared/$name /home/$name/shared
chown $name.users /home/$name/shared
```

One special type of variable is an *environment variable*, which is assigned and accessed just like a shell script variable. The difference is that the script or command that sets an environment variable uses Bash's `export` command to make the value of the variable accessible to programs launched from the shell or shell script that made the assignment. In other words, you can set an environment variable in one script and use it in another script that the first script launches. Environment variables are most often set in shell startup scripts, but the scripts you use can access them. For instance, if your script calls X programs, it might check for the presence of a valid `$DISPLAY` environment variable and abort if it finds that this variable isn't set. By convention, environment variable names are all uppercase, whereas nonenvironment shell script variables are all lowercase or mixed case.

One special variable deserves mention: `$?`. This variable holds the *exit status* (or *return value*) of the most recently executed command. Most programs return a value of 0 when they terminate normally and return another value to specify errors. You can display this value with `echo` or use it in a conditional expression (described next) to have your script perform special error handling.

Consult a program's man page to learn the meanings of its return values.



## Using Conditional Expressions

Scripting languages support several types of *conditional expressions*. These enable a script to perform one of several actions contingent on a particular condition—typically the value of a variable. One common command that uses conditional expressions is `if`, which allows the system to take one of two actions depending on whether a certain condition is true. The `if` keyword's conditional expression appears in brackets after the `if` keyword and can take many forms. For instance, `-f file` is true if `file` exists and is a regular file; `-s file` is true if `file` exists and has a size greater than 0; and `string1 == string2` is true if the two strings have the same values.

Certification  
Objective

Conditionals may be combined together with the logical and (`&&`) or logical or (`||`) operators. When conditionals are combined with `&&`, both sides of the operator must be true for the condition as a whole to be true. When `||` is used, if either side of the operator is true, the condition as a whole is true.

Certification  
Objective

To better understand the use of conditionals, consider the following code fragment:

```
if [ -s /tmp/tempstuff ]
then
    echo "/tmp/tempstuff found; aborting!"
    exit
fi
```

This fragment causes the script to exit if the file `/tmp/tempstuff` is present. The `then` keyword marks the beginning of a series of lines that execute only if the conditional is true, and `fi` (if backward) marks the end of the `if` block. Such code may be useful if the script creates and then later deletes this file, because its presence indicates that a previous run of the script didn't succeed or is still underway.

An alternative form for a conditional expression uses the `test` keyword rather than square brackets around the conditional:

```
if test -s /tmp/tempstuff
```

Certification  
Objective

You can also test a command's return value by using the command as the condition:

```
if [ command ]
then
    additional-commands
fi
```

In this example, the *additional-commands* will be run only if *command* completes successfully. If *command* returns an error code, the *additional-commands* won't be run.

Conditional expressions may be expanded by use of the `else` clause:

```
if [ conditional-expression ]
  then
    commands
  else
    other-commands
fi
```

Code of this form causes either *commands* or *other-commands* to execute, depending on the evaluation of *conditional-expression*. This is useful if *something* should happen in a part of the program, but precisely what should happen depends on a certain condition. For instance, you may want to launch one of two file-archiving programs depending on a user's input.

Certification  
Objective

What do you do if more than two outcomes are possible—for instance, if a user may provide any one of four possible inputs? You can nest several `if/then/else` clauses, but this gets awkward quickly. A cleaner approach is to use `case`:

```
case word in
  pattern1) command(s);;
  pattern2) command(s);;
  ...
esac
```

Certification  
Objective

For a `case` statement, a *word* is likely to be a variable, and each *pattern* is a possible value of that variable. The patterns can be expanded much like filenames, using the same wildcards and expansion rules (`*` to stand for any string, for instance). You can match an arbitrary number of patterns in this way. Each set of commands must end with a double semicolon (`;;`), and the `case` statement as a whole ends in the string `esac` (case backward).

Upon execution, `bash` executes the commands associated with the first pattern to match the *word*. Execution then jumps to the line following the `esac` statement; any intervening commands don't execute. If no patterns match the word, no code within the `case` statement executes. If you want to have a default condition, use `*` as the final *pattern*; this pattern matches any *word*, so its commands will execute if no other *pattern* matches.

Filename expansion using asterisks (`*`), question marks (`?`), and so on is sometimes called *globbing*.

The `aplay` command is a basic audio file player. On some systems, you may need to use `play` or some other command instead of `aplay`.

## Using Loops

Conditional expressions are sometimes used in loops. *Loops* are structures that tell the script to perform the same task repeatedly until a particular condition is

met (or until some condition is no longer met). For instance, Listing 11.5 shows a loop that plays all the `.wav` audio files in a directory.

**LISTING 11.5:** A script that executes a command on every matching file in a directory

```
#!/bin/bash
for d in `ls *.wav`; do
    aplay $d
done
```

The `for` loop as used here executes once for every item in the list generated by `ls *.wav`. Each of those items (filenames) is assigned in turn to the `$d` variable and so is passed to the `aplay` command.

The `seq` command can be useful in creating `for` loops (and in other ways too). This command generates a list of numbers starting from its first argument and continuing to its last one. For instance, typing `seq 1 10` generates 10 lines, each with a number between 1 and 10. You can use a `for` loop beginning `for x in `seq 1 10`` to have the loop execute 10 times, with the value of `x` incrementing with each iteration. If you pass just one parameter to `seq`, it interprets that number as an ending point, with the starting point being 1. If you pass three values to `seq`, it interprets them as a starting value, an increment amount, and an ending value.

Another type of loop is the `while` loop, which executes for as long as its condition is true. The basic form of this loop type is as follows:

```
while [ condition ]
do
    commands
done
```

The `until` loop is similar in form, but it continues execution for as long as its condition is *false*—that is, until the condition becomes true.

## Using Functions

A *function* is a part of a script that performs a specific subtask and that can be called by name from other parts of the script. Placing parentheses after the function name and enclosing the lines that make up the function within curly braces is how functions are defined:

```
myfn() {
    commands
}
```

The keyword `function` may optionally precede the function name. In either event, the function is called by name as if it were an ordinary internal or external command.

Functions are useful in helping to create modular scripts. For instance, if your script needs to perform half a dozen distinct computations, you can place each computation in a function and then call them all in sequence. Listing 11.6 demonstrates the use of functions in a simple program that copies a file but aborts with an error message if the target file already exists. This script accepts a target and a destination filename and must pass those filenames to the functions.

**LISTING 11.6:** A script demonstrating the use of functions

```
#!/bin/bash

doit() {
    cp $1 $2
}

function check() {
    if [ -s $2 ]
    then
        echo "Target file exists! Exiting!"
        exit
    fi
}

check $1 $2
doit $1 $2
```

If you enter Listing 11.6 and call it `safercp`, you can use it like this, assuming that the file `original.txt` exists and `dest.txt` does not:

```
$ ./safercp original.txt dest.txt
$ ./safercp original.txt dest.txt
Target file exists! Exiting!
```

The first run of the script succeeds because `dest.txt` doesn't exist. On the second run, though, the destination file does exist, so the script terminates with the error message.

Note that the functions aren't run directly and in the order in which they appear in the script. They're run only when called in the main body of the script—which in Listing 11.6 consists of just two lines, each corresponding to one function call, at the very end of the script.

## Setting the Script's Exit Value

Ordinarily, a script's return value is the same as the last command the script called; that is, the script returns  `$?` . You can control the exit value, however, or exit from the script at any point, by using the `exit` command. Used without any options, `exit` causes immediate termination of the script, with the usual exit value of  `$?` . This can be useful in error handling or in aborting an ongoing operation for any reason—if the script detects an error or if the user selects an option to terminate, you can call `exit` to quit.

If you pass a numeric value between 0 and 255 to `exit`, the script terminates and returns the specified value as the script's own exit value. You can use this feature to signal errors to other scripts that might call your own script. You may have to include extra code to keep track of the causes of abnormal termination, though. For instance, you might set aside a variable (say, `$termcause`) to hold the cause of the script's termination. Set it to 0 at the start of the script and then, if the script detects a problem that will cause termination, reset `$termcause` to some non-0 value. (You can use any numeric codes you like; there's no set meaning for such codes.) On exit, be sure to pass `$termcause` to `exit`:

```
exit $termcause
```



### THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Serious Linux users and administrators must have at least a basic understanding of shell scripts. Many configuration and startup files are, in fact, shell scripts, and being able to read them, and perhaps modify them, will help you administer your system. Being able to create new shell scripts is also important, because doing so will help you simplify tedious tasks and create site-specific tools by gluing together multiple programs to accomplish your goals.

#### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ Write a script that copies a file by prompting the user to enter the source and destination filenames rather than by accepting them as arguments on the command line, as `cp` does.
- ▶ Some text editors leave backup files with filenames that end in tildes (~). Write a script that, when you pass it a directory name as an argument, locates all such files in that directory. The script should then ask the user whether to delete each file individually and do so if and only if the user responds by typing `Y`.

*(Continues)*

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** (Continued)**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

1. After using a text editor to create a shell script, what step should you take before trying to use the script by typing its name?
  - A. Set one or more executable bits using `chmod`.
  - B. Copy the script to the `/usr/bin/scripts` directory.
  - C. Compile the script by typing `bash scriptname`, where *scriptname* is the script's name.
  - D. Run a virus checker on the script to be sure it contains no viruses.
  - E. Run a spell checker on the script to ensure it contains no bugs.
2. Describe the effect of the following short script, `cp1`, if it's called as `cp1 big.c big.cc`:

```
#!/bin/bash
cp $2 $1
```

- A. It has the same effect as the `cp` command—copying the contents of `big.c` to `big.cc`.
  - B. It compiles the C program `big.c` and calls the result `big.cc`.
  - C. It copies the contents of `big.cc` to `big.c`, eliminating the old `big.c`.
  - D. It converts the C program `big.c` into a C++ program called `big.cc`.
  - E. The script's first line is invalid, so it won't work.
3. What is the purpose of conditional expressions in shell scripts?
    - A. They prevent scripts from executing if license conditions aren't met.
    - B. They display information about the script's computer environment.
    - C. They enable the script to take different actions in response to variable data.
    - D. They enable scripts to learn in a manner reminiscent of Pavlovian conditioning.
    - E. They cause scripts to run only at specified times of day.
  4. True or false: A user types `myscript laser.txt` to run a script called `myscript`. Within `myscript`, the `$0` variable holds the value `laser.txt`.
  5. True or false: Valid looping statements in Bash include `for`, `while`, and `until`.

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)*

- 6.** True or false: The following script launches three simultaneous instances of the terminal program.

```
#!/bin/bash
terminal
terminal
terminal
```

- 7.** You've written a simple shell script that does nothing but launch programs. In order to ensure that the script works with most user shells, what should its first line read?
- 8.** What command can you use to display prompts for a user in a shell script?
- 9.** What Bash scripting command can you use to control the program flow based on a variable that can take many values (such as all the letters of the alphabet)?
- 10.** What Bash scripting command can you use to control the return value generated by a script, independent of the other commands used in the script?



# Understanding Basic Security

*Linux is a multiuser* OS, meaning that it provides features to help multiple individuals use the computer. Collectively, these features constitute *accounts*. Previous chapters of this book have referred to accounts in passing but haven't covered them in detail.

This chapter changes that; it describes important account principles and a few commands that you can use to begin investigating accounts. Related to accounts are *groups*, which are collections of accounts that can be given special permissions on the computer, so this chapter also describes groups. One account, known as *root*, has special privileges on the computer. You use this account to perform most system administration tasks, so you should understand this account before you tackle the administrative tasks described in the last few chapters of this book. These important topics are at the foundation of system security.

- ▶ **Understanding accounts**
- ▶ **Using account tools**
- ▶ **Working as *root***

## Understanding Accounts

▶  
Even a single-user workstation uses multiple accounts. Such a computer may have just one *user account*, but several *system accounts* to help keep the computer running.

Accounts enable multiple users to share a single computer without causing each other too much trouble. They also enable system administrators to track who is using system resources and, sometimes, who is doing things that they shouldn't be doing. Account features help users use a computer and administrators administer it. Understanding these features is the basis for enabling you to manage accounts.

Some account features help you identify accounts and the files and resources associated with them. Knowing how to use these features will help you track down account-related problems and manage the computer's users.



## Understanding Account Features

Most account features are defined in the `/etc/passwd` file, which consists of colon-delimited lines, with each line (or record) defining a single account. An entry might resemble the following:

```
rich:x:1003:100:Rich Blum:/home/rich:/bin/bash
```

The information contained in the fields of this record includes the following:

**Username** An account's username is its most relevant feature. Most Linux account usernames consist of lowercase letters, and occasionally numbers, as in `rich` or `thx1138`. Underscores (`_`) and dashes (`-`) are also valid characters in some Linux distributions' usernames, as are dollar signs (`$`) at the end.

**Password** User accounts are typically protected by a password, which is required to log into the computer. Direct login to most system accounts (described later in this chapter) is disabled, so they lack passwords. (The `root` account is an important exception; it has a password in most distributions.) The password field in the `/etc/passwd` file usually contains an `x`, which is a code meaning that the password is stored in `/etc/shadow`, as described shortly.

**UID** In reality, the username is just a label that the computer displays to we numerically challenged humans. The computer uses a user identification (UID) number to track accounts. UID numbers begin with 0 (which refers to the `root` account). In most distributions, user accounts have UID numbers at 1,000 and above, with lower numbers reserved for system accounts.

**GID** Accounts are tied to one or more groups, which are similar to accounts in many ways; however, a group is a collection of accounts. One of the primary purposes of groups is to enable users to give certain users access to their files, while preventing others from accessing them. Each account is tied directly to a primary group via a group ID (GID) number (100 in the preceding example). Accounts can be tied to other groups by inclusion in the group's definition, as described in Chapter 13, "Creating Users and Groups."

**Comment Field** The *comment field* normally holds the user's full name (Rich Blum in this example), although this field can hold other information instead of or in addition to the user's name.

**Home Directory** User accounts, and some system accounts, have *home directories* (`/home/rich` in this example). A home directory is an account's "home base." Normally, ownership of an account's home directory belongs to

Some distributions number user accounts starting at 500 rather than 1,000.

File ownership and permissions are described in Chapter 14, "Setting Ownership and Permissions."

the account. Certain tools and procedures make it easy for users to access their home directories; for instance, the tilde (~) refers to a user's home directory when used at the start of a filename.

**Default Shell** A *default shell* is associated with every account. In Linux, this shell is normally Bash (/bin/bash), but individual users can change this if they like. Most non-root system accounts set the default shell to /usr/sbin/nologin (or /sbin/nologin) as an added security measure—this program displays a message stating that the account is not available. Using /bin/false works in a similar way, although without the explanatory message.

You might guess by its name that /etc/passwd holds password information. This isn't normally the case today, although it was many years ago. For historical reasons, /etc/passwd must be readable by all users, so storing passwords there, even as a salted and hashed password, is risky. Passwords today are stored in another file, /etc/shadow, that ordinary users can't read. This file associates a salted and hashed password, as well as other information, with an account. This information can disable an account after a period of time or if the user doesn't change the password within a given period of time. A typical /etc/shadow entry looks like this:

```
rich:$1$E/moFkeT5UnTQ3KqZUoA4Fl2tPUoIc:16860:5:30:14:-1:-1:
```

The meaning of each colon-delimited field on this line is as follows:

**Username** Each line begins with the username. Note that the UID is *not* used in /etc/shadow; the username links entries in this file to those in /etc/passwd.

**Password** The password is stored as a salted hash, so it bears no obvious resemblance to the actual password. An asterisk (\*) or exclamation mark (!) denotes an account with no password (that is, the account doesn't accept logins—it's locked). This is common for accounts used by the system itself.

**Last Password Change** The next field (16860 in this example) is the date of the last password change. This date is stored as the number of days since January 1, 1970.

**Days Until a Change Is Allowed** The next field (5 in this example) is the number of days before a password change is allowed. This is used to prevent users from changing their passwords as required and then changing them right back to the original password.

**Days Before a Change Is Required** This field (30 in this example) is the number of days before another password change is required (since the last password change).

#### Certification Objective

Passwords are stored using a *salted hash*, a one-way mathematical process with additional random input (salt), that produces what looks like nonsense to humans. When a user types a password, it's salted and hashed, and if the salted hashes match, access is granted.

January 1, 1970 is also called Unix time, POSIX time, or epoch (incorrectly), and it is the amount of time elapsed since Midnight UTC on that date. It is often used for time purposes on Unix/Linux systems. POSIX time may cause problems in the year 2038 on any computer still using 32-bit processors, because the computer will run out of storage to track time properly in this way.

**Days of Warning Before Password Expiration** If your system is configured to expire passwords, you may set it to warn the user when an expiration date is approaching. A value of 7 is typical. However 14 days, as shown in the preceding example, may be appropriate if your company's employees take two-week vacations.

**Days Between Expiration and Deactivation** Linux allows for a gap between the expiration of an account and its complete deactivation. An expired account either can't be used or requires that the user change the password immediately after logging in. In either case, its password remains intact. A deactivated account's password is erased, and the account can't be used until the system administrator reactivates it. A -1 in this field, as shown in the preceding example, indicates that this feature is disabled.

**Expiration Date** This field shows the date on which the account will expire. As with the last password change date, the date is expressed as the number of days since January 1, 1970. A -1 in this field, as shown in the preceding example, indicates that this feature is disabled.

**Special Flag** This field is reserved for future use and normally isn't used or contains a meaningless value. This field is empty in the preceding example.

For fields relating to day counts, a value of -1 or 99999 typically indicates that the relevant feature has been disabled. The `/etc/shadow` values are generally best left to modification through commands such as `usermod` (described in Chapter 13) and `chage`. Understanding the format of the file enables you to review its contents and note any discrepancies, which could indicate that your system has been compromised.

The `/etc/shadow` file is usually stored with restrictive permissions, with ownership by `root`. This fact is critical to the shadow password system's utility because it keeps non-root users from reading the file and obtaining the password list, even in a salted and hashed form. By contrast, `/etc/passwd` must be readable by ordinary users and usually has less-restrictive permissions.

It's important to realize that an account isn't a single entity like a program binary file. Account information is scattered across several configuration files, such as `/etc/passwd`, `/etc/shadow`, `/etc/group`, and possibly in other configuration files that refer to accounts. User files reside in the user's home directory and perhaps elsewhere. Thus managing accounts can require doing more than just maintaining a file or two. For this reason, various utilities exist to help create, manage, and delete accounts, as described in the rest of this chapter and in Chapter 13.

The terms *encrypted* and *hashed* are often confused when used with computer objects. You can decrypt an encrypted object, but you cannot "dehash" a hashed object. Passwords on Linux are salted and hashed, though often you'll see the term *encrypted* mistakenly used instead in Linux documentation.

Examples of user files stored outside the user's home directory include email in `/var/spool/mail` and temporary files in `/tmp`.

## Identifying Accounts

One way to identify user accounts is to use a GUI tool for account management. Such tools vary from one distribution to another. One example is the Users account tool in the Settings control panel on a Fedora system, which can be quickly reached by clicking Activities in the main window and then typing **users** in the search box, as shown in Figure 12.1.



**FIGURE 12.1** Locating the Users account tool in Fedora

Accessing this option produces a window similar to the one shown in Figure 12.2. This tool shows only user accounts, not system accounts. It enables changing a few features, such as a user's password, by clicking them, but its usefulness as an account management tool is limited. Ordinary users, however, can reach it fairly easily and can use it to change their passwords. As an administrator, you can use this tool to verify quickly what accounts are active.

You can identify *all* of a computer's accounts by viewing the `/etc/passwd` file's contents with `cat` or `less`. Doing so will reveal all accounts, including both system and user accounts.

Alternatively, if you're searching for information on a specific account, you can use `grep` to find it in `/etc/passwd`, as in `grep rich /etc/passwd` to find information on any account that's tied to a user with the username `rich`. (This specific example assumes that the string `rich` appears in the `passwd` file, of course.)

An alternative that's similar to perusing `/etc/passwd` is to type `getent passwd`. This command retrieves entries from certain administrative databases, including the `/etc/passwd` file. In most cases, typing `getent passwd` produces results that are identical to typing `cat /etc/passwd`; however, sometimes the

Passwords are typically displayed as dots or asterisks as a security feature.

You can pull out individual records by using the `getent` command too. Just add the username to the command's end—for instance, `getent passwd rich`.

two aren't identical. The `/etc/passwd` file defines only *local* user accounts. It's possible to configure Linux to use a network account database to define some or all of its accounts. If you use such a configuration, typing `getent passwd` returns *both* local accounts and accounts defined on the network server.

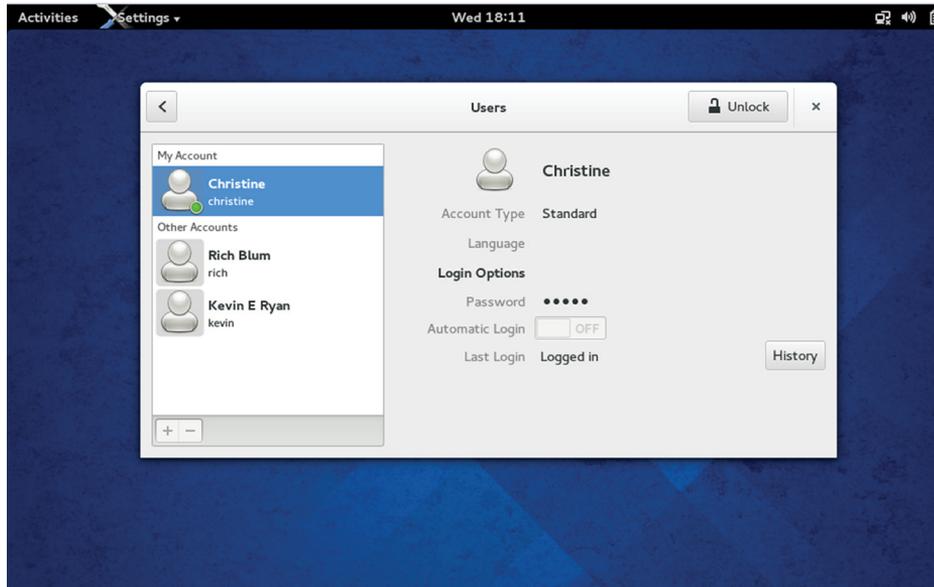


FIGURE 12.2 The Users account tool provides minimal account information.

## NETWORK ACCOUNT DATABASES

Many networks employ network account databases. Such systems include the Network Information System (NIS), an update to this system called NIS+, the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), Kerberos realms, and Active Directory (AD) domains. All of these systems move account database management onto a single centralized computer (often with one or more backup systems). The advantage of this approach to account maintenance is that users and administrators need not deal with maintaining accounts independently on multiple computers. A single-account database can handle accounts on dozens (or even hundreds or thousands) of different computers, greatly simplifying day-to-day administrative tasks and also simplifying users' lives. Using such a system, though, means that most user accounts won't appear in `/etc/passwd` and `/etc/shadow`, and groups may not appear in `/etc/group` (described

## NETWORK ACCOUNT DATABASES

shortly, in “Understanding Groups”). These files will still hold information on local system accounts and groups, though.

Linux can participate in these systems. In fact, some distributions provide options to enable such support at OS installation time. Typically, you must know the name or IP address of the server that hosts the network account database, and you must know what protocol that system uses. You may also need a password or some other protocol-specific information, and the server may need to be configured to accept accesses from the Linux system that you’re configuring.

Activating use of such network account databases after installing Linux is a complex topic that is not covered in this book. Such systems often alter the behavior of tools such as `passwd` and `usermod` (described in Chapter 13) in subtle or not-so-subtle ways. If you need to use such a system, you’ll have to consult documentation specific to the service that you intend to use.

## Understanding Groups

As noted earlier, groups are collections of accounts that are defined in the `/etc/group` file. Like `/etc/passwd`, the `/etc/group` file contains colon-delimited lines (records), each defining a single group. An example looks like this:

```
users:x:100:games,sally
```

The fields in `/etc/group` are as follows:

**Group Name** The first field, `users` in the preceding example, is the name of the group. You use it with most commands that access or manipulate group data.

**Password** Groups, like users, can have passwords. A value of `x` means that the password is defined elsewhere (but may be disabled), and an empty password field means that the group has no password.

**GID** Linux uses GID values, like UID values, internally. Translation to and from group names is done for the benefit of users and administrators.

**User List** You can specify users who belong to the group in a comma-delimited list at the end of the `/etc/group` record.

It’s important to recognize that users can be identified as members of a group in either of two ways:

Certification  
Objective



The use and management of group passwords is a topic that’s beyond the scope of this book.

**By Specifying the Group's GID in Users' Individual /etc/passwd Entries** Because /etc/passwd has room for only one GID value, only one group can be defined in this way. This is the user's primary (or default) group.

**By Specifying Usernames in the User List in the /etc/group File** A single user can appear multiple times in /etc/group, and a single group can have multiple users associated with it in this way. If a user is associated with a group in this way but not via the user's /etc/passwd entry, this group association is secondary.

When you create new files, those files will be associated with your current group. When you log in, your current group is set to your primary group. If you want to create files that are associated with another group to which you belong, you can use the `newgrp` command, as follows:

```
$ newgrp project1
```

This command makes `project1` your current group, so that the files you create will be associated with that group. Group ownership of files is important in file security, which is described in more detail in Chapter 14.

## Using Account Tools

A few commands can help you learn about the users and groups on your computer. Most notably, the `whoami` and `id` utilities can tell you about your own identity, and the `who` and `w` utilities can give you information about who is currently using the computer.

### Discovering Your Own Identity

If you maintain multiple accounts for yourself and you don't recall which one you used to log in, you might become confused about your current status. In such a case, the `whoami` command can come in handy. It displays your current user ID:

```
$ whoami
christine
```

This example reveals that the current account is `christine`. If you need more information, you can use the `id` utility:

```
$ id
uid=1002(christine) gid=100(users) groups=100(users)[...]
```

This example shows information on both users and groups:

- ▶ Your user ID and username: `uid=1002(christine)` in this example
- ▶ Your current group: `gid=100(users)` in this example
- ▶ All your group memberships: the entries following `groups=` in this example

The `id` command displays both the numeric UID or GID values and the associated names. The current group is the one that's active, either by default or because you used the `newgrp` command.

You can limit `id`'s output by specifying various options, as summarized in Table 12.1. In addition, you can specify a username, as in `id sally`, to obtain information on that user rather than on yourself.

**TABLE 12.1** Options for `id`

Long option	Short option	Effect
<code>--group</code>	<code>-g</code>	Displays only the effective group ID
<code>--groups</code>	<code>-G</code>	Displays all of the groups to which you belong
<code>--user</code>	<code>-u</code>	Displays only the user data
<code>--name</code>	<code>-n</code>	Used in conjunction with <code>-g</code> , <code>-G</code> , or <code>-u</code> ; displays only the name, not the UID or GID
<code>--real</code>	<code>-r</code>	Used in conjunction with <code>-g</code> , <code>-G</code> , or <code>-u</code> ; displays only the UID or GID, not the name

## Learning Who's Online

Linux permits multiple users to access the computer simultaneously. Most often, this is done by means of remote access servers such as the Secure Shell (SSH); however, you can use Linux's virtual terminal (VT) feature to log in multiple times with a single keyboard and monitor. Sometimes, you might want to know who is using the computer. You might do this before shutting down the computer, for instance, to ensure that you don't inconvenience another user.

On some distributions, the `id` command provides more information than shown here.

Certification  
Objective

To learn who is online, you can use a command known as `who`:

```
$ who
christine:0          2016-05-04 17:33 (:0)
kevin      tty2      2016-05-04 17:36
rich      pts/0      2016-05-04 17:33 (192.168.56.101)
christine pts/1      2016-05-04 17:34 (:0)
```

Different distributions have varying minor details for the `who` command. However, the major elements are the same.

This example shows four logins—two by `christine`, one by `kevin`, and one by `rich`. Information provided in the default output includes the following:

**Username** The first column of `who`'s output shows the username.

**Terminal Identifier** The second column of `who`'s output shows a code associated with the terminal. In this example, `christine`'s first login shows `:0` as this identifier, which means that it's a local GUI login. The remaining logins all have terminal identifiers of the form `pts/#` or `tty#`, indicating text sessions. A text session can be a terminal launched in a GUI, a text-mode console login, or a remote login via SSH or some other protocol.

**Login Date and Time** `who` displays the date and time of each login. You can see that `rich`'s and `christine`'s sessions began a couple of minutes before `kevin` logged in.

**Remote Host** The final column of `who`'s output, if present, shows the login source. Console logins (including both text-mode and GUI-based logins) don't include a source. A source of the form `#` or `#. #`, as in `christine`'s sessions, indicates a terminal opened in a GUI. A hostname or IP address, as in `rich`'s session, indicates remote access from the specified computer.

By default, the `who` command pulls its data from the `/var/run/utmp` file.

You can obtain additional information, most of which is obscure or specialized, by passing options to `who`. One that's more likely than others to be useful is `count` (or `-q`), which produces a more compact summary of the data:

```
$ who -q
christine kevin rich christine
# users=4
```

This output includes just the usernames and a line specifying the total number of sessions. Notice that the `users` number counts one user with multiple logins multiple times.

Similar to the `whoami` command, but showing more information, involves passing the `am i` arguments to the `who` command to display data only for your current user ID:

```
$ who am i
christine pts/1          2016-05-04 17:34 (:0)
```

The `who` command, for a little humor, allows you to use the arguments `mom` `likes` in place of the `am i` arguments.

In this example, the current user account is christine, who is logged into the pts/1 GUI terminal session. For information on additional who options and arguments, consult its man page.

An alternative to who is w, which is similar to who but produces somewhat more verbose output:

Certification  
Objective

```
$ w
117:52:40 up 24 min,  4 users,  load average: 0.02, 0.108, 0.20
USER      TTY      LOGIN@  IDLE   JCPU   PCPU   WHAT
christin:0    17:33    ?xdm?  1:16   0.16s  0.16s  gdm-sess[...]
kevin      tty2     17:36    16:24  0.10s  0.10s  -bash
rich       pts/0    17:33    19:36  0.11s  0.11s  -bash
christin pts/1    17:34     0:00s  0.22s  0.01s  w
```

As you can see, w displays much of the same information as who, including the terminal identifier (TTY) and login time (in a different format). In addition, w displays further information:

- ▶ The session's idle time tells you how long it's been since the user has interacted with this session. This information can help you identify sessions that the user may have abandoned.
- ▶ The JCPU column identifies the total amount of CPU time associated with the session. This can be useful debugging information if the computer has become sluggish because of out-of-control processes.
- ▶ The PCPU column identifies the total amount of CPU time associated with the current process running in the session. Again, this information can help you track down out-of-control processes.
- ▶ The WHAT column tells you what program the session is running.

Some configurations also display a FROM column, which shows a remote host-name. Using the -f option toggles this option on or off. A few other options can eliminate or modify w's output. Consult the program's man page for details.

## Working as root

Linux is modeled after Unix, which was designed as a multiuser OS. In principle, you can have thousands of accounts on a single Unix (or Linux) computer. One user, though, needs extraordinary power in order to manage the features of the computer as a whole. This is the root user, also known as the *super user*, *superuser*, or the *administrator*. Knowing why root exists, how to do things as root, and how to use root privileges safely is important for managing a Linux system.

Certification  
Objective

## Understanding User Types

Most people use computers to do ordinary day-to-day computer tasks—browse the Web, write letters, manage a music collection, and so on. These activities are known collectively as *user tasks*, and they don't require special privileges. As just noted, a Linux computer can have many user accounts, and the users can use the computer from these user accounts (also known as *unprivileged accounts*, *unprivileged users*, or *standard users*) to perform such user tasks.

The *root* account, on the other hand, exists to enable you to perform *administrative tasks*. These tasks include installing new software, preparing a new disk for use in the computer, and managing ordinary user accounts. Such tasks require access to system files that ordinary users need not modify, or sometimes even read.

To facilitate performing these tasks, *root* can read and write every file on the computer. Since Linux relies on files to store system settings, this effectively gives *root* the power to change any detail of the OS's operation, which is the point of having a super user account. If the computer is a workstation that's used by just one individual, you might wonder why the distinction between *root* and the user account is necessary. The explanation is that the power of the *root* account can lead to accidental damage. For instance, take the `rm` command. If you mistype an `rm` command as an ordinary user, you can accidentally delete your own files but not system files. Make the same mistake as *root*, however, and you can delete system files, perhaps making the computer unbootable. Thus you should be cautious when using the *root* account, a topic covered more thoroughly in the upcoming "Using root Privileges Safely" section.

▶ Another user type is a *system user*. These are nonlogin accounts for daemons, services, or applications. System user accounts typically have a low UID number; no password (so the account is locked); and `/usr/sbin/nologin`, `/sbin/nologin`, or `/bin/false` as their default shell.

## Acquiring *root* Privileges

When you need to perform a command-line task that requires *root* privileges, you can do so in any of three ways:

**Log in as root** You can log in directly as *root* at a text-mode shell or by using a remote login tool such as SSH. You can even log into GUI mode as *root* on some Linux distributions. Some distributions don't allow *root* to log in directly by default because it's dangerous.

**Use `su`** The `su` command enables you to change your identity within a shell. Type `su username` to change your identity to that of the specified *username*. If you omit *username*, *root* is assumed; so typing `su` enables you effectively to become *root*. You must, however, know the password for the target account for this command to work. After you acquire *root* privileges in this way, you

Certification  
Objective

can type as many commands as root as you like. When you're done, type **exit** to relinquish your superuser status. You can also use **su** to run a single command as root by using the **-c** option, as in **su -c command** to run *command* as root. If you use a dash (-) within the command, as in **su-** or **su-luke**, the program opens a login session that runs the target user's login scripts. This can be important because these scripts often set environment variables that can be important for that user, such as **\$PATH**.

**Use sudo** The **sudo** command is similar to **su**, but it works for just one command at a time, which you type after **sudo**, similar to using **su -c**. For instance, typing **sudo cat /etc/shadow** enables you to see the contents of the **/etc/shadow** file, which is not readable by ordinary users. You must type either your own password or the root password, depending on the **sudo** configuration, when you use this program. (When using **su -c**, you must always type the root password.) The next command you type will be executed using your ordinary account privileges. Some distributions, such as Ubuntu, rely heavily on **sudo** and don't permit direct root logins by default.

◀  
SU stands for switch user or substitute user.

Certification Objective

## THE LEGALITIES OF ACQUIRING root PRIVILEGES

If your Linux system is in the workplace, it is important to determine your company's policies concerning acquiring root privileges. Logging directly into the root account or using the **su** command to obtain root privileges sets up what is called a *repudiation* environment. In this environment, a person can deny actions, as in this case, the person can deny that he or she logged in as root. This environment could allow a root account user to perform illegal or troublemaking activity and then legally deny being responsible for that activity. This is a potentially dangerous situation.

Many companies have (or should have) a policy that insists the **sudo** command is used for anyone needing to acquire root privileges. The **sudo** command tracks and logs a user's activity and therefore sets up what is called a *nonrepudiation* environment in which actions cannot be legally denied.

If you acquire root privileges by logging in directly as root or by using **su**, your shell prompt will change:

```
[luke@wembleth ~]$ su
Password:
[root@wembleth luke] #
```

In this example, the username has changed from `luke` to `root`; the directory has changed from `~` to `luke` (since for `root`, `~` refers to `/root`, not `/home/luke`); and the last character of the prompt has changed from a dollar sign (`$`) to a hash mark (`#`). Because just the last prompt character was used for most examples printed on their own lines in this book, such examples implicitly specify whether a command requires root privileges by the prompt used. For instance, consider accessing the `/etc/shadow` file mentioned earlier:

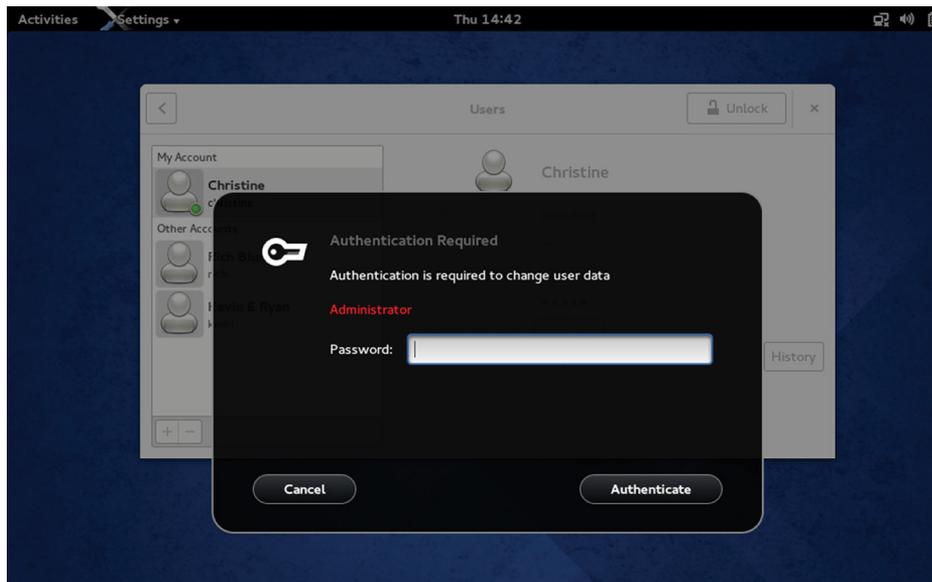
```
# cat /etc/shadow
```

The use of the hash mark prompt indicates that you *must* type this command using root privileges.

Some of this book's chapters describe both GUI and text-mode methods of system administration. How, then, can you administer Linux in GUI mode if you must use the text-mode `su` (or `sudo`) command to acquire root privileges? One way is to launch a GUI administrative tool from a shell in which you've already used `su`. This approach works, but it is a bit inelegant if you're more comfortable with a GUI than with a command line. Most distributions, therefore, provide an alternative: you can launch administrative tools from the computer's desktop menus and the GUI tools will then prompt you for the root (administrator) password when superuser privileges are needed, as shown in Figure 12.3. If you type the password correctly, the program will continue. The result is similar to that of launching the program from a shell using `sudo`—it runs as root, but without making anything else run as root.

To use root commands in Ubuntu, you must either precede them with `sudo` (as in `sudo cat /etc/shadow`) or type `sudo su` to acquire a longer-lasting root shell.

What do you do if you have forgotten the root password? Don't worry, because there are many methods for resetting it. Use your favorite web search engine and type in **reset Linux root password**. It's even better to type in your distribution's name, in place of Linux, for your search phrase.



**FIGURE 12.3** Administrative tools in the GUI ask for a password when administrator privileges are needed.

## Using *root* Privileges Safely

As already described, root power is dangerous. You could accidentally wipe out critical application files and cause hours of downtime. Imagine what would happen if you mistakenly corrupted an important configuration file or destroyed a set of important backups. Everyone makes mistakes—unfortunately, some mistakes can be absolutely disastrous for a company.

Imagine intruders gaining root access to your computer; unintended changes to configuration files; damage to some (even if not all) of the computer's system files; and changes to ownership or permissions on ordinary user files, rendering them inaccessible to their true owners. Thus it is recommended that you take the following precautions whenever you need root access:

- ▶ Ask yourself if you really need root access. Sometimes there's a way to achieve a goal without superuser privileges or by using those privileges in a more limited way than you'd originally planned. For instance, you might find that only root can write to a removable disk. Such a problem can usually be overcome by adjusting permissions on the disk in one way or another, thus limiting the use of root.
- ▶ Before pressing the Enter key after typing any command as root (or clicking any confirmation button in a GUI program running as root), take your hands *off* the keyboard and mouse, look over the command, and verify that it's correct in every respect. A simple typo can cause a world of pain.
- ▶ Never run a suspicious program as root. On multiuser systems, unscrupulous users can try to trick administrators into running programs that will do nasty things or give the attacker root privileges. Programs downloaded from random Internet sites could in principle be designed to compromise your security, and such programs are much more dangerous when run as root.
- ▶ Use root privileges for as brief a period as possible. If you need to type just one or two commands as root, do so and then type **exit** in the root shell to log out or return to your normal privileges. Better yet, use `sudo` to run the commands. It's easy to overlook the fact that you're using a root shell and therefore type commands as root that don't need that privilege. Every command typed as root is a risk.
- ▶ Never leave a root shell accessible to others. If you're performing root maintenance tasks and are called away, type **exit** in your root shell before leaving the computer.



If a program asks you for your password, or the root password, and it's not an administrative program that you trust, be suspicious! Research the program before giving it the password!

Chapter 13 describes how to select a strong password.

- ▶ Be careful with the root password. Don't share the password with others, and be cautious about typing it in a public area or when others might be looking over your shoulder. If you're using Linux professionally, your employer may have guidelines concerning who may have root access to a computer. Learn those rules and obey them! Be sure to select a strong root password, too.

Following these rules of thumb can help keep you from damaging your computer or giving somebody else root access to the computer.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Accounts are critical to Linux's normal functioning. Ordinarily, most of the tasks that you perform on a Linux computer require the privileges of a standard user, so you'll use your own user account to handle these tasks. You can use tools such as `whoami`, `id`, `who`, and `w` to identify your account and to determine who else might be using the computer. Occasionally, you'll need to perform administrative tasks that require the `root` account's privileges, which can read and write any ordinary file, access hardware in a low-level way, reconfigure the network, and perform other tasks that ordinary users aren't allowed to do. Because `root` is so powerful, you should use that power sparingly and be extremely careful when you do use it, lest a typo or other accident cause serious problems.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ Type `whoami` followed by `id` to review your ordinary user account status. Chances are that the `id` command will reveal that you're a member of various groups. Perform a web search to learn what each one does.
- ▶ Read the `/etc/passwd` file or type `getent passwd` to review what accounts are defined on the computer. Are there ordinary user accounts (those with UIDs above 500 or 1,000, depending on your distribution) other than your own? Try performing a web search to learn the purpose of a few of the system accounts (those with UIDs below 500 or 1,000, depending on your distribution).

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. What is the purpose of the system account with a UID of 0?
  - A. It's the system administration account.
  - B. It's the account for the first ordinary user.
  - C. Nothing; UID 0 is left intentionally undefined.
  - D. It varies from one distribution to another.
  - E. It's a low-privilege account that's used as a default by some servers.

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND**

2. What type of information will you find in `/etc/passwd` for ordinary user accounts? (Select all that apply.)
  - A. A user ID (UID) number
  - B. A complete listing of every group to which the user belongs
  - C. The path to the account's home directory
  - D. The path to the account's default GUI desktop environment
  - E. The path to the account's default text-mode shell
3. You want to run the command `cat /etc/shadow` as root, but you're logged in as an ordinary user. Which of the following commands will do the job, assuming that the system is configured to give you root access via the appropriate command?
  - A. `sudo cat /etc/shadow`
  - B. `root cat /etc/shadow`
  - C. `passwd cat /etc/shadow`
  - D. `su cat /etc/shadow`
  - E. `admin cat /etc/shadow`
4. True or false: `whoami` provides more information than `id`.
5. True or false: Linux stores information on its groups in the `/etc/groups` file.
6. True or false: As a general rule, you should employ extra care when running programs as root.
7. The file that associates usernames with UID numbers in Linux is \_\_\_\_\_. (Provide the complete path to the file.)
8. To learn who is currently logged into the computer and what programs they're currently running, you can type \_\_\_\_\_.
9. UIDs below 500 or 1,000 (depending on the distribution) are reserved for use by \_\_\_\_\_ accounts.
10. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ environment means that a person cannot deny actions, and the `sudo` command helps establish this environment.



# Creating Users and Groups

*Linux is a multiuser* OS, meaning that a single Linux computer can support many users, each with a unique account. With this capability comes the need to manage users' accounts, and this chapter covers the procedures you'll use to do so.

The chapter begins with information on how to create accounts. With the accounts created, you then need to know how to modify those accounts and, when necessary, delete them. Finally, groups are similar to accounts in many ways, so how to create and manage groups is described.

- ▶ **Creating new accounts**
- ▶ **Modifying accounts**
- ▶ **Deleting accounts**
- ▶ **Managing groups**

## Creating New Accounts

In many environments, the task of adding accounts is quite common. Large businesses hire new employees, universities recruit new students, charitable organizations obtain fresh volunteers, and so on. Thus you must know how to create new accounts. Before covering the mechanics of creating accounts, the important issues of deciding how to use groups and selecting a good password are described. How to create accounts using both GUI and text-mode tools are explained afterward.

## Deciding on a Group Strategy

As described in Chapter 12, "Understanding Basic Security," Linux *groups* are collections of users. You can use groups to control who can access particular files. As will be described in Chapter 14, "Setting Ownership and

Permissions,” individuals can change the group affiliations and group permissions of their own files. Thus the way that you use groups can influence your computer’s overall security strategy. Two approaches are common:

**User Groups** Each user can have an associated group; for instance, the user luke can have a group called luke. This user can then set group ownership on his files to luke or set group permissions to whatever is desired, and the system administrator can add users to the luke group. Thereafter, members of the luke group may access files in this group by using the permissions determined by the user luke. This approach emphasizes controlling access to individual users’ files.

**Project Groups** In this method, you create groups based on work projects, departmental affiliations, or other real-world groupings of users. For instance, you might have a group called sales for users in the sales department. Members of this group who want to share files with other members of this group would assign group ownership and permissions appropriately and store files in an agreed-upon location. This approach works best when the computer is used by a large number of people who collaborate in easily defined groups.

These two approaches are not mutually exclusive; you can mix and match, or create your own approach. You should also realize that users can be members of multiple groups. In fact, this is required for the user groups approach to work at all—otherwise, groups are redundant with accounts.

If you use the project group approach, you should think about which group should be a new user’s primary group. This is the group that will be assigned group ownership of the user’s files by default.

## Selecting a Good Password

When you create an account, you typically should create a password for it. Sometimes, the user can select the password when the account is created. At other times, you’ll need to select a password that the user will use initially. In such cases, instruct the user to change the password as soon as possible. In either case, it’s important to educate users about selecting a good password.

Poor but common passwords include those based on the following:

- ▶ The names of family members, friends, and pets
- ▶ Favorite books, movies, television shows, or the characters in any of these
- ▶ Telephone numbers, street addresses, or Social Security numbers
- ▶ Any other meaningful personal information

By default, some distributions employ a user groups strategy and others use a project groups strategy. In the latter case, most users are in a group called users or something similar by default.

Be sure to follow the advice in this section yourself, especially for the root password!

- ▶ Any single word that's found in a dictionary (in *any* language)
- ▶ Any simple keyboard or alphanumeric combination, such as qwerty or 123456

The best possible passwords are random collections of letters, digits, and punctuation. Unfortunately, such passwords are difficult to remember. A reasonable compromise is to build a password in two steps:

1. Choose a base that's easy to remember but difficult to guess.
2. Modify that base in ways that increase the difficulty of guessing the password.

One approach to building a base is to use two or more *unrelated* words, such as *bun* and *pen*. You can then merge these two words (bunpen). Another approach, and one that's arguably better than the first, is to use the first letters of a phrase that's meaningful to the user. For instance, the first letters of "yesterday I went to the dentist" become yiwttD. In both cases, the base should not be a word in any language. As a general rule, the longer the password, the better.

With the base in hand, it's time to modify it to create a password. The user should apply at least a couple of several possible modifications:

**Adding Numbers or Punctuation** One important change is to insert random numbers or punctuation in the base. This step might yield, for instance, bu3npe?n or y+i9wttD. As a general rule, add at least two symbols or numbers.

**Mixing Case** Linux uses case-sensitive passwords, so jumbling the case of letters can improve security. Applying this rule might produce Bu3nPE?n and y+i9WttD, for instance.

**Reversing Order** A change that's very weak by itself but that can add to security when used in conjunction with the others is to reverse the order of some or all letters. You might apply this to just one word of a two-word base. This could yield Bu3nn?EP and DttW9i+y, for instance.

**Growing the Haystack** A would-be intruder's task of discovering a password has been likened to finding a needle in a haystack. One way to make this task harder is to increase the size of the haystack. In password terms, this means making a password larger. You can do this by using larger words or phrases, of course, but this can make a password harder to remember and type. Even a size increase that simply repeats a single character can be helpful. Thus you might turn the passwords into Bu3nn?EPiiiiiiiiii or Dtt!!!!!!!!!!!!W9i+y.

Many distributions place lower limits on password length, such as 6 or 8 characters.

Your best tool for getting users to pick good passwords is to educate them. Here are some insights to share with users:

- ▶ Passwords can be guessed by malicious individuals who know them or even who target them and look up personal information on social media, web-based telephone directories, business profiles, and so on.
- ▶ Although Linux salts and hashes its passwords internally, programs exist that feed entire dictionaries through Linux's password salting/hashing algorithms for comparison to a Linux system's passwords. If a match is found, the password has been found.
- ▶ User accounts might be used as a first step toward compromising the entire computer or as a launching point for attacks on other computers.
- ▶ Users should *never* reveal their passwords to others, even people claiming to be system administrators. This is a common scam, because real system administrators don't need users' passwords.
- ▶ The same password should not be used on multiple systems, because doing so quickly turns a compromised account on one computer into a compromised account on all of them.
- ▶ Writing passwords down or emailing them are both risky practices. Writing a password on a sticky note stuck to the computer's monitor is particularly foolish.

▶ Spam emails sometimes try to trick users into revealing passwords by claiming that an email, banking, or other account has been deactivated or compromised.

Telling your users these things will help them understand the reasons for your concern, and it's likely to help motivate at least some of them to pick good passwords.

### **DON'T USE THESE PASSWORDS!**

If you do a web search on **common passwords** or a similar phrase, you'll quickly discover websites that provide surveys showing the most typical and easily guessed passwords that security researchers have uncovered. Details vary from one survey to another, but typically common passwords include the following:

- ▶ 123456
- ▶ password
- ▶ 12345678

- ▶ qwerty
- ▶ football
- ▶ monkey
- ▶ 1234
- ▶ baseball
- ▶ dragon

Such passwords are easily discovered by brute-force password-guessing programs and are included in collections of passwords distributed on the Internet. Using such a password is barely better than using no password at all. Do yourself a favor and create a better one!

## Creating Accounts Using GUI Tools

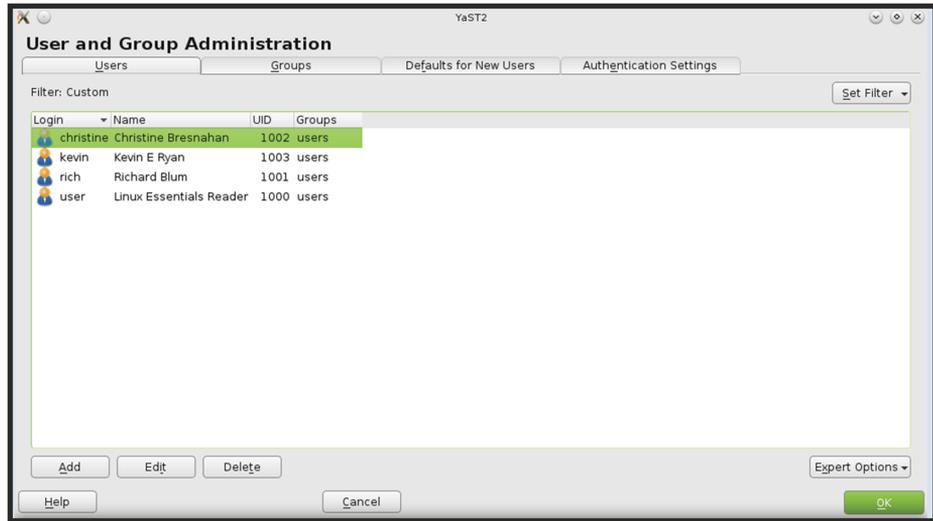
Now that you have some idea of what type of group policy you want to use and how to create a good password, you can begin creating accounts. Some distributions will allow you to accomplish this task, at least partially, via a GUI tool. However, such tools vary from one Linux distribution to another. Important variations include how you access these tools and the tool names. On several distributions, using the desktop's search utility such as Ubuntu's Dash, you can type in **user** to find the appropriate account creation utility. On other distributions, you will need to navigate through the desktop menus to locate the correct tool. The utility's name may be something similar to Users, User Accounts, or User and Group Administration.

As an example of a GUI user account management tool, Figure 13.1 shows openSUSE's User and Group Administration utility. You can do a great deal more than add accounts with this particular utility. However, the focus here is on creating accounts.

To add a user with User and Group Administration, follow these steps:

1. Click the Add button. The result is the New Local User dialog box shown in Figure 13.2.
2. Type the user's full name in the User's Full Name field. This entry is stored in the comment field of `/etc/passwd` and may be displayed in various tools; for instance, it appears in some desktop environments when a user logs into the desktop.

When you launch the User and Group Administration utility, a dialog box will appear and ask you to type in the root account's password before you can proceed. It will then go through an initialization screen before the utility screen shown in Figure 13.1 appears.



**FIGURE 13.1:** The openSUSE User and Group Administration utility provides many options for creating and managing accounts.



**FIGURE 13.2:** You can enter all of the basic account information with the New Local User dialog box.

If the user is present when you create the account, you can have the user type the password at this point.

3. Type the username in the Username field. This is what the user will type at Linux login prompts.
4. Type the password twice, once in the Password field and again in the Confirm Password field.

- In most cases, you can click OK at this point, because the default values for the remaining options are usually fine.

The new account will appear in the Users tab list. You can subsequently modify or delete it, as described later in this chapter, should the need arise.

## Creating Accounts from the Shell

With any distribution, you use the `useradd` utility to create an account from the command line. To use this utility, you type its name and the username that you want to associate with a new account. You may also include options between `useradd` and the username, as summarized in Table 13.1.

**TABLE 13.1:** Options for `useradd`

Option name	Option abbreviation	Effect
<code>--comment</code> <i>comment</i>	<code>-c</code>	This parameter specifies the comment field for the user. (GUI tools generally describe this as the “full name.”)
<code>--home</code> <i>home-dir</i>	<code>-d</code>	You specify the account’s home directory with this parameter. It defaults to <code>/home/username</code> .
<code>--expiredate</code> <i>expire-date</i>	<code>-e</code>	You set the date on which the account will be disabled, expressed in the form <code>YYYY-MM-DD</code> , with this option. The default is for an account that does not expire.
<code>--inactive</code> <i>inactive-days</i>	<code>-f</code>	This parameter sets the number of days after a password expires, after which the account becomes completely disabled. A value of <code>-1</code> disables this feature and is the default.
<code>--gid</code> <i>default-group</i>	<code>-g</code>	You set the name or GID of the user’s default group with this option. The default for this value is a new group named after the user.
<code>--groups</code> <i>group[,...]</i>	<code>-G</code>	This parameter sets the names or GIDs of groups to which the user belongs—more than one may be specified by separating them with commas.
<code>--create-home</code>	<code>-m</code>	When this option is included, <code>useradd</code> creates a home directory for the user. This option is typically enabled by default.

(Continues)

Certification  
Objective

On Debian-based distributions, such as Ubuntu, you can use a friendlier front-end to the `useradd` utility via typing `adduser`. Be aware that on some distributions, such as Fedora, the `adduser` command, if available, is not a front-end to the `useradd` utility, but rather a link to it.

TABLE 13.1 (Continued)

Option name	Option abbreviation	Effect
<code>--skel</code> <i>skeleton-dir</i>	-k	Normally, default user configuration files are copied from <code>/etc/skel</code> , but you may specify another template directory with this option, which is valid only in conjunction with <code>-m</code> .
None	-M	This option forces the system not to automatically create a home directory.
<code>--shell</code> <i>shell</i>	-s	You set the name of the user's default login shell with this option. The default is <code>/bin/bash</code> .
<code>--uid</code> <i>UID</i>	-u	This parameter creates an account with the specified user ID value ( <i>UID</i> ).
<code>--non-unique</code>	-o	This parameter enables a single UID number to be reused; this option is passed when creating the second or subsequent account that reuses a UID.
<code>--system</code>	-r	This parameter specifies the creation of a system account. <code>useradd</code> doesn't create a home directory for system accounts, and it gives them UID values below 100.
<code>--no-user-group</code>	-N	This option disables creation of a group for the user.

You can add a password with the `useradd` command's `-p` option. However, for security reasons, this is not recommended. It is better to use the `passwd` command, as described later in this chapter.



The `useradd` command supports additional options; consult its man page for details.



You might want to specify a UID to keep these values synchronized across computers that share files with the Network File System (NFS), which identifies file ownership via UIDs.



Some of these options aren't readily accessible when creating accounts using GUI tools, but the details differ from one GUI utility to another. In some cases, options can be set in a GUI utility *after* the account has been created, but not when creating it.

A complete `useradd` command, including setting a few options, looks like this:

```
$ sudo useradd -m -c "Samantha Bresnahan" -u 1012 samantha
root's password:
```

This example creates an account with a username `samantha`, a home directory, a comment field containing the user's full name, and a UID of 1012. Notice in the preceding example that the `sudo` command was used to obtain superuser privileges, required to complete this command successfully. If you were logged into the root account, `sudo` would not be needed.

When you create an account with `useradd`, it will be in a *locked* state—the user will not be able to log in. To unlock it, you must use the `passwd` command, as described next, in “Modifying Accounts.”

Behind the scenes, `useradd` (or by extension its GUI front-ends) modifies the contents of the following files (described in detail in Chapter 12.):

```
/etc/passwd
```

```
/etc/shadow
```

```
/etc/group
```

If you use `-create-home` or `-m`, or if this option is used by default, the program creates a home directory and copies files from `/etc/skel` to that location. Creating an account will also usually create a mail spool file in which the user’s incoming email will be stored. (This file may go unused on many desktop systems, but it can be important if you run mail server software on the computer.) Thus you can see that `useradd` makes quite a few modifications to your computer’s files and directories in creating the account.

Certification  
Objective

Certification  
Objective

## Modifying Accounts

As you’ve just learned, you can specify many options that affect accounts, such as giving an account a specific UID number, when creating an account. Sometimes, though, it’s necessary to change account options after an account has been created. Fortunately, Linux provides both GUI and text-mode tools to help you do this. Before delving into operational details of these tools, though, you should understand when you might want to make changes to accounts and know how to check whether a user is currently logged in.

## Deciding When to Modify Accounts

In an ideal world, you’ll create your accounts perfectly every time; however, sometimes this isn’t possible. You might lack information that’s necessary to create a perfectly tuned account (such as the length of time an employee will be with a company), or your needs might change after the account has been created. Some common specific causes of account changes include (but are by no means limited to) the following:

- ▶ Account expiration data may need to be updated. A contract employee might have their contract extended, for instance. Sometimes an expired account must be re-enabled.

- ▶ UID numbers may need to be synchronized with other computers in order to facilitate file sharing across computers or for other reasons.
- ▶ Users' home directories might change because you've added disk space and need to move some users' home directories to a new location.
- ▶ A user might forget a password. The system administrator can change the password for any account without knowing the original password, so system administrators frequently have to help out users with faulty memories.

When working in a GUI, many of the preceding changes can be handled from the distribution's GUI account management tool. When working in a text-mode shell, though, you'll need to master a few different programs to handle this range of account modifications.

## Checking for Logged-in Users

Be aware that some account changes could be disruptive if the user is logged in at the moment that you perform them. Changing the account's username and home directory, in particular, are likely to cause problems. Thus you should make such changes only when the user is logged out. Several tools can help you check who's using the computer and thus avoid problems:

▶  
For a quick and simple list of who's using the computer, most distributions offer the `users` command as well.

**who** This utility, described in Chapter 12, produces a list of users who are currently logged into the computer, along with some details of their login sessions, such as their terminal identifiers and login dates.

**w** This command, also described in Chapter 12, is similar to `who` in broad strokes, but it provides different details. Most notably, it identifies the program that's currently running in each session.

**last** This program produces a list of recent login sessions, including their starting and ending times, or a notice that the user is still logged in:

```
$ last
jennie  tty3          Sun Jan  8 12:43  still logged in
jennie  tty3          Sun Jan  8 12:43-12:43  (00:00)
jennie  tty2          Sun Jan  8 12:36  still logged in
jennie  tty2          Sun Jan  8 12:36-12:36  (00:00)
```

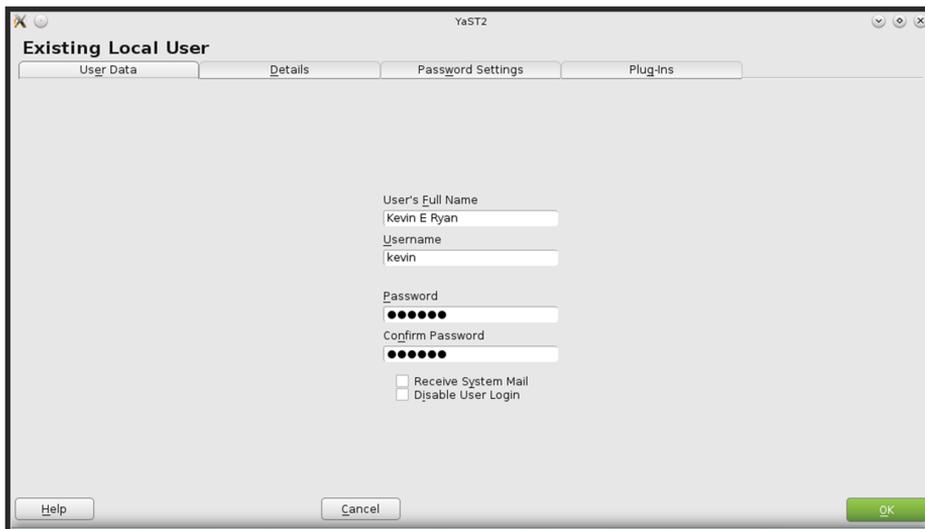
One notable limitation of `last` is that it includes only text-mode logins. This makes its utility for identifying users who are currently using the computer rather limited, since some users are likely to be logged in using a GUI session.

The last command displays data that is stored in the `/var/log/wtmp` file. You should be aware that some distributions do not create this file by default. See the last command's man pages for more information.

## Modifying Accounts Using GUI Tools

As with adding accounts, the procedure for modifying accounts using GUI tools varies from one tool to another. Most GUI tools provide similar options, although some are more complete than others. In this section, how to modify accounts using openSUSE's User and Group Administration utility is shown.

To make such changes, after you have the User and Group Administration utility open, you should click the account and then click the Edit button. The result is a dialog box similar to the one shown in Figure 13.3. This dialog box presents account properties. Each of the four tabs provides access to particular types of data:



**FIGURE 13.3** The Existing Local User dialog box enables you to edit a wide variety of account properties.

**User Data** As shown in Figure 13.3, you can adjust the account's comment field (identified as User's Full Name), the username, and the password. If you type a weak password, the program warns you of this fact and asks for confirmation before accepting it.

The `lastb` command displays information similar to `last`, but it displays only failed login attempts and pulls its data from `/var/log/btmp`.

Some GUI account management utilities do *not* rename or move the user's home directory on the disk; you may have to do this manually with `mv`.

If you want to add the user to an entirely new group, you must first create the new group, as described in the upcoming section "Managing Groups."

**Details** This tab provides several options: you can change the default shell (called the Login Shell in this utility); add the account to additional groups; modify the primary group (called the Default Group in this utility); and so on.

▶  
Locking an account's password prevents logins but doesn't completely disable the account.

**Password Settings** This tab enables you to manage password expiration and modification data. This information is distinct from account expiration data in that an expired account becomes completely disabled, whereas the user can reset an expired password, at least for a while. You can set various change values, such as the number of days after a password change before the user must change the password again. It also displays the date when the password was last changed.

**Plug-ins** This tab allows you to manage user disk quotas, if enabled for your system. Additional utilities may be available in this tab, such as LDAP, depending on your system's configuration.

Users can change their own passwords by using GUI options in their desktop environments. For instance, on Fedora within the Users utility, a user can select their account name from the My Account box and click the password (displayed as a series of dots) to launch the Change Password screen, as shown in Figure 13.4. Administrators can also use this tool to add and modify accounts.

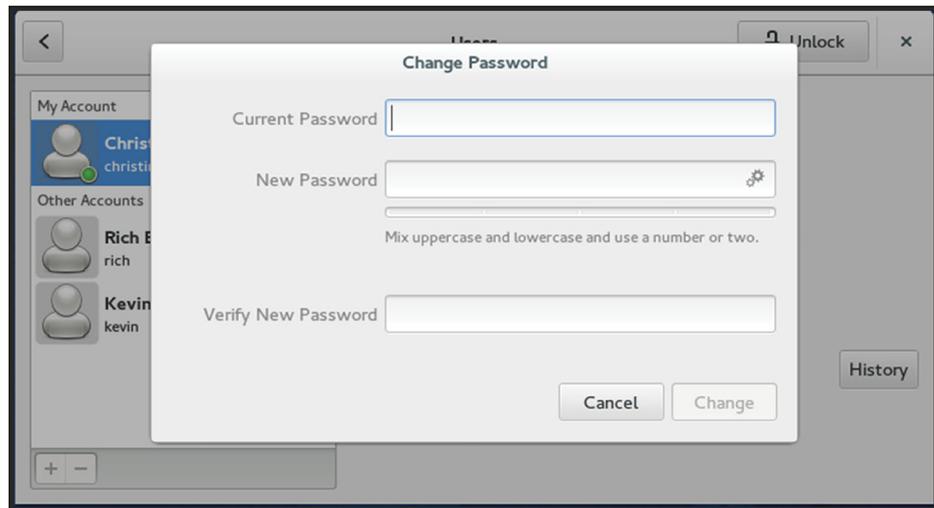


FIGURE 13.4: The Users utility enables users to change their own passwords.

## Modifying Accounts from the Shell

One of the most frequent account modifications is to change a user’s password, either as part of account creation or because a user has forgotten their password. You can make this change with the `passwd` program. Ordinary users can type `passwd` to change their own passwords, but not other user accounts’ passwords. The super user, however, can pass a username to the command to change any account’s password:

```
# passwd kevin
Changing password for user kevin.
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: all authentication tokens updated successfully.
```

As a security measure, the password that you type does not echo to the screen as you type it. If the passwords you type don’t match, the program refuses to accept your change and prompts you again for a fresh pair of passwords. The program also checks the password’s strength and may refuse to accept the new password or display a warning message if it deems the password to be too weak. Notice in the preceding example that the # prompt is shown, indicating that someone has logged into the root account in order to obtain super user privileges, which are required to complete this command successfully.

You can handle most other account modifications by using the `usermod` program. This command works much like `useradd`, but instead of creating a new account, it modifies an existing one. Table 13.2 summarizes the most important `usermod` options.

Certification Objective

In addition to setting passwords, the `passwd` utility enables you to adjust password expiration and aging options. Consult its man page for details.

Certification Objective

**TABLE 13.2: Options for `usermod`**

Option name	Option abbreviation	Effect
<code>--append</code>	<code>-a</code>	Used with <code>--groups (-G)</code> , causes the specified groups to be added to, rather than replace, the existing set of groups for the user.
<code>--comment <i>comment</i></code>	<code>-c</code>	This parameter specifies the comment field for the user. (GUI tools generally describe this as the “full name.”)
<code>--home <i>home-dir</i></code>	<code>-d</code>	You specify the account’s home directory with this parameter. It defaults to <code>/home/username</code> .

(Continues)

TABLE 13.2 (Continued)

Option name	Option abbreviation	Effect
<code>--expiredate</code> <i>expire-date</i>	-e	You set the date on which the account will be disabled, expressed in the form <i>YYYY-MM-DD</i> , with this option. The default is for an account that does not expire.
<code>--inactive</code> <i>inactive-days</i>	-f	This parameter sets the number of days after a password expires, after which the account becomes completely disabled. A value of -1 disables this feature and is the default.
<code>--gid</code> <i>default-group</i>	-g	You set the name or GID of the user's default group with this option. The default for this value is a new group named after the user.
<code>--groups</code> <i>group[,...]</i>	-G	This parameter sets the names or GIDs of groups to which the user belongs—more than one may be specified by separating them with commas.
<code>--login</code> <i>username</i>	-l	Changes the account's username to the specified value.
<code>--lock</code>	-L	Locks the account's password, preventing logins.
<code>--move-home</code>	-m	When this option is included with <code>--home (-d)</code> , <code>usermod</code> moves the user's existing home directory to the new location.
<code>--shell</code> <i>shell</i>	-s	You set the name of the user's default shell with this option.
<code>--uid</code> <i>UID</i>	-u	This parameter changes the account's UID number to the specified value.
<code>--non-unique</code>	-o	This parameter enables a single UID number to be reused. (Use it in conjunction with <code>--uid/-u</code> .)
<code>--unlock</code>	-U	This option unlocks a locked account password.

▶ Many `usermod` options are identical to `useradd` options.

For example, consider the following use of `usermod`:

```
# usermod -u 1072 -m -d /home2/kevin kevin
```

This command makes three changes to the `kevin` account:

- ▶ It changes the UID value to 1072.
- ▶ It changes the account's home directory to `/home2/kevin`.

- ▶ It moves the contents of the account's original home directory to its new location.

You might issue a command like this one if you were migrating user accounts to an NFS server mounted at `/home2`. Such a change might require a new home directory location and a change in the UID value to match the one used on the NFS server.

You should be careful when making changes to the UID value because, although `usermod` changes the UID values of files in common locations such as the user's home directory and email files, it can miss user files in unusual locations.

If you need to make group changes that require adding new groups, consult the upcoming section, "Managing Groups," for information on that topic.

## Deleting Accounts

Deleting accounts can sometimes be as important as adding or modifying them. Unused accounts can be abused, either by their former owners or by others who might be able to break into an account if it has a weak password. Thus you should routinely delete unused accounts. Before you do so, though, you should understand what happens when you delete an account and decide precisely how to do it, lest you create problems by deleting an account in an inappropriate way. With that knowledge in hand, you can delete accounts by using either GUI or text-mode tools.

### Avoiding Account-Deletion Pitfalls

Deleting an account may sound simple enough, but a mistake can cause problems, either immediately or in the future. In addition to obvious issues such as accidentally deleting the wrong account, you should consider two factors:

**User File Preservation** Users' files might be extremely valuable, either to the users themselves or to the organization that owns the computer. Thus you should check your company's file retention policies when considering whether to delete the user's home directory or do something else with it, such as move it into another user's home directory and change permissions on the files it contains. The same is true of the user's mail queue (normally stored in `/var/spool/mail/username`, where *username* is the username).



The `--move-home (-m)` option will be quick when the move is on a single low-level filesystem but potentially slow when it crosses filesystem boundaries.

Consider archiving a deleted account's home directory to a long-term backup medium. This will enable you to recover the files should they become valuable in the future.



**UID and GID Reuse** When an account is deleted, the account's UID and GID become available for reuse. In many cases, these numbers will not be reused, since Linux assigns these values based on the highest current value. Thus if you delete any but the highest-numbered current user, the user's old UID and GID numbers won't be reused unless intervening accounts are also deleted. Nonetheless, if a UID is *reused*, any files previously owned by the old user will suddenly appear to be owned by the new user. This might not cause any problems, but it might cause confusion about who created the files. In some cases, it could even cause suspicion of wrongdoing by the new user (if the old files contain information the new user shouldn't have, or if they reside in directories to which the new user shouldn't have access).

If you want to avoid any chance of confusion or misbehavior claims falling on new users due to UID or GID reuse, you can use the `find` command (covered in detail in Chapter 8 "Searching, Extracting, and Archiving Data") to locate all files with particular UID or GID values, using the `-uid` and `-gid` options, as in:

```
# find / -uid 1004
```

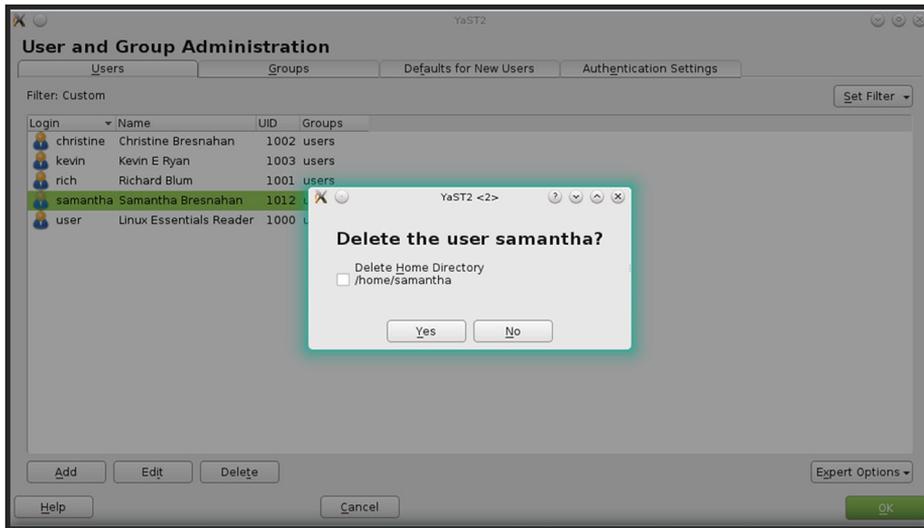
This example finds all files on the computer with a UID of 1004. (Searching on a GID works the same way, but using the `-gid` option.) You can then reassign ownership of these files by using the `chown` command (covered in Chapter 14) or delete them. Ordinarily, you'd issue this command only after deleting or reassigning ownership of the user's home directory, since that directory will probably contain far too many matching files.

## Deleting Accounts Using GUI Tools

As with other account management tasks, using a GUI is fairly intuitive, but details vary from one distribution to another. As an example, to delete an account from openSUSE's User and Group Administration utility, after you have the utility open, you should click the account and then click the Delete button. The result is a confirmation dialog box similar to the one shown in Figure 13.5. Check or uncheck the box to delete the user's home directory as you see fit and, if you're certain of the action, click the Yes button. The account will be immediately deleted.

If the user is currently logged in, the utility typically will complain about this fact in the confirmation dialog box. You'll still be able to delete the account, but the user won't be logged out immediately.

You can issue this command as a non-root user, but it will return errors and it may miss some files. Thus it's best to do this with superuser privileges.



**FIGURE 13.5:** When you delete an account with a GUI utility, you may be able to optionally delete the user's home directory.

If the user has many files, and if you opt to delete those files, the deletion operation may take several seconds, or even minutes, to complete.

## Deleting Accounts from the Shell

The `userdel` command deletes accounts from a text-mode shell. In its simplest form, you pass it a username and nothing more:

```
$ sudo userdel samantha
root's password:
```

The program doesn't prompt you for confirmation; it just deletes the account. It does not, however, delete the user's home directory by default. To have it do so, pass it the `--remove (-r)` option.

If the user is currently logged in, `userdel` notifies you of that fact and does nothing. You can pass it the `--force (-f)` option to delete the account even though it's in use. To both force account deletion and remove the user's files, you can pass both options:

```
$ sudo userdel -rf samantha
root's password:
userdel: user samantha is currently logged in
```

The program still complains about the user being logged in, but it deletes the account and files just the same.

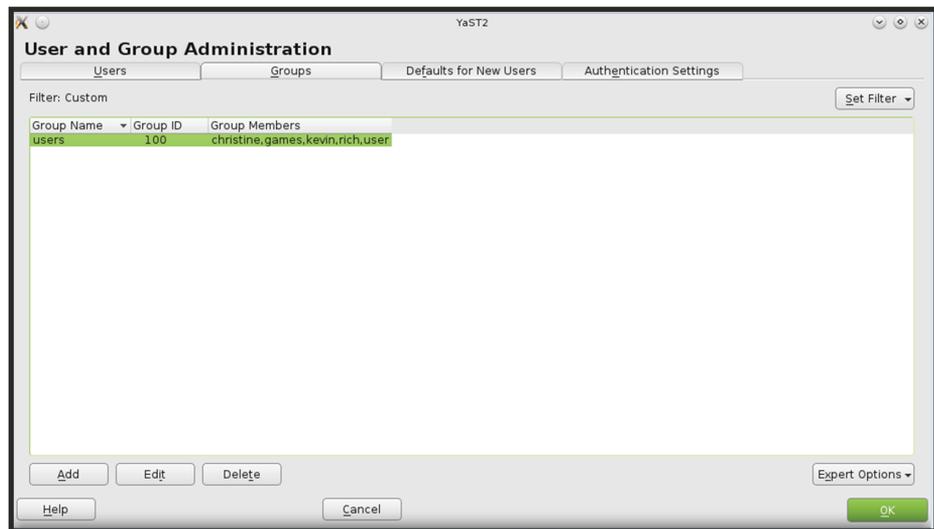
Notice that in the `userdel` examples, the `sudo` command is used to obtain super-user privileges, which are required to complete this command successfully. If you were logged into the root account, `sudo` would not be needed.

## Managing Groups

In many respects, groups are comparable to accounts. They're defined in similar files and managed with similar utilities. Groups are also tied to accounts, in that accounts include group definitions. Until now, it has been assumed that you'll be using standard groups or the groups that are defined as part of account creation. Sometimes, though, you need to create, delete, or modify groups for specific purposes, such as if you use a project group strategy. As with account management, you can do this using either GUI or text-mode tools.

### Managing Groups Using GUI Tools

Many GUI account maintenance tools, such as openSUSE's User and Group Administration utility, provide group management tools that are similar to the user management tools described throughout this chapter. Referring back to Figure 13.1, you'll see that the User and Group Administration window includes both Users and Groups tabs. To manage groups, click the Groups tab. This produces a display resembling Figure 13.6.

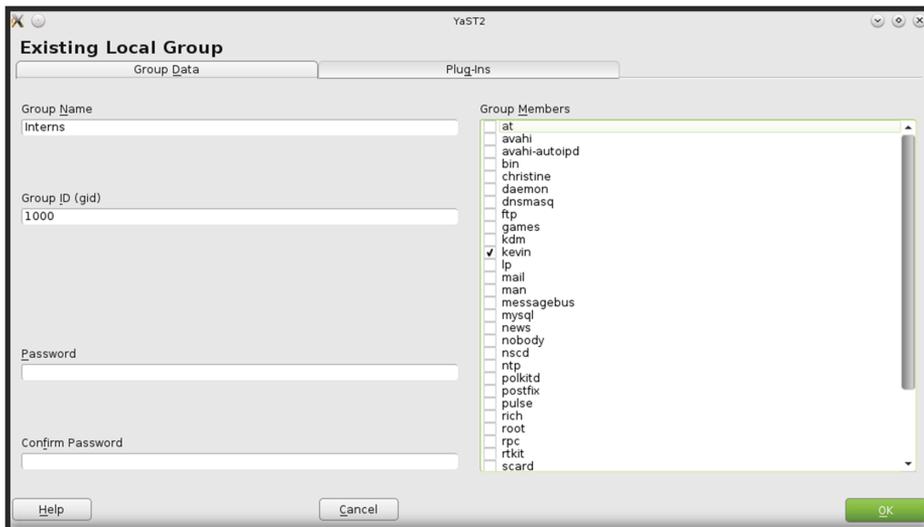


**FIGURE 13.6:** The User and Group Administration utility enables you to manage groups as well as users.

You can add, modify, and delete groups in a manner that's comparable to adding, modifying, and deleting accounts, though the number of options available

may be much smaller. Groups don't have home directories, comment fields, login shells, and so on. You might, of course, want specific users to be members of your new group from the start. To do so, follow these steps:

1. Create a group by clicking the Add button within the Group tab.
2. Specify the group name and GID in the resulting dialog box.
3. Add group members by putting a check mark (click in the box) next to the account name, as shown in Figure 13.7.



**FIGURE 13.7:** You can add users to a group when creating the group.

4. Complete the group's addition by clicking the OK button.

Alternatively, you can manage group membership by altering each user's group membership individually, as described next in "Managing Groups from the Shell."

## Managing Groups from the Shell

You can create groups from the shell by using the `groupadd` command, which works much like `useradd` for users but takes a smaller set of options, the most important of which appear in Table 13.3. Consult the program's man pages for information on more-obscure options.

TABLE 13.3: Options for groupadd

Option name	Option abbreviation	Effect
<code>--gid <i>GID</i></code>	<code>-g</code>	You can provide a specific GID with this parameter. If you omit it, <code>groupadd</code> uses the next available GID.
<code>--non-unique</code>	<code>-o</code>	Normally, the GID that you specify must be unused by other groups, but the <code>-o</code> parameter overrides this behavior, enabling you to create multiple groups that share one GID.
<code>--system</code>	<code>-r</code>	This parameter instructs <code>groupadd</code> to create a system group, which is one with a GID of less than 500 or 1,000, depending on the distribution. Nonsystem groups are normally used as user private groups.
<code>--force</code>	<code>-f</code>	Normally, if you try to create a group that already exists, <code>groupadd</code> returns an error message. This parameter suppresses that error message.

Using the `groupadd` command, including setting an option, looks like this:

```
# groupadd -g 1001 consultants
```

This example creates a group with a GID of 1001 and a group name of `consultants`. Notice in the preceding example that the `#` prompt is shown, indicating that the root account was used to obtain the superuser privileges required to complete this command successfully.

Once the group is added, new members can be added to the group. This requires the use of the `usermod` command, as follows:

```
# usermod -aG consultants rich
#
# groups rich
rich: users consultants
```

The `-aG` options were used together to add the account, `rich`, to the new `consultants` group. If the `-a` option was not used, the `rich` account would be *removed* from its current group memberships and belong only to the `consultants` group. A good habit is to check if the modification was successful by using the `groups` command. The `groups` command shows all of the group memberships for the specified user account.

To modify the group itself, you can use the `groupmod` command. The `--gid (-g)` and `--non-unique (-o)` options from Table 13.3 can be used with this command, as well as `--new-name name (-n name)`, which changes the group's name.



Deleting groups from the shell entails use of the `groupdel` command, which takes a group name as a single option, as in `groupdel consultants` to delete the consultants group.

## THE WHEEL GROUP

Linux distributions invariably provide several groups by default. One of these, `wheel` (on some distributions), is particularly important for system administration. Members of the `wheel` group are granted certain special administrative privileges, such as the right to use the `sudo` command. The group name comes from the slang term *big wheel*, which refers to an important person.

Not all distributions provide this particular group. You can type `grep wheel /etc/group` to determine if the `wheel` group exists on your distribution.

Some distributions enable you to add your primary user account to the `wheel` group when you install the OS. Be aware that this phrasing is not used often; instead, the installer asks if you want to add the account to the “administrators group” or some similar term.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

In a GUI environment, you can perform most common account maintenance tasks with GUI tools, which enable you to add, modify, and delete accounts by selecting options from menus and lists. Some operations, however, require you to use command-line tools, such as `useradd`, `usermod`, `userdel`, and `passwd`. (The `groupadd`, `groupmod`, and `groupdel` commands provide similar functionality for groups.) Even if you don’t need to use the more obscure features provided by the text-mode tools, they can be quicker to use than the GUI tools once you’re familiar with them.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ Create a test account by using the GUI tool provided by your distribution, and then log into the account that you’ve created to verify that it’s working as you expected.
- ▶ Create another test account by using `useradd`, but do *not* use `passwd` to set its password. Were you able to log in? Use `passwd` to create a password for the new test account and try logging in again.

(Continues)

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)***REVIEW QUESTIONS**

1. What would a Linux system administrator type to remove the nemo account *and* its home directory?
  - A. `userdel nemo`
  - B. `userdel -f nemo`
  - C. `userdel -r nemo`
  - D. `rm /home/nemo`
  - E. `rm -r /home/nemo`
2. Of the following, which is the *best* password?
  - A. LinusTorvalds
  - B. uB2op%4q+++++
  - C. 123456
  - D. password
  - E. peanutbuttersandwich
3. Describe the effect of the following command, assuming that it completes successfully:  

```
# groupadd henry
```

  - A. It creates a new group called henry.
  - B. It adds the user henry to the current default group.
  - C. It imports group information from the file called henry.
  - D. It changes the user's default group to henry.
  - E. It adds the group henry to the user's list of groups.
4. True or false: User accounts have higher UID numbers than do system accounts.
5. True or false: Command-line users should normally use `usermod` to change their passwords.
6. True or false: After deleting an account, files formerly owned by the deleted account may remain on the computer.
7. You want to create an account for a new user, using the username `theo` and giving the user a UID of 1926. The command to do this is `useradd _____`.
8. You want to change the username of a user from `e1211` to `emilyn`, without altering anything else about the account. To do so, you would type \_\_\_\_\_.
9. To create a system group, you must pass the \_\_\_\_\_ option to `groupadd`.
10. Information on various groups, such as group name, GID, and group members is stored in the \_\_\_\_\_ file. (The answer should be an absolute file reference.)

# Setting Ownership and Permissions

As a *multiuser OS*, Linux provides tools to help you secure your files against unwanted access—after all, you wouldn't want another user to read your personal files or even delete your work files, whether accidentally or intentionally. Linux handles these tasks through two features of files and directories: their *ownership* and their *permissions*. Every file has an associated owner (an account with which it's linked) and also an associated group. Three sets of permissions define what the file's owner, members of the file's group, and all other users can do with the file. Thus ownership and permissions are intertwined, although you use different text-mode commands to manipulate them. (GUI tools often combine the two, as described in this chapter.)

- ▶ **Setting ownership**
- ▶ **Setting permissions**

## Setting Ownership

Linux's security model is based on that of Unix, which was designed as a multiuser OS. This security model therefore assumes the presence of multiple users on the computer, and it provides the means to associate individual files with the users who create them—that is, files have *owners*. You should thoroughly understand this concept, and with that understanding, you can change a file's ownership, using either a GUI file manager or a text-mode shell.

Ownership also applies to running programs (or *processes*). Most programs that you run are tied to the account that you used to launch them. This identity, in conjunction with the file's ownership and permissions, determines whether a program may modify a file.

▶ The *set user ID (SUID)* and *set group ID (SGID)* permission bits, described later in "Using Special Execute Permissions," can modify the account and group associated with a program.

## Understanding Ownership

Chapter 12, “Understanding Basic Security,” and Chapter 13, “Creating Users and Groups,” described Linux’s system of accounts. These accounts are the basis of file ownership. Specifically, every file has an owner—an account with which it’s associated. This association occurs by means of the account’s *user ID (UID)* number. Every file is also associated with a *group* by means of a *group ID (GID)* number.

As described later, in the section “Setting Permissions,” access to the file is controlled by means of permissions that can be set independently for the file’s owner, the file’s group, and all other users of the computer. As *root*, you can change the owner and group of any file. The file’s owner can also change the file’s group, but only to a group to which the user belongs.

The same principles of ownership apply to directories as apply to files: directories have owners and groups. These can be changed by *root* or, to a more limited extent, by the directory’s owner.

### CROSS-INSTALLATION UIDS AND GIDS

You may use multiple Linux installations, either dual-booting on one computer or installed on multiple computers. If you do, and if you transfer files from one installation to another, you may find that the ownership of files seems to change as you move them around. The same thing can happen with non-Linux Unix-like OSs, such as Mac OS X. The reason is that the filesystems for these OSs store ownership and group information by using UID and GID numbers, and a single user or group can have different UID or GID numbers on different computers, even if the name associated with the account or group is identical.

This problem is most likely to occur when using native Linux or Unix filesystems to transfer data, including both disk-based filesystems (such as Linux’s ext2fs or Mac OS X’s HFS+) or the Network File System (NFS) for remote file access. This problem is less likely to occur if you use a non-Linux/Unix filesystem, such as the File Allocation Table (FAT) or the New Technology File System (NTFS) for disks, or the Server Message Block/Common Internet File System (SMB/CIFS—handled by Samba in Linux) for network access.

If you run into this problem, several solutions exist, but many of them are beyond the scope of this book. One that you can use, though, is to change the UID or GID mappings on one or more installations so that they all match. Chapter 13 describes how to change a user’s UID number with `usermod` and how to change a group’s GID number with `groupmod`. When transferring data via removable disks, using FAT or NTFS can be a simple solution, provided that you don’t need to preserve Unix-style permissions on the files.

## Setting Ownership in a File Manager

As described in Chapter 4, “Using Common Linux Programs,” a *file manager* enables you to manipulate files. You’re probably familiar with file managers in Windows or Mac OS X. Linux’s ownership and permissions are different from those of Windows, though, so you may want to know how to check on, and perhaps change, ownership features by using a Linux file manager. As noted in Chapter 4, you have a choice of several file managers in Linux. Most are similar in broad strokes but differ in some details. In this section, we use Nautilus, the default file manager used in the GNOME desktop, as an example.

If you want to change the file’s owner, you must run Nautilus as root, but you can change the file’s group to any group to which you belong as an ordinary user. The procedure to perform this task as root is as follows:

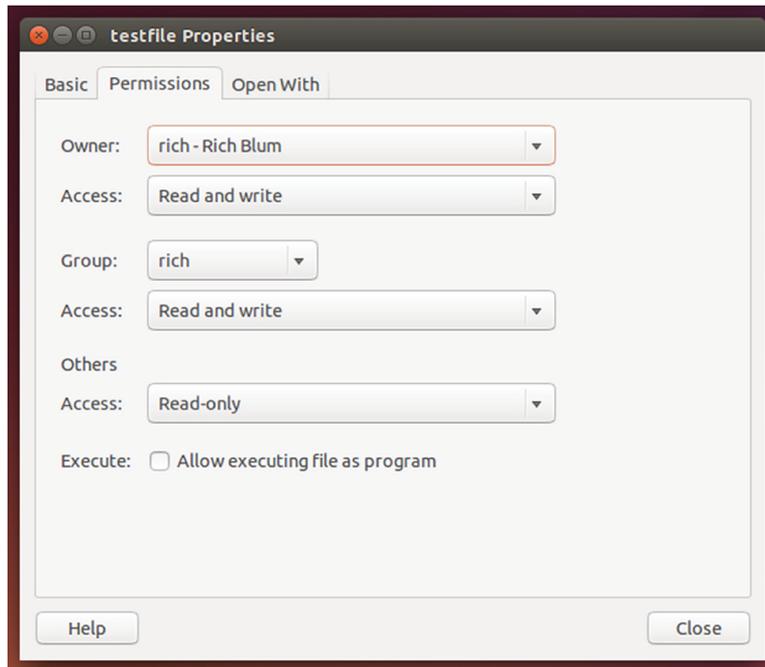
1. Launch a terminal window.
2. In the terminal window, type **su** to acquire root privileges.
3. In the terminal window, type **nautilus** to launch Nautilus. You can optionally include the path to the directory in which you want Nautilus to start up. If you don’t include a path, Nautilus will begin by displaying the contents of the `/root` directory.
4. Locate the file whose ownership you want to adjust and right-click it.
5. In the resulting menu, select Properties. The result is a Properties dialog box.
6. Click the Permissions tab in the Properties dialog box. The result resembles Figure 14.1.
7. To change the file’s owner, select a new owner in the Owner field. This action is possible only if you run Nautilus as `root`.
8. To change the file’s group, select a new group in the Group field. If you run Nautilus as an ordinary user, you will be able to select any group to which you belong, but if you run Nautilus as `root`, you will be able to select any group.
9. When you’ve adjusted the features that you want to change, click Close.

If you want to change a file’s group but not its owner, and if you’re a member of the target group, you can launch Nautilus as an ordinary user. You can then pick up the preceding procedure at step 4.

If you’re using Ubuntu, you may instead need to use `sudo` to launch Nautilus.



The `/root` directory is the root account’s home directory.



**FIGURE 14.1** Linux file managers give you access to the file's ownership and permission metadata.

You should be *extremely* cautious about running Nautilus as root. If you forget that you're running this program as root, you can easily create new files as root, which will require additional root-privilege actions to correct by changing file ownership. It's also easy to delete critical system files accidentally as root, which you could not delete as an ordinary user. For these reasons, we recommend that you use a text-mode shell to adjust file ownership. The change in the prompt makes it easier to notice that you're running as root, and if you're used to using a GUI, you're less likely to launch additional programs as root from a text-mode shell than from Nautilus.

Certification  
Objective

## Setting Ownership in a Shell

The command to change the ownership of a file in the preferred text-mode manner is `chown`. In its most basic form, you pass it the name of a file followed by a username:

```
# chown bob targetfile.odf
```

The `chown` command's name stands for *change owner*.

This example gives ownership of `targetfile.odf` to bob. You can change the file's principal owner and its group with a single command by separating the owner and group with a colon (:):

```
# chown bob:users targetfile.odf
```

This example gives ownership of `targetfile.odf` to bob and associates the file with the `users` group. To change the group without changing the owner, you can omit the owner, leaving the colon and group name:

```
$ chown:users targetfile.odf
```

Alternatively, you can use the `chgrp` command, which works in the same way but changes *only* the group and does not require the colon before the group name:

```
$ chgrp users targetfile.odf
```

Note that the commands used to change the owner require root privileges, whereas you can change the group as an ordinary user—but only if you own the file and belong to the target group.

The `chown` and `chgrp` commands both support a number of options that modify what they do. The most useful of these is `-R` (or `--recursive`), which causes a change in ownership of all the files in an entire directory tree. For instance, suppose that the user `mary` has left a company, and an existing employee, `bob`, must access her files. If `mary`'s home directory was `/home/mary`, you might type this:

```
# chown -R bob /home/mary
```

This command gives `bob` ownership of the `/home/mary` directory, all the files in the `/home/mary` directory, including all its subdirectories, the files in the subdirectories, and so on. To make the transition a bit easier for `bob`, you might also want to move `mary`'s former home directory into `bob`'s home directory.

## Setting Permissions

File ownership is meaningless without some way to specify what particular users can do with their own or other users' files. That's where permissions enter the picture. Linux's permission structure is modeled after that of Unix, and it requires a bit of explanation before you tackle the issue. Once you understand

the basics, you can begin modifying permissions, using either a GUI file manager or a text-mode shell. You can also set default permissions for new files that you create.

Certification  
Objective

Chapter 6, “Getting to Know the Command Line,” introduced the `ls` command and describes additional `ls` options.

## Understanding Permissions

To understand Unix (and hence Linux) permissions, you may want to begin with the display created by the `ls` command, which lists the files in a directory, in conjunction with its `-l` option, which creates a long directory listing that includes files’ permissions. For instance, to see a long listing of the file `test`, you might type the following:

```
$ ls -l test
-rwxr-xr-x 1 rich users      111 Apr 13 13:48 test
```

This line consists of several sections, which provide assorted pieces of information on the file:

**Permissions** The first column (`-rwxr-xr-x` in this example) is the file’s permissions, which are of interest at the moment.

**Number of Links** The next column (`1` in this example) shows the number of hard links to the file—that is, the number of unique filenames that may be used to access the file.

**Username** The next column (`rich` in this example) identifies the file’s owner by username.

**Group Name** The file’s group (`users` in this example) appears next.

**File Size** This example file’s size is quite small—111 bytes.

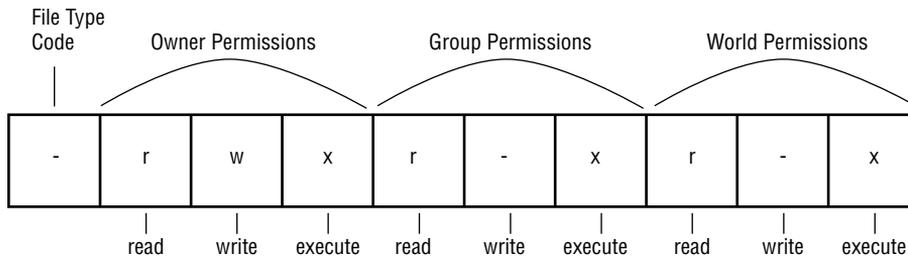
**Time Stamp** The time stamp (`Apr 13 13:48` in this example) identifies the time the file was last modified.

**Filename** Finally, `ls -l` shows the file’s name—`test` in this example.

The string that begins this output (`-rwxr-xr-x` in this example) is a symbolic representation of the permissions string. Figure 14.2 shows how this string is broken into four parts.

**File Type Code** The first character is the file type code, which represents the file’s type, as summarized in Table 14.1. This type character is sometimes omitted from descriptions when the file type is not relevant or when it’s identified in some other way.

Chapter 7, “Managing Files,” describes links in more detail.



**FIGURE 14.2** A symbolic representation of file permissions is broken into four parts.

**TABLE 14.1** Linux file type codes

Code	Name	Meaning
-	Normal data file	May be text, an executable program, graphics, compressed data, or just about any other type of data.
d	Directory	Disk directories are files, but they contain filenames and pointers to those named files' data structures.
l	Symbolic link	The file contains the name of another file or directory. When Linux accesses the symbolic link, it tries to read the linked-to file.
p	Named pipe	A pipe enables two running Linux programs to communicate with each other in a one-way fashion.
s	Socket	A socket is similar to a named pipe, but it permits network and bidirectional links.
b	Block device	A file that corresponds to a hardware device to and from which data is transferred in blocks of more than 1 byte. Disk devices (hard disks, USB flash drives, CD-ROMs, and so on) are common block devices.
c	Character device	A file that corresponds to a hardware device to and from which data is transferred in units of 1 byte. Examples include parallel and RS-232 serial port devices.

Most of the files that you'll manipulate are normal files, directories, and symbolic links.

**Owner Permissions** These permissions determine what the file's owner can do with the file.

**Group Permissions** These permissions determine what members of the file's group (who aren't its owner) can do with the file.

**World (or "Other") Permissions** These permissions determine what users who aren't the file's owner or members of its group can do with the file.

▶ Setting the execute bit on a nonprogram file doesn't turn it into a program, of course; it just indicates that a user may run a file that is a program.

In each of the three sets of permissions, the string identifies the presence or absence of each of three types of access: read, write, and execute. Read and write permissions are fairly self-explanatory. If the execute permission is present, it means that the file may be run as a program. The absence of the permission is denoted by a dash (-) in the permission string. The presence of the permission is indicated by the letter *r* for read, *w* for write, or *x* for execute.

Thus the example permission string `-rwxr-xr-x` means that the file is a normal data file and that its owner, members of the file's group, and all other users can read and execute the file. Only the file's owner has write permission to the file.

Another representation of permissions is possible; it's compact but a bit confusing. It takes each of the three permissions groupings of the permission string (omitting the file type code) and converts it into a number from 0 to 7 (that is, a *base 8* or *octal* number). The result is a three-digit octal number. Each number is constructed by starting with a value of 0 and then:

- ▶ Adding 4 if read permissions are present
- ▶ Adding 2 if write permissions are present
- ▶ Adding 1 if execute permissions are present

The resulting three-digit code represents permissions for the owner, the group, and the world. Table 14.2 shows some examples of common permissions and their meanings.

**TABLE 14.2** Example permissions and their interpretations

Permission string	Octal code	Meaning
<code>rwxrwxrwx</code>	777	Read, write, and execute permissions for all users.
<code>rwxr-xr-x</code>	755	Read and execute permission for all users. The file's owner also has write permission.
<code>rwxr-x---</code>	750	Read and execute permission for the owner and group. The file's owner also has write permission. Other users have no access to the file.

▶ These procedures involve binary numbers and logical, not arithmetic, operations. The arithmetic description is easier to understand, though.

Permission string	Octal code	Meaning
<code>rwX-----</code>	700	Read, write, and execute permissions for the file's owner only; all others have no access.
<code>rw-rw-rw-</code>	666	Read and write permissions for all users. No execute permissions for anybody.
<code>rw-rw-r--</code>	664	Read and write permissions for the owner and group. Read-only permission for all others.
<code>rw-rw----</code>	660	Read and write permissions for the owner and group. No world permissions.
<code>rw-r-r-</code>	644	Read and write permissions for the owner. Read-only permission for all others.
<code>rw-r-----</code>	640	Read and write permissions for the owner, and read-only permission for the group. No permission for others.
<code>rw-----</code>	600	Read and write permissions for the owner. No permission for anybody else.
<code>r-----</code>	400	Read permission for the owner. No permission for anybody else.

There are 512 possible combinations of permissions, so Table 14.2 is incomplete. It shows the most common and useful combinations, though.

Several special cases apply to permissions:

**Directory Execute Bits** Directories use the execute bit to grant permission to search the directory. This is a highly desirable characteristic for directories, so you'll almost always find the execute bit set when the read bit is set.

**Directory Write Permissions** Directories are files that are interpreted in a special way. As such, if a user can write to a directory, that user can create, delete, or rename files in the directory, even if the user isn't the owner of those files and does not have permission to write to those files.

**Symbolic Links** Permissions on symbolic links are always `777` (`rwXrwXrwX`, or `lrwxrwxrwx` to include the file type code). This access applies only to the link file itself, not to the linked-to file. In other words, all users can read the contents of the link to discover the name of the file to which it points, but the permissions on the linked-to file determine its file access. Changing the permissions on a symbolic link affects the linked-to file.

The usual rules for writing to directories can be modified with the *sticky bit*, which is described later in "Using Sticky Bits."

**root** Many of the permission rules don't apply to root. The superuser can read or write any file on the computer—even files that grant access to nobody (that is, those that have 000 permissions). The superuser still needs an execute bit set to run a program file.

## Setting Permissions in a File Manager

The procedure for setting permissions in a file manager is similar to that for setting the ownership of a file:

▶ Details vary in other file managers, but the principles are the same as those described here.

- ▶ You normally adjust these settings by using the same dialog box used to adjust ownership, such as the Nautilus dialog box shown earlier in Figure 14.1.
- ▶ You don't need to be root to adjust the permissions of files that you own.
- ▶ You should use root access for this job only on files that you don't own.

As seen in Figure 14.1, there are three Access items associated with the Owner, the Group, and Others:

- ▶ The Owner item provides two options: Read-Only and Read and Write.
- ▶ The Group and Others items both provide Read-Only and Read and Write plus the None option. You can use these options to set the read and write permission bits on your file.

Nautilus requires setting the execute bit separately, by selecting the Allow Executing File As Program check box. This check box sets all three execute permission bits; you can't control execute permission more precisely with Nautilus. You also can't adjust the execute permissions on directories with Nautilus.

Certification Objective

## Setting Permissions in a Shell

▶ The `chmod` command's name stands for *change mode*, mode being another name for permissions.

In a text-mode shell, you can use `chmod` to change permissions. This command is rather complex, mostly because of the complex ways that permissions may be changed. You can specify the permissions in two forms: as an octal number or in a symbolic form, which is a set of codes related to the string representation of the permissions.

The octal representation of the mode is the same as that described earlier and summarized in Table 14.2. For instance, to change permissions on `report.tex` to `rw-r--r--`, you can issue the following command:

```
$ chmod 644 report.tex
```

A symbolic mode, by contrast, consists of three components:

- ▶ A code indicating the permission set that you want to modify—u for the user (that is, the owner), g for the group, o for other users, and a for all permissions
- ▶ A symbol indicating whether you want to add (+), delete (-), or set the mode equal to (=) the stated value
- ▶ A code specifying what the permission should be, such as the common r, w, or x symbols, or various others for more-advanced operations

Using symbolic modes with `chmod` can be confusing, so we don't describe them fully here; however, you should be familiar with a few common types of use, as summarized in Table 14.3. Symbolic modes are more flexible than octal modes because you can specify symbolic modes that modify existing permissions, such as adding or removing execute permissions without affecting other permissions. You can also set only the user, group, or world permissions without affecting the others. With octal modes, you must set all three permission bits equal to a value that you specify.

As with the `chown` and `chgrp` commands, you can use the `-R` (or `--recursive`) option to `chmod` to have it operate on an entire directory tree.

**TABLE 14.3** Examples of symbolic permissions with `chmod`

Command	Initial permissions	End permissions
<code>chmod a+x bigprogram</code>	<code>rw-r--r--</code>	<code>rwxr-xr-x</code>
<code>chmod ug=rw report.tex</code>	<code>r-----</code>	<code>rw-rw----</code>
<code>chmod o-rwx bigprogram</code>	<code>rw-rwxr-x</code>	<code>rw-rwx---</code>
<code>chmod g-w,o-rw report.tex</code>	<code>rw-rw-rw-</code>	<code>rw-r-----</code>

## Setting the umask

The *user mask*, or *umask*, determines the default permissions for new files. The umask is the value that is *removed* from 666 (`rw-rw-rw-`) permissions when creating new files, or from 777 (`rw-rwxrwx`) when creating new directories. For

instance, if the umask is 022, then files will be created with 644 permissions by default, and new directories will have 755 permissions. Note that the removal operation is not a simple subtraction but a bitwise removal. That is, a 7 value in a umask removes the corresponding *rx* permissions; but for files, for which the starting point is *rw-*, the result is *---* (0), not *-1* (which is meaningless).

You can adjust the umask with the `umask` command, which takes the umask value, as in **umask 022**. Typically, this command appears in a system configuration file, such as `/etc/profile`, or in a user configuration file, such as `~/.bashrc`.

## Using Special Permission Bits and File Features

When you investigate the Linux directory tree, you will encounter certain file types that require special attention. Sometimes, you may just want to be aware of how these files are handled, since they deviate from what you might expect based on the information presented in earlier chapters. In other cases, you may need to adjust how you use `ls` or other commands to deal with these files and directories—for example, when using the sticky bit, using special execute permissions, hiding files from view, or obtaining long listings of directories.



### Using Sticky Bits

Consider the following commands, typed on a system with a few files and subdirectories laid out in a particular way:

```
$ whoami
kirk
$ ls -l
total 0
drwxrwxrwx 2 root root 80 Dec 14 17:58 subdir
$ ls -l subdir/
total 2350
-rw-r -- 1 root root 2404268 Dec 14 17:59 f1701.tif
```

These commands establish the current configuration: The effective user ID is `kirk`, and the current directory has one subdirectory, called `subdir`, which `root` owns but to which `kirk`, like all of the system's users, has full read/write access. This subdirectory has one file, `f1701.tif`, which is owned by `root` and to which

kirk has no access. You can verify that kirk can't write to the file by attempting to do so with the touch command:

```
$ touch subdir/f1701.tif
touch: cannot touch 'subdir/f1701.tif ': Permission denied
```

This error message verifies that kirk could not write to `subdir/f1701.tif`. The file, you might think, is safe from tampering. Not so fast! Try this:

```
$ rm subdir/f1701.tif
$ ls -l subdir/
total 0
```

The `rm` command returns no error message, and a subsequent check of `subdir` verifies that it's now empty. In other words, kirk could delete the file even without write permission to it! This may seem like a bug—after all, if you can't write to a file, you might think that you shouldn't be able to delete it. Recall, however, that directories are just a special type of file, one that holds other files' names and pointers to their lower-level data structures. Thus modifying a file requires write access to the file, but creating or deleting a file requires write access to the *directory in which it resides*. In this example, kirk has write access to the `subdir` directory, but not to the `f1701.tif` file within that directory. Thus kirk can delete the file but not modify it. This result is not a bug; it's just a counterintuitive feature.

Although Linux filesystems were designed to work this way, such behavior is not always desirable. The way to create a more intuitive result is to use a *sticky bit*, which is a special filesystem flag that alters this behavior. With the sticky bit set on a directory, Linux will permit you to delete a file only if you own either it or the containing directory; write permission to the containing directory is not enough. You can set the sticky bit with `chown` in either of two ways:

**Using an Octal Code** By prefixing the three-digit octal code described earlier in this chapter with another digit, you can set any of three special permission bits, one of which is the sticky bit. The code for the sticky bit is 1, so you would use an octal code that begins with 1, such as 1755, to set the sticky bit. Specifying a value of 0, as in 0755, removes the sticky bit.

**Using a Symbolic Code** Pass the symbolic code `t` for the world permissions, as in `chmod o+t subdir`, to set the sticky bit on `subdir`. You can remove the sticky bit in a similar way by using a minus sign, as in `chmod o-t subdir`.



Other odd numbers will set the sticky bit, too, but will also set additional special permission bits, which are described shortly, in "Using Special Execute Permissions."

Restoring the file and setting the sticky bit enables you to see the effect:

```
$ ls -l
total 0
drwxrwxrwt 2 root root 80 Dec 14 18:25 subdir
$ ls -l subdir/
total 304
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 2404268 Dec 14 18:25 f1701.tif
$ rm subdir/f1701.tif
rm: cannot remove `subdir/f1701.tif ': Operation not permitted
```

In this example, although kirk still has full read/write access to `subdir`, kirk cannot delete another user's files in that directory.

You can identify a directory with the sticky bit set by a small change in the symbolic mode shown by `ls -l`. The world execute bit is shown as a `t` rather than an `x`. In this example, the result is that `subdir`'s permission appears as `drwxrwxrwt` rather than `drwxrwxrwx`.

The sticky bit is particularly important for directories that are shared by many users. It's a standard feature on `/tmp` and `/var/tmp`, for instance, since many users store temporary files in these directories, and you wouldn't want one user to be able to delete another user's temporary files. If you want users who collaborate on a project to be able to write files into each others' home directories, you might want to consider setting the sticky bit on those home directories, or on the subdirectories in which users are sharing files.

If you delete `/tmp` or `/var/tmp` and need to re-create it, be sure to set the sticky bit on your new replacement directory!

## Using Special Execute Permissions

As described earlier in this chapter, the execute permission bit enables you to identify program files as such. Linux then allows you to run these programs. Such files run using your own credentials, which is generally a good thing—associating running processes with specific users is a key part of Linux's security model. Occasionally, though, programs need to run with elevated privileges. For instance, the `passwd` program, which sets users' passwords, must run as root to write, and in some cases to read, the configuration files it handles. Thus if users are to change their own passwords, `passwd` must have root privileges even when ordinary users run it.

To accomplish this task, two special permission bits exist, similar to the sticky bit described earlier:

**Set User ID (SUID)** The *set user ID (SUID)* option tells Linux to run the program with the permissions of whoever owns the file rather than with the

permissions of the user who runs the program. For instance, if a file is owned by root and has its SUID bit set, the program runs with root privileges and can therefore read any file on the computer. Some servers and other system programs run this way, which is often called SUID root. SUID programs are indicated by an *s* in the owner's execute bit position in the permission string, as in `rwsr-xr-x`.

**Set Group ID (SGID)** The *set group ID (SGID)* option is similar to the SUID option, but it sets the group of the running program to the group of the file. It's indicated by an *s* in the group execute bit position in the permission string, as in `rwxr-sr-x`.

You can set these bits by using `chmod`:

**Using an Octal Code** In the leading digit of a four-digit octal code, set the leading value to 4 to set the SUID bit, to 2 to set the SGID bit, or to 6 to set both bits. For instance, `4755` sets the SUID bit, but not the SGID bit, on an executable file.

**Using a Symbolic Code** Use the *s* symbolic code, in conjunction with *u* to specify the SUID bit, *g* to specify the SGID bit, or both to set both bits. For instance, typing `chmod u+s myprog` sets the SUID bit on `myprog`, whereas `chmod ug-s myprog` removes both the SUID bit and the SGID bit.

Ordinarily, you don't need to set or remove these bits; when necessary, the package management program sets these bits correctly when you install or upgrade a program. You might need to alter these bits if they've been mistakenly set or removed on files. In some cases, you might want or need to adjust these values on program files that you compile from source code or if you need to modify the way a program works. Be cautious when doing so, though. If you set the SUID or SGID bit on a garden-variety program, it will run with increased privileges. If the program contains bugs, those bugs will then be able to do more damage. If you accidentally remove these permissions, the results can be just as bad—programs like `passwd`, `sudo`, and `su` all rely on their SUID bits being set, so removing this feature can cause them to stop working.

## Hiding Files from View

If you're used to Windows, you may be familiar with the concept of a *hidden bit*, which hides files from view in file managers, by the Windows `DIR` command, and in most programs. If you're looking for something analogous in Linux, you won't find it—at least not in the form of a dedicated filesystem feature. Instead, Linux uses a file-naming convention to hide files from view: most tools, such as `ls`, hide files and directories from view if their names begin with a dot (`.`). Thus

`ls` shows the file `afile.txt`, but not `.afile.txt`. Most file managers and dialog boxes that deal with files also hide such *dot files*, as they're commonly called; however, this practice is not universal.

Many user programs take advantage of this feature to keep their configuration files from cluttering your display. For instance, `~/ .bashrc` is a Bash user configuration file, Evolution's configuration files go in the `~/ .evolution` directory, and `~/ .fonts.conf` holds user-specific font configuration information.

You can view dot files in various ways depending on the program in question. Some GUI tools have a check box that you can set in their configuration options to force the program to display such files. At the command line, you can add the `-a` option to the other options in `ls`:

```
$ ls -l
total 0
drwxrwxrwt 2 root root 80 Dec 14 18:25 subdir
$ ls -la
total 305
drwxr-xr-x 3 kirk users 104 Dec 14 18:44 .
drwxr-xr-x 3 kirk users 528 Dec 14 18:21 ..
-rw-r -r - 1 kirk users 309580 Dec 14 18:44 .f1701.tif
drwxrwxrwt 2 root root 80 Dec 14 18:25 subdir
```

Certification  
Objective

Recall from Chapter 7 that `..` is a relative directory reference. This hidden entry is why it works.

This example shows the hidden file `.f1701.tif` in the current directory. It also shows two hidden directory files. The first `.` refers to the current directory. The second `..` refers to the parent directory.

Note that renaming a file so that it begins with a dot will hide it, but this action will also make the file inaccessible to any program that uses the original filename. That is, if you rename `f1701.tif` to `.f1701.tif`, and if another program or file refers to the file as `f1701.tif`, that reference will no longer work. You *must* include the leading dot in any reference to the hidden file.

Certification  
Objective

## Viewing Directories

Chapter 6 introduced the `ls` command, including many of its options. One of these deserves elaboration at this point: `-d`. If you're working in a directory that holds many subdirectories, and if you use a wildcard with `ls` that matches one or more subdirectories, you may get an unexpected result: the output will show the files in the matched subdirectories, rather than the information on the subdirectories themselves. For instance, say you start in a directory with two subdirectories, `subdir1` and `subdir2`:

```
$ ls -l subdir*
subdir1:
total 304
-rw-r--r-- 1 kirk users 309580 Dec 14 18:54 f1701.tif

subdir2:
total 84
-rw-r--r-- 1 kirk users 86016 Dec 14 18:54 106792c17.doc
```

If instead you want information on the subdirectories rather than the contents of those subdirectories, you can include the `-d` option:

```
$ ls -ld subdir*
drwxr-xr-x 2 kirk users 80 Dec 14 18:54 subdir1
drwxr-xr-x 2 kirk users 80 Dec 14 18:54 subdir2
```

The `/proc` and `/sys` directories contain real-time data populated automatically by the kernel so you can view process and device status. Those files and subdirectories may appear and change at any time, making it tricky to display them.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

File security is important on a multiuser OS such as Linux, and one of the pieces of the puzzle of security is ownership. In Linux, every file has one owner and one associated group. The superuser can set the owner with `chown`, and either the superuser or the file's owner can set the file's group with `chown` or `chgrp`. By itself, ownership is useless, so Linux supports the concept of file permissions to control which other users can access a file and in what ways. You can set permissions with the `chmod` utility. You can view ownership, permissions, and some additional file features by using the `-l` option to the `ls` command.

### SUGGESTED EXERCISES

- ▶ As `root`, copy a file that you created as an ordinary user, placing the copy in your ordinary user home directory. Using your normal account, try to edit the file with a text editor and save your changes. What happens? Try to delete that file with the `rm` command. What happens?
- ▶ Create a scratch file as an ordinary user. As `root`, use `chown` and `chmod` to experiment with different types of ownership and permissions to discover when you can read and write the file by using your normal login account.
- ▶ Use the `ls -l` command to view the ownership and permissions of files in your home directory, in `/usr/bin` (where many program files reside), and in `/etc` (where most system configuration files reside). What are the implications of the different ownership and permissions you see for who can read, write, and execute these files?

*(Continues)*

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)***REVIEW QUESTIONS**

1. What command would you type (as root) to change the ownership of somefile.txt from ralph to tony?
  - A. `chown ralph:tony somefile.txt`
  - B. `chmod somefile.txt tony`
  - C. `chown somefile.txt tony`
  - D. `chown tony somefile.txt`
  - E. `chmod tony somefile.txt`
2. Typing `ls -ld wonderjaye` reveals a symbolic file mode of `drwxr-xr-x`. Which of the following are true? (Select all that apply.)
  - A. wonderjaye is a symbolic link.
  - B. wonderjaye is an executable program.
  - C. wonderjaye is a directory.
  - D. All users of the system may read wonderjaye.
  - E. Any member of the file's group may write wonderjaye.
3. Which of the following commands can you use to change a file's group?
  - A. `groupadd`
  - B. `groupmod`
  - C. `chmod`
  - D. `ls`
  - E. `chown`
4. True or false: A file with permissions of 755 can be read by any user on the computer, assuming that all users can read the directory in which it resides.
5. True or false: Only root may use the `chmod` command.
6. True or false: Only root may change a file's ownership with `chown`.
7. What option causes `chown` to change ownership on an entire directory tree?
8. What three-character symbolic string represents read and execute permission but no write permission?
9. What symbolic representation can you pass to `chmod` to give all users execute access to a file without affecting other permissions?
10. You want to set the sticky bit on an existing directory, `subdir`, without otherwise altering its permissions. To do so, you would type `chmod _____ subdir`.

# Managing Network Connections

*Networking is a critical* part of modern computing. Fortunately, most Linux distributions can often create a network connection automatically. On occasion, however, this process doesn't work, or you may need to tweak the connection or debug problems when they occur. This chapter therefore covers network configuration.

We begin by describing some basic network features that you must understand to manage your network configuration properly. We then describe the process of configuring a network connection. A few tests will help you track down and correct problems, so we explain them in case you run into difficulties. Finally, we explore the dark side of networking: the undesirables on the Internet and how to keep them out of your computer.

- ▶ **Understanding network features**
- ▶ **Configuring a network connection**
- ▶ **Testing your network connection**
- ▶ **Protecting your system from the bad guys**

## Understanding Network Features

Networking involves numerous protocols and technologies that interact in complex ways. Although modern networks and OSs make it easy for users to set up their computers (at least compared to 10 or 20 years ago) doing anything but the simplest configuration requires understanding the key networking protocols and technologies. To begin, we present the following mini-glossary of networking terms:

**DNS** The *Domain Name System (DNS)* is a global network of servers that translate between *hostnames* and *IP addresses* (both described shortly). Most computers are configured to use a *DNS server*, which is a server that performs DNS lookups.

Certification  
Objective

Other means of name resolution exist, but they are impractical for handling more than a few dozen computers.



**DHCP** The *Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)* is a way for most computers on a network to obtain configuration information from another computer (the *DHCP server*) on the network. DHCP is the key to today's easy network configuration. It's described in more detail shortly, in the section, "Deciding Whether to Use DHCP."

**Ethernet** This is the wired network hardware that's most often used today. Ethernet comes in several varieties, the most common of which use cables that resemble telephone wires but with broader plugs. Common speeds range from 10 megabits per second (Mbps) to 10 gigabits per second (Gbps, or *gigabit Ethernet*), although faster speeds are available.

**Hostname** This is a name that a computer uses for the benefit of humans. Hostnames consist of a computer portion and a network portion. For instance, in `lunokhod.luna.edu`, the machine name is `lunokhod` and the network name is `luna.edu`.

**Internet** The *Internet* refers to the globe-spanning network of interconnected computers that use the standard Internet protocol suite (TCP/IP) to communicate. Individual local networks use *routers* to join together and create the Internet.

**IP Address** An *Internet Protocol (IP) address* is a number that's assigned to a computer for network addressing purposes. You can think of an IP address as being like a street address or telephone number. Computers communicate with each other via IP addresses. In the past, 4-byte *IPv4* addresses have dominated (such as `192.168.1.10`); however, the pool of IPv4 addresses has recently been depleted, so many new installations now use 16-byte *IPv6* addresses (such as `fe80:0000:0223:15ff:fea6:1bdc`). IP addresses are broken down into two parts: a machine portion and a network portion. The network portion may be used in routing (see *router*), whereas the machine portion identifies a computer on a given network. This breakdown into machine and network addresses is accomplished via a *network mask*, as described next.

**Network Mask** A *network mask (mask or netmask for short)* is a way to distinguish between the network and machine portions of an IP address. The netmask defines the individual bits of an IP address that belong to each part of the address. This can be done by giving each bit of the machine address a binary value of 1 and expressing the result as a number (such as `255.255.0.0` or `255.255.255.0`) for an IPv4 address or by specifying the number of bits in the machine portion of the address (as in 16 or 24).

Other methods of wired networking exist, but most are either obsolete or used in very high-speed, long-distance, or other capacities.

**Router** A *router* (also known as a *gateway*) connects two or more networks together. Your desktop or server computer is likely to connect directly to a handful of other computers, including a router. The router links to another network, which in turn links to another, and so on. To contact a computer on another network, your computer communicates through the router. Homes and small businesses often use small *broadband routers* to connect to the Internet. Such devices perform routing and have built-in DNS, DHCP, and other useful servers.

**TCP/IP** The *Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)* is a set of standards that underlie most modern network communications at the software level.

**Wi-Fi** This term applies to the most common forms of wireless networking, more properly known as *IEEE 802.11*. Several variants are available that differ in speed. The section, “Creating a Wi-Fi Connection,” later in this chapter, describes Wi-Fi configuration in more detail.

The process of creating a network connection is one of assigning the computer an IP address and an associated netmask. Using the IP address, the computer can communicate with other computers on the local network—that is, anything that doesn’t require a router as an intermediary. In most cases, you’ll want to tell the computer about the network’s router so that it can communicate with computers on other network segments (often including the entire Internet). Giving your computer the IP address of a DNS server will enable you to specify computer hostnames rather than IP addresses, which is a highly desirable feature. Thus these four features—the IP address, the netmask, the router’s IP address, and the DNS server’s IP address—constitute the basic network configuration features.

In most cases, DHCP can dish out these four features. This can make network configuration fairly automatic, as you’ll see in this chapter. If your network doesn’t support DHCP, though, you’ll need to contact your network’s administrator to obtain the critical configuration information. In some cases, you’ll need still more information. For instance, if you’re using Wi-Fi, you’ll need to know the Wi-Fi network’s name and perhaps its password.

## Configuring a Network Connection

In most cases, your network connection will come up automatically (or nearly so). Sometimes, though, you’ll have to adjust the configuration manually or simply activate it. If available, automatic configuration is handled via DHCP, so

Certification  
Objective



Several alternatives to TCP/IP exist, such as AppleTalk, NetBEUI, and IPX/SPX. TCP/IP, however, is the most common network protocol, and the one that underlies the Internet.

we begin by describing it in more detail. We then cover a topic that's applicable to only some systems: configuring Wi-Fi. If you use it, you must configure Wi-Fi before setting other network options. Once Wi-Fi is configured, the rest of the network setup procedure is much like that for wired networks. We then provide an example of using GUI tools for network configuration. These tools are easy to use, and they can handle most situations. Finally, we cover text-based configuration tools, which provide a great deal of power that you might need to use in certain settings.

## Deciding Whether to Use DHCP

As noted earlier, a computer requires, at a minimum, two pieces of information to connect to a typical network: an IP address and a netmask. IP addresses for a router and a DNS server are practical necessities on most networks, although in some cases you can do without one or both. Some networks require additional configuration details.

Configuring every computer on a large network with all of this information can be time-consuming. Worse, it can lead to problems caused by human errors, such as typos in IP addresses. For this reason, most networks provide a DHCP server, which can provide this information to other computers.

Depending on the configuration of the server, DHCP can be used to deliver IP addresses in one of two ways:

- ▶ In a fixed way, so that each computer receives the same IP address every time it boots
- ▶ Dynamically, so that a single computer might receive different IP addresses on different boots

Which way is used is a policy detail for your network administrator. You needn't be concerned with it, except to know that a computer configured via DHCP isn't necessarily guaranteed to receive the same IP address on each boot. This fact can have important implications. For instance, it's generally easiest and most reliable to configure a server computer if it has a fixed IP address. Thus, as a matter of policy, server computers are often configured *without* using DHCP—even if workstations on the same network use DHCP. This isn't always the case, though—as already noted, DHCP can deliver a fixed address to some or all computers, so the DHCP server's administrator can configure a network's servers in this way.

As a practical matter, unless you're configuring your own small private network, you should ask your network administrator whether to use DHCP for a new computer. If the answer is *no*, you should ask for an IP address, the netmask, the router's IP address, and the DNS server's IP address.

DHCP can deliver information even to computers without an IP address by using lower-level addressing methods.

If you're configuring a home or small office network with a broadband router, the router almost certainly includes a DHCP server that you can use. Consult its documentation for details.

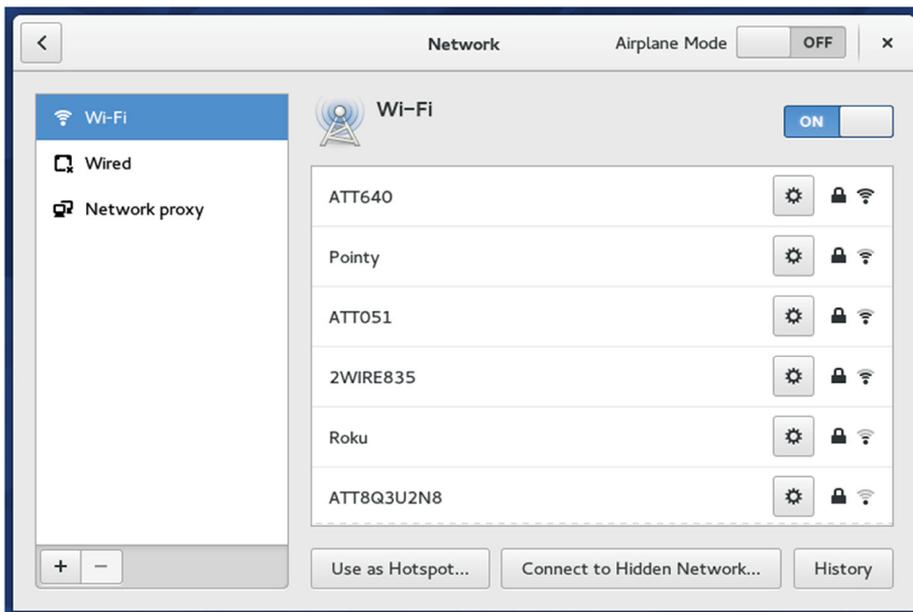
## Creating a Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi connections are most often used on laptop and smaller portable computers, since using such devices without a physical network cable is often desirable. Some desktop computers, though, have Wi-Fi capabilities, and you may want to use them.

Before proceeding further, be aware that you must have access to a Wi-Fi network. If you're configuring a computer to connect to a broadband router that you've purchased and set up, consult the router's documentation to learn how to locate the router's critical information, such as the *service set identifier*, or SSID (the Wi-Fi network's name, which may be distinct from the TCP/IP network's name), and the password it uses. If you're trying to connect to a business network or a public network, consult the network administrator to obtain this information.

Whatever the computer type, the easiest method of configuring your Wi-Fi connection is to use the GUI. Details of how to do this vary from one distribution to another. As an example, consider doing the task in Fedora:

1. Open the System Settings tool by clicking the down-arrow icon in the upper-right corner of the desktop and selecting the System Settings icon from the resulting menu (the crossed tools) or by typing `gnome-control-center` at a shell prompt.
2. Click the Network item in the System Settings Hardware section. The window that appears is shown in Figure 15.1.

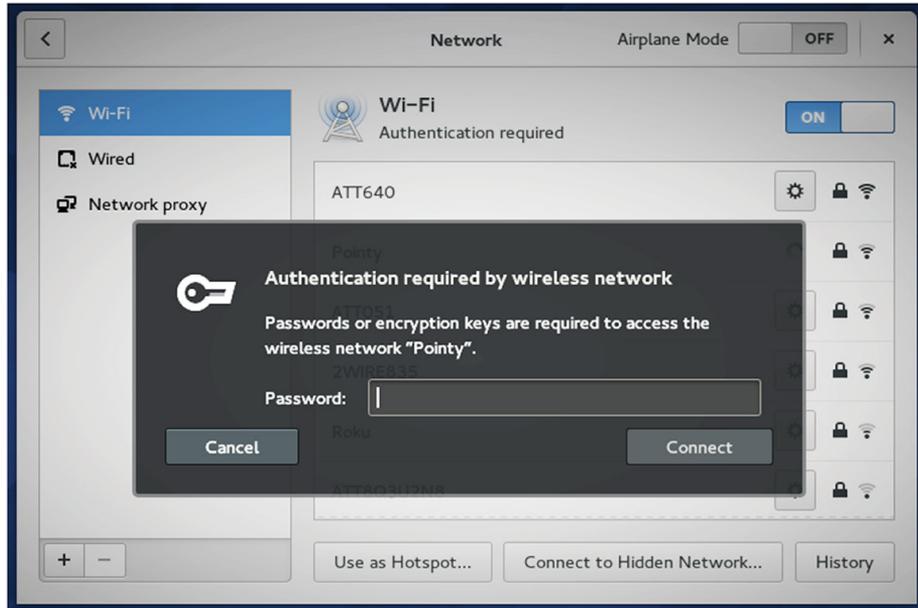


**FIGURE 15.1** You can adjust the most common network settings from the Network item in the System Settings menu.

The procedure described here is equivalent to plugging an Ethernet cable into an Ethernet port. This procedure might or might not set up TCP/IP options.

If you don't see a wireless option, you may lack Linux drivers for your Wi-Fi hardware. Consult the sidebar "Obtaining Wi-Fi Drivers" for advice on resolving this problem.

3. Click Wi-Fi in the list on the left side of the Network window.
4. Select your network from the list. If the network requires authentication, a dialog box like the one shown in Figure 15.2 will appear.



**FIGURE 15.2** If your Wi-Fi network requires authentication, you must enter a password before you can begin using it.

5. Type your network's password in the Password field and then click Connect.

The network entry in the Network window (see Figure 15.1) should now show that the workstation is connected to that network. Click the gear icon next to the Wi-Fi network name to see the IP address, the default route, and the DNS server's IP address assigned to your system. The computer is now completely configured for network access—the utility has automatically performed the tasks described in the section “Using a Network Configuration GUI,” later in this chapter. If not, though, you may need to perform additional configuration tasks, such as manually setting an IP address. It's also possible that the Wi-Fi connection has failed.

## WI-FI SECURITY

Because Wi-Fi data is carried over radio waves, it's easy for the transmissions to be intercepted. Somebody sitting in a car outside a building can often gain access to a Wi-Fi network, which poses three problems:

## WI-FI SECURITY *(Continued)*

- ▶ An intruder can intercept data passing over the network, possibly gaining access to sensitive files, acquiring credit card numbers, and so on.
- ▶ An intruder may be able to launch attacks on your computers from behind any firewall that you maintain to protect yourself from outsiders.
- ▶ An intruder can use your network access to attack other computers or to conduct illegal activities such as pirating movies, music, or software. This not only consumes your network bandwidth, but if the activities are detected, *you* will fall under suspicion!

For these reasons, you should secure any Wi-Fi network that you manage. Three security levels are available (four if you count none at all):

**WEP** Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP) is a weak encryption protocol. Methods of breaking into a WEP-encrypted network are well known, making this method essentially worthless.

**WPA** Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA) security provides improved encryption and authentication tools compared to WEP.

**WPA2** WPA2 is WPA's replacement, and it provides still more improvements in encryption and authentication.

Several variants on each of these encryption methods are available. For instance, WPA and WPA2 provide both *personal* and *enterprise* options, the latter requiring a more complex setup with a dedicated authentication server. Typically, you set the encryption method in a broadband router or wireless access point (WAP). Clients then detect the method in use and present appropriate options, such as the password prompt shown earlier in Figure 15.2.

Public Wi-Fi connections might not use any of these protocols. You can use such connections, but be aware that any data that you send or receive might be visible to others.

The GUI method of establishing a Wi-Fi connection is almost always the easiest method to use. If you need to fine-tune the connection, you can use various tools to probe for and manage Wi-Fi links. Here are the two most important of these tools:

**iwlist** This command can identify nearby Wi-Fi networks. Type `iwlist scan` or `iwlist scanning` as root to obtain a list of nearby networks. This command produces a great deal of technical data. You're probably most interested in the

You might use `iwlist scan` to locate public Wi-Fi networks in a coffee shop or hotel, followed by an `iwconfig` command to connect to a network you've found.



network names, which appear in the output following the string `ESSID`, so typing `iwlist scan | grep ESSID` will pare down the output.

**iwconfig** This utility connects and disconnects you from specific networks. It uses many options, and you may need to study its man page to understand it fully. In most cases, typing something like the following will do the trick:

```
iwconfig wlan0 essid NoWires channel 1 mode Managed key s:N1mP7mHNw
```

This example connects to the *NoWires* network running on channel 1 using the password *N1mP7mHNw*.

## OBTAINING WI-FI DRIVERS

Unfortunately, Linux driver support for Wi-Fi hardware is fairly weak. If you don't see your Wi-Fi hardware when you try to configure it, you may need to track down suitable drivers. You can begin this task with a tool called `lspci`, which is described in Chapter 5, "Managing Hardware." Type this command with no options to see a list of available hardware, and search that list for a wireless network adapter. For instance, my laptop's `lspci` output includes the following line:

```
03:00.0 Network controller: Realtek Semiconductor Co., Ltd.m  
RTL8191SEvB Wireless LAN Controller (rev 10)
```

This line identifies the Wi-Fi adapter as a Realtek RTL8191SEvB. A search on Realtek's website turns up a driver; however, this driver has to be compiled locally, which is a topic that's beyond the scope of this book. You also might not be lucky enough to find a driver in this way.

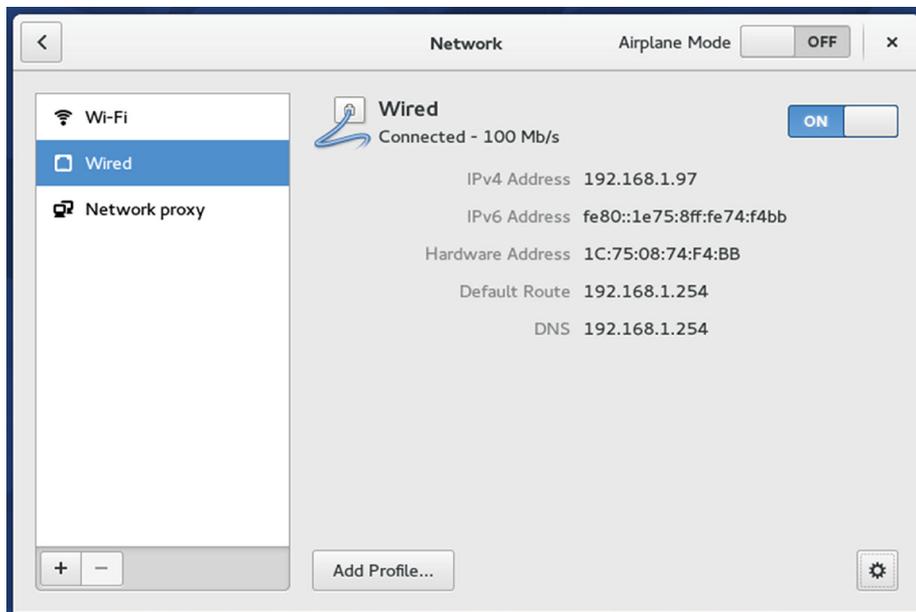
An alternative to using a native Linux driver is to use a Windows driver. This unusual option is possible using a package called `ndiswrapper` (<http://ndiswrapper.sourceforge.net>), which enables you to install Windows Wi-Fi drivers in Linux. Unfortunately, not all distributions provide `ndiswrapper` in their standard package sets, but you can usually find a binary package in an add-on repository.

If all other options fail, you may need to buy new networking hardware. Many USB Wi-Fi adapters are available, but you should research them to find one that has good Linux support. You can also replace the built-in adapters on some laptops.

## Using a Network Configuration GUI

If you've configured a Wi-Fi link but it hasn't yet obtained an IP address, or if you need to set up a wired network connection, you'll have to set up the TCP/IP networking options. You can do this via text-mode tools, as described later in the section, "Using Text-Based Tools," or you can use GUI tools. The latter option is easier for new users, but the GUI tools vary from one distribution to another. As an example, the procedure for configuring Fedora using GUI tools is as follows:

1. Open the System Settings tool by clicking your name in the upper-right corner of the desktop and selecting System Settings from the resulting menu or by typing `gnome-control-center` at a shell prompt.
2. Click the Network item in the System Settings Hardware section.
3. Select the network device from the list on the left side of the window. The result should resemble Figure 15.3; however, this figure shows a properly configured network link that has no obvious problems. If your network link isn't working, it might read *Disconnected* rather than *Connected*, or it might otherwise show significantly different information.



**FIGURE 15.3** Network connections usually set themselves up automatically, but sometimes they don't.

4. For a Wired connection, click the gear icon in the lower-right corner of the window to adjust your network settings. For a Wi-Fi connection, click the gear icon next to the Wi-Fi network name to which you are trying to connect.
5. Select the IPv4 or IPv6 entry in the left side of the window, depending on whether your network uses IPv4 or IPv6. The result resembles Figure 15.4, which shows a partially configured manual IPv4 setup.

You can configure a computer for both IPv4 and IPv6. To do so manually, you must have both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses.

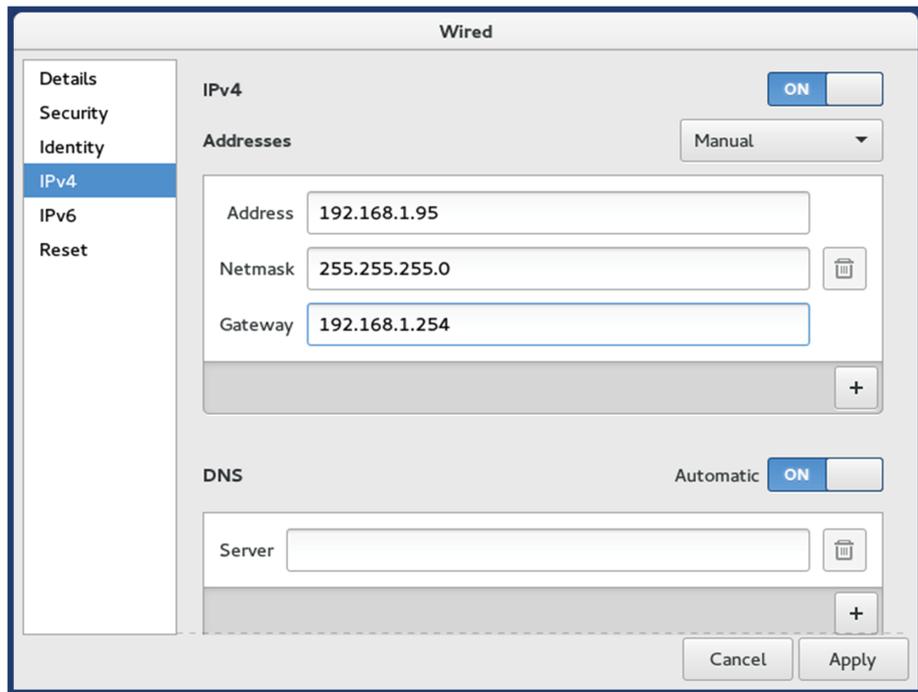


FIGURE 15.4 You can set key TCP/IP features after clicking Options in the Network window.

6. Select the connection method by using the Addresses dropdown. The Automatic (DHCP) and Manual options are the most common, but a few more obscure options are available too. You can disable a network connection by selecting Disabled.
7. If you're using DHCP, you can still manually enter the DNS server and default router addresses.
8. To perform manual configuration, select Manual in the Addresses dropdown and enter the remaining information. You enter an IP

address, netmask, and router address by clicking the Add button, whereupon suitable fields in the Addresses section of the dialog box become available.

9. When you're done making changes, click Save.

If all goes well, your Network dialog box should change to show an IP address, subnet mask, default route, and DNS server address—although some networks omit some of these items.

## Using Text-Based Tools

Although the GUI network configuration tools are easy to use and work well most of the time, sometimes you must use a more flexible set of text-based tools. These tools include the following:

**ifconfig** This program brings up or shuts down a network connection by associating an IP address and network mask to a piece of network hardware.

Certification  
Objective

**route** This program adjusts the computer's *routing table*, which determines through which network device specific network packets are sent.

Certification  
Objective

**/etc/resolv.conf** This file contains the IP addresses of up to three DNS servers as well as the name of the computer's Internet domain and of other domains that should be searched when the user omits a domain name from a hostname.

Certification  
Objective

**A DHCP Client** A DHCP client program, such as `dhclient` or `dhcpcd`, can often configure a network connection automatically. You simply type the program's name, perhaps followed by a network device name.

**Distribution-Specific Network Scripts** The `ifconfig`, `route`, and DHCP client programs produce temporary changes to the computer's network configuration. If you want to make permanent changes, you must store your settings in a configuration file. The name and format of this file varies from one distribution to another. For instance, in Fedora it's `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-netname`, where `netname` is the name of the network device; in Debian or Ubuntu, it's `/etc/network/interfaces`.

The `ifconfig` and `route` commands are both complex; however, their basic use is fairly straightforward. Suppose that you want to assign the IP address `192.168.29.39/24` to the `eth0` network device and tell it to use `192.168.29.1` as the router. The following two commands would do the trick:

```
# ifconfig eth0 up 192.168.29.39 netmask 255.255.255.0
# route add default gw 192.168.29.1
```

Don't confuse  
`dhcpcd`, a DHCP  
client, with `dhcpcd`, a  
DHCP server.

You can instead take down a connection by using `down` rather than `up` with `ifconfig`, delete routes by using `del` rather than `add` with `route`, and so on. Consult these programs' man pages for details.

If your network uses DHCP, you can type `dhclient netname` or `dhcpcd netname` to bring up the `netname` interface and configure it using DHCP. Manually typing this command can be handy if you're trying to debug a network problem related to DHCP, or if your network's DHCP configuration has changed and temporarily has broken connectivity for some computers.

Some distributions use `dhclient` by default, but others use `dhcpcd`. If you don't know which to use, try both.

## NETWORK DEVICE NAMES

Traditionally, Linux has given the first Ethernet device a name of `eth0` and subsequent devices names of `eth1` and so on. Similarly, Wi-Fi devices have acquired names of the form `wlan0` and up. Fedora, however, has deviated from this scheme. This makes it harder to predict the device names of Ethernet devices from one computer to another. The goal is to make the device names more stable between reboots on computers with multiple network interfaces. Such systems are often routers or servers with multiple network links, and they typically require specific configurations on specific interfaces. If the device name changes from one boot to another—which can happen if network cards happen to be discovered in a different order on different boots—problems can ensue.

You can learn your network device names by typing `ifconfig` with no options. (You can even do this as a normal user.) The result includes one or more blocks of output like the following:

```
enp1s0: flags =4163 <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST > mtu 1500
    inet 192.168.1.97 netmask 255.255.255.0
    broadcast 192.168.1.255
    inet6 fe80::1e75:8ff:fe74:f4bb prefixlen 64
    scopeid 0x20 <link >
    ether 1c:75:08:74:f4:bb txqueuelen 1000 (Ethernet)
    RX packets 1476 bytes 121361 (118.5 KiB)
    RX errors 0 dropped 0 overruns 0 frame 0
    TX packets 133 bytes 14306 (13.9 KiB)
    TX errors 0 dropped 0 overruns 0 carrier 0 collisions 0
```

In this example, `enp1s0` is the device name—it prominently begins this block of output. You most likely will also see the name `lo` in the `ifconfig` output, which refers to a *loopback device*, used for certain local access procedures. You can ignore it if you want to find your network hardware's device name.

If you're configuring your network settings manually, you should enter your DNS name server data and your network name into `/etc/resolv.conf`. A sample of this file appears in Listing 15.1.

**LISTING 15.1:** A sample `/etc/resolv.conf` configuration file

```
domain luna.edu
search example.com example.org
nameserver 192.168.1.2
nameserver 10.78.102.1
nameserver 10.78.221.1
```

Three keywords identify DNS resolution features in `/etc/resolv.conf`:

**domain** You identify your computer's default domain name on this line. The primary effect is that the computer searches for hostnames without domain names in this domain. For example, in Listing 15.1, if you specify a hostname of `lunokhod`, the computer will find the IP address of `lunokhod.luna.edu`.

**search** You can have the computer search for hostnames in additional domains by specifying them on a `search` line, with domains separated by spaces or tabs. You can specify up to six domains in this way. Be aware, however, that adding domains to the search path is likely to slow down hostname lookup.

**nameserver** This keyword identifies DNS server computers by IP address. You can specify multiple servers by including multiple `nameserver` lines, up to the maximum of three.

If you want to define host names manually (such as for hosts on your local network), you do that in the `/etc/hosts` file. These host names will resolve faster than by using DNS.

If you want to adjust manually your permanent network configuration, you can do so by editing the network configuration file, such as `/etc/sysconfig/network-scripts/ifcfg-netname` on a Fedora system. Listing 15.2 shows a sample of this file.

**LISTING 15.2:** A sample network configuration file

```
DEVICE="em1"
BOOTPROTO="static"
IPADDR=192.168.29.39
NETMASK=255.255.255.0
NETWORK=192.168.29.0
BROADCAST=192.168.29.255
```

`/etc/resolv.conf` supports additional keywords, but they're seldom used. Consult its man page for details.

```
GATEWAY=192.168.29.1
ONBOOT=yes
NM_CONTROLLED="yes"
HWADDR=00:26:6C:36:C8:58
TYPE=Ethernet
DEFROUTE=yes
PEERDNS=yes
PEERROUTES=yes
IPV4_FAILURE_FATAL=yes
IPV6INIT=no
NAME="System em1"
UUID=1dad842d-1912-ef5a-a43a-bc238fb267e7
```

Some of these options have purposes that you can figure out based on their names, and you can adjust as necessary. If you don't understand an option, it's best to leave it alone. Some specific features to which you may wish to attend include the following:

Forcing users to start their network connections can limit the computer's use of network resources, such as IP addresses if your network uses DHCP.

- ▶ If you want to use DHCP, change the `BOOTPROTO` line to read **`BOOTPROTO="dhcp"`** rather than `BOOTPROTO="static"`, and remove the lines from `IPADDR` through `GATEWAY`.
- ▶ If you want to keep the network link from starting up automatically when the computer boots, change `ONBOOT` to `no`. Users will then have to activate the network manually whenever they want to use it.
- ▶ The `NETWORK` and `BROADCAST` options are both derived from the IP address (`IPADDR`) and netmask (`NETMASK`). The `NETWORK` address is the network portion of the IP address, but with binary 0 values substituted for the host-specific part of the IP address. The `BROADCAST` address is similar, but it substitutes binary 1 values for the host-specific part of the address.

Some Linux distributions are moving away from the `ifconfig` and `route` commands in favor of the all-in-one `ip` command. With the `ip` command, you can display IP information (using `ip addr show`) and router information (using `ip route show`).

If you're running Debian, Ubuntu, or some other distribution that uses a different network configuration file, you'll have to track down that file and modify it. The format may vary from the file shown in Listing 15.2 as well, although the entries that you must change are usually fairly obvious. If in doubt, consult distribution-specific documentation.

The `ifup` and `ifdown` commands bring up or take down a network connection based on the settings in your configuration file. Thus after you change these settings, you may want to type **`ifdown netname`** followed by **`ifup netname`**. The result should be a network link that reflects the new settings. Be aware, however, that this procedure may disconnect network clients and servers.

# Testing Your Network Connection

In most cases, your network connection will work fine from the moment you start it. At times you may need to diagnose problems, either because you can't get the connection to work at all or because a formerly working connection has stopped working. In the following pages, we describe several types of network tests: checking your routing table, testing basic connectivity, testing to locate where a break in connectivity has occurred, testing DNS functioning, and testing the network's status.

## Checking Your Routing Table

Earlier we described using the `route` command to set the default route on a computer. You can check that your route is sensible by using the same command. In most cases, typing `route` alone will do the job:

```
$ route
Kernel IP routing table
Destination Gateway Genmask Flags Metric Ref Use Iface
192.168.29.0 * 255.255.255.0 U 0 0 0 eth0
127.0.0.0 * 255.0.0.0 U 0 0 0 lo
default 192.168.29.1 0.0.0.0 UG 0 0 0 eth0
```

This shows that data destined for 192.168.29.0 (that is, any computer with an IP address between 192.168.29.1 and 192.168.29.254) goes directly over `eth0`. The 127.0.0.0 network is a special interface that “loops back” to the originating computer. Linux uses this for some internal networking purposes. The last line shows the default route, which describes what to do with everything that doesn't match any other entry in the routing table. This line identifies the default route's gateway system as 192.168.29.1. If it's missing or misconfigured, some or all traffic destined for external networks, such as the Internet, won't make it beyond your local network segment.

## Testing Basic Connectivity

The most basic network test is `ping`, which sends a simple network packet to the system you name (via IP address or hostname) and waits for a reply. In Linux, `ping` continues sending packets once every second or so until you interrupt it with a `Ctrl+C` keystroke. You can instead specify a limited number of tests via the `-c num` option. Here's an example of its output:

Certification  
Objective



The routing table of a typical workstation, or even server, is quite simple and can be automatically configured. Network routers often require complex routing tables, though.

Certification  
Objective

```
$ ping -c 4 nessus
PING nessus.example.com (192.168.1.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from nessus.example.com (192.168.1.2): icmp_req =1 ttl =64m
time =0.607 ms
64 bytes from nessus.example.com (192.168.1.2): icmp_req =2 ttl =64m
time =0.147 ms
64 bytes from nessus.example.com (192.168.1.2): icmp_req =3 ttl =64m
time =0.145 ms
64 bytes from nessus.example.com (192.168.1.2): icmp_req =4 ttl =64m
time =0.283 ms

-- nessus.example.com ping statistics --
4 packets transmitted, 4 received, 0 % packet loss, time 3001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.145/0.295/0.607/0.189 ms
```

This command sent four packets and waited for their return, which occurred quite quickly (in an average of 0.295 ms) because the target system was on the local network. A few common problem patterns can help you diagnose where a network problem resides:

- ▶ If you can ping local systems but not remote systems, the problem is probably in your router or in an improper router specification.
- ▶ If you can ping by IP address but not by name, the problem is most likely with your DNS server or DNS configuration.
- ▶ If you can't ping at all, even by IP address, then you probably have a fundamental configuration problem.

## Finding Breaks in Connectivity

A step up from ping is the traceroute command, which sends a series of three test packets to each computer between your system and a specified target system. Listing 15.3 shows a sample of traceroute's output.

*Listing 15.3: A sample traceroute output*

```
$ traceroute -n 10.1.0.43
traceroute to 10.1.0.43 (10.1.0.43), 30 hops max, 52 byte packets
 1  192.168.1.2  1.021 ms  36.519 ms  0.971 ms
 2  10.10.88.1  17.250 ms  9.959 ms  9.637 ms
 3  10.9.8.173  8.799 ms  19.501 ms  10.884 ms
 4  10.9.8.133  21.059 ms  9.231 ms  103.068 ms
 5  10.9.14.9  8.554 ms  12.982 ms  10.029 ms
```

```

6 10.1.0.44 10.273 ms 9.987 ms 11.215 ms
7 10.1.0.43 16.360 ms * 8.102 ms

```

The `-n` option to this command tells it to display target computers' IP addresses rather than their hostnames. This can speed up the process a bit, particularly if you're having DNS problems, and it can sometimes make the output easier to read—but you may want to know the hostnames of problem systems because they can help you pinpoint who's responsible for a problem.

The output of `tracert` can be diagnostic in several ways:

- ▶ Typically, times increase with increasing hop numbers. This is normal, and aside from some variability in the example output, you can see this pattern in Listing 15.3.
- ▶ Variable times on a single hop can indicate that a router is overloaded or that some other intermittent issue is causing variability in the times. You can see this factor at play in several hops in Listing 15.3, and particularly in hops 1 and 4. Such issues may result in variable performance but should not cause network sessions to time out or otherwise fail completely.
- ▶ Sometimes a response to a packet is never received. This condition is indicated by an asterisk (\*) in a time field, as in the second packet for hop 7 in Listing 15.3.
- ▶ A dramatic jump in times can indicate a great physical distance between routers. Ignoring the middle time of 36.519 ms in the first hop of Listing 15.3, you can see such a jump in the change from hop 1 to hop 2. In the case of Listing 15.3, this indicates the link from the local network to the Internet service provider's network. Even bigger jumps in time are common on intercontinental links. Such jumps are not necessarily signs of misconfiguration that needs to be fixed, but they can influence network performance, particularly for highly interactive protocols such as remote login tools or network-enabled gaming.

Among other things, `tracert` is helpful in determining whether a problem in network connectivity exists in a network for which you're responsible. For instance, the variability in the first hop of Listing 15.3 could indicate a problem on the local network, but the lost packet associated with the final destination most likely is not a local problem. If the trouble link is within your jurisdiction, you can check the status of the problem system, nearby systems, and the network segment in general.

Some routers block all traceroute data. If your traceroute output contains nothing but asterisks past a certain point, you may have run into such a system.

## Testing DNS

Certification  
Objective

DNS problems can cause networking to fail almost as badly as can a physically cut cable. Because both people and many network tools rely on hostnames, if DNS resolution doesn't work, the network becomes nearly useless.

You can test your network's DNS server by using a number of tools, such as `host`, `dig`, and `nslookup`. These tools are similar in many ways, and they all enable you to look up a hostname by typing the command's name followed by a hostname:

```
$ host www.sybex.com
www.sybex.com has address 208.215.179.220
```

This example shows normal name resolution. In this case, the hostname links directly to just one IP address. In some cases, you may find notices about aliases or multiple IP addresses. This is also normal, at least for some sites. If the command takes a long time to respond or complains about a time-out or an inability to reach servers, though, it means that your computer's DNS configuration is wrong.

You can add the IP address of a specific DNS server, as in `hostwww.whitehouse.gov192.168.39.7` to test the `192.168.39.7` server. If your computer is configured to use multiple DNS servers, you can test each one individually in this way. Perhaps one is unreliable or incorrect, in which case you might want to remove it from your configuration. Be aware, though, that if you remove a DNS server from `/etc/resolv.conf` on a computer that's configured via DHCP, your change will eventually be undone by DHCP. If this is a recurring problem, you should probably consult your network administrator.

Although `host` is a useful tool for performing basic hostname lookups, the `dig` utility (or the deprecated `nslookup`) can perform more-complex queries and can return more information about a hostname, domain, or IP address. This makes `dig` a useful tool for advanced network diagnostics, but at the cost of ease of use; that is, it's harder for a novice to interpret `dig`'s output.

## Checking Your Network Status

Another useful diagnostic tool is `netstat`. This is something of a Swiss Army knife of network tools because it can be used in place of several others, depending on the parameters passed to it. It can also return information that's not easily obtained in other ways. Some examples include the following:

The `nslookup` program is *deprecated*, meaning that developers eventually plan to remove it from common use, but it's available at the moment.

Recall that `/etc/resolv.conf` contains the IP addresses of your network's DNS servers. They're identified on `nameserver` lines.

Certification  
Objective

**Interface Information** Pass `netstat` the `--interface` or `-i` parameter to obtain information about your network interfaces similar to what `ifconfig` returns. (Some versions of `netstat` return information in the same format, but others lay out the information differently.)

**Routing Information** You can use the `--route` or `-r` parameter to obtain a routing table listing similar to what the `route` command displays.

**Masquerade Information** Pass `netstat` the `--masquerade` or `-M` parameter to obtain information about connections mediated by Linux's Network Address Translation (NAT) features, which often go by the name *IP masquerading*. NAT enables a Linux router to "hide" a network behind a single IP address. This can be a good way to stretch limited IPv4 addresses.

**Program Use** Some versions of `netstat` support the `--program` (or `-p`) parameter, which attempts to provide information about the programs that are using network connections. This attempt isn't always successful, but it often is, so you can see what programs are making outside connections.

**Open Ports** When used with various other parameters, or without any parameters at all, `netstat` returns information about open ports and the systems to which they connect.

**All Connections** The `--all` or `-a` option is used in conjunction with others. It causes `netstat` to display information about the ports that server programs open to listen for network connections, in addition to already-open connections.

Keep in mind that `netstat` is a powerful tool, and its options and output aren't entirely consistent from one distribution to another. You may want to peruse its `man` page and experiment with `netstat` to learn what it can do.

## Protecting Your System from the Bad Guys

Networks provide many useful features for their users. Unfortunately, they also provide many risks. Network security is a complex topic, and we can provide only a few basic tips to help you prevent your system from being compromised. Here are some of the most important things you can do:

**Shut Down Unused Servers** Linux's major security vulnerabilities aren't in worms and viruses, as they are with Windows; in Linux, the risks center on outsiders breaking into your computer by abusing server programs that you run. Therefore, it's important that you don't run servers unnecessarily. Some distributions automatically install and run servers, such as the Secure Shell



Small broadband routers use NAT. If you have such a device, chances are that your desktop and laptop systems needn't be configured to do so themselves.

(SSH), the Apache web server, or a mail server such as Sendmail or Postfix. The most thorough way to remove a server is to uninstall it by using your package system (described in Chapter 9, “Exploring Processes and Process Data”)—but you must issue the command to *uninstall* the relevant package rather than to install it.

▶  
Firewalls can run on one computer to protect just it or on a router to protect a whole network.

**Enable a Firewall** A *firewall* is a program or system setting that polices network transactions, allowing or disallowing them based on programmed criteria. Most Linux distributions enable firewalls by default, but you may want to adjust their settings for your specific needs.

**Use Good Passwords** Chapter 13, “Creating Users and Groups,” describes how to select a good password. If your computer runs a login server of any type, setting a good password can minimize the risk of an outsider breaking in by guessing your password.

**Be Suspicious** You should be suspicious of untrusted sources of data. *Phishing* (attempting to extract sensitive data from users by posing as a trusted individual or organization) and similar attacks can dupe individuals into giving up passwords, financial data, and so on. Although malicious software (or *malware*) for Linux is rare, it would be easy to produce. You’re best off sticking to official software sources and remembering that emails, websites, and other communications can be faked.

**Keep Your Software Up-to-Date.** Chapter 9 describes the package management tools that you can use to keep your system up-to-date. It’s best to check your system regularly for software updates, since many such updates fix security bugs—problems that can be exploited by outsiders or by legitimate, but malicious, users to take over your computer.

## THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND

Networking is integral to today’s computers, and Linux provides excellent networking capabilities. In most cases, your computer will detect your network and configure itself automatically; however, sometimes you must manually create an advanced configuration or override an incorrect automatic configuration. You may also need to test your network configuration to determine where a problem lies—in an IP address setting, in a DNS configuration, or elsewhere. Unfortunately, networks can be abused as well as used, so you must remain vigilant against those who would break into your computer and use it for their own purposes. A few steps, such as keeping your software updated, can greatly minimize the risks.

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)***SUGGESTED EXERCISES**

- ▶ On a small private network that you control or in a lab environment under the supervision of an instructor, reconfigure a computer that uses DHCP to instead use its assigned IP address in a static fashion. Test the connection and then switch back to DHCP. Do not perform this test on a work or school network that's used for normal purposes; misconfiguration of a computer's IP address can cause problems for other computers.
- ▶ Back up your `/etc/resolv.conf` file, and then edit the original so that its `nameserver` lines point to computers that don't run DNS servers. Test your network configuration by attempting to access remote servers via `ping`, a web browser, and other utilities. Observe the types of failures that result. When you're done, restore the original file.

**REVIEW QUESTIONS**

1. You want to set up a computer on a local network via a static TCP/IP configuration, but you lack a gateway address. Which of the following is true?
  - A. Because the gateway address is necessary, no TCP/IP networking functions will work.
  - B. TCP/IP networking will function, but you'll be unable to convert hostnames to IP addresses, and vice versa.
  - C. You'll be able to communicate with machines on your local network segment but not with other systems.
  - D. The computer won't be able to tell which other computers are local and which are remote.
  - E. You'll be able to use the computer as a network server system but not as a network client.
2. Which of the following types of information are returned by typing `ifconfig eth0`? (Select all that apply.)
  - A. The names of programs that are using `eth0`
  - B. The IP address assigned to `eth0`
  - C. The hardware address of `eth0`
  - D. The hostname associated with `eth0`
  - E. The gateway with which `eth0` communicates

*(Continues)*

**THE ESSENTIALS AND BEYOND** *(Continued)*

3. The `ping` utility responds normally when you use it with an IP address but not when you use it with a hostname that you're positive corresponds to this IP address. What might cause this problem? (Select all that apply.)
  - A. The route between your computer and its DNS server may be incorrect.
  - B. The target computer may be configured to ignore packets from `ping`.
  - C. The DNS configuration on the target system may be broken.
  - D. Your computer's hostname may be set incorrectly.
  - E. Your computer's DNS configuration may be broken.
4. True or false: IPv4 addresses are 4 bytes in length.
5. True or false: The `/etc/resolv.conf` file tells the computer whether to use DHCP for its network configuration.
6. True or false: You can check the current status of your routing table by typing `route` at a shell prompt.
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ program serves as a multipurpose network tool; it can do many of the same things as `ifconfig`, `route`, and several others.
8. The traditional name for the first Ethernet interface in Linux (but not in recent versions of Fedora) is \_\_\_\_\_.
9. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ is a program or system configuration that blocks or enables network access to, from, or through a computer based on the criteria that you specify.
10. An alternative to the `route` command to display default routes on some Linux distributions is \_\_\_\_\_.

## Answers to Review Questions

### Chapter 1

- 1. C** GUI programs create menus with the help of a library that's designed for this purpose; this is not a function of the Linux kernel. Thus option C is a nonkernel function, and it is correct. The kernel allocates memory and CPU time, and it also controls access to disk and network hardware, so options A, B, D, and E all describe kernel functions and are incorrect.
- 2. A** Android is used on smartphones, tablet computers, and other small portable devices. As such, it qualifies as an embedded OS, making option A correct. SUSE, CentOS, Debian, and Fedora are all examples of distributions intended mainly for use on desktop, laptop, and server computers; these do not qualify as embedded OSs, so options B, C, D, and E are all incorrect.
- 3. B** Linux's GUI is based on the X Window System. Although OS X provides an X implementation, its primary GUI is Apple's proprietary product. Thus option B is correct. Option A is incorrect because both Linux and OS X can run most GNU programs. Option C is incorrect because Linux can run on both Apple Macintosh and commodity PC hardware. Option D is incorrect because OS X includes many BSD utilities in its standard form. Furthermore, most Linux distributions use GNU utilities rather than their BSD equivalents, although you can use BSD utilities in Linux if you prefer. Option E is incorrect because both Linux and OS X support text-mode commands, although OS X makes it hard to use these commands in anything but its GUI Terminal application.

4. **False** The Linux kernel was intended as a “from-scratch” project to create a new Unix-like kernel. Although there are influences and similarities, the two kernels are largely independent of each other.
5. **False** Programs known as *terminals* enable entry of text-mode commands after you’ve logged into Linux in GUI mode. You can also switch between multiple *virtual terminals* by using keystrokes such as Ctrl+Alt+F2.
6. **True** CentOS’s release cycle is approximately every two years, which is long by the standards of Linux distributions, some of which have release cycles of just 6 months.
7. login:
8. viruses
9. alpha and beta
10. rolling

## Chapter 2

1. **C** The open source definition specifies that users should be able to distribute changes, but it doesn’t require that users distribute the software under the terms of the same license. Thus option C does not describe an open source requirement, and so it is the correct answer. Options A, B, D, and E all paraphrase actual open source license term requirements.
2. **B** Some distributions (particularly Enterprise versions that are sold for money) include software that is neither open source nor even freely redistributable, so option B is correct. Distributions as a whole use many licenses, not just one, so option A is incorrect. The MIT license is one of several open source licenses; such software is not an impediment to copying a distribution, so option C is incorrect. Although some distributions, such as Debian, aim to make their main systems fully open source compliant, not all do this, so option D is incorrect. Likewise, not all distributions are composed completely of free software as the FSF uses the term.

3. **E** Option E paraphrases one of the four key points in the FSF's philosophy, and so it is correct. Contrary to option A, the FSF's philosophy does not mandate the use of the GPL, much less its most recent version, although the GPL is the FSF's preferred license. Option B is contrary to the FSF's position, which is that free software should remain free; however, this option is compatible with the OSI's philosophy. Although the FSF advocates free software and free OSs, option C is not an explicit part of their philosophy and so is incorrect. Although the FSF wants to see a world dominated by free software, they do not advocate software piracy, so option D is incorrect.
4. **True** Courts and laws explicitly recognize computer software as being creative works that are governed by copyright law. In some countries, patent laws also apply to software, although this is not globally true.
5. **True** This principle is at the heart of both the free software and the open source software definitions.
6. **False** Hardware vendors often do release open source drivers for their products. One caveat is that the release of open source drivers necessarily render some programming interfaces for the hardware open, which some hardware vendors are reluctant to do.
7. LGPL (or Lesser GPL, or Lesser General Public License)
8. Creative Commons
9. copyleft
10. bounty

## Chapter 3

1. **A** Linux's multitasking is preemptive, meaning that the kernel can give CPU time to any process as it sees fit, potentially interrupting (or preempting) other processes. Thus option A is correct. Linux is a multiuser OS, but multiuser is not a type of multitasking, so option B is incorrect. In a cooperative multitasking OS, applications must voluntarily give up CPU time to each other. Although Linux programs can signal the OS that they don't need CPU time, Linux doesn't rely

exclusively on this method, so option C is incorrect. A single-tasking OS can run just one process at a time, so option D is incorrect. A single-user OS can support just one user at a time. Such OSs can be either single tasking or multitasking, and in the latter case, could use either cooperative or preemptive multitasking. Thus option E is incorrect.

2. **C** The open source definition includes 10 points, one of which is that users may modify the original code and redistribute the altered version. Thus option C is correct. Although, as a practical matter, all open source software is available at no charge, nothing in the open source definition forbids selling it. In practice, many organizations and individuals *do* sell open source software, either as a convenience (such as DVD-ROMs with Linux distributions for those with slow Internet connections) or in value-added arrangements (such as Red Hat Enterprise Linux, which bundles open source software with a support contract). Thus option A is incorrect. The open source definition requires distribution of source code, but does not require distribution of binaries. Thus option B is incorrect. Although some open source software, including the Linux kernel, began life in academia, this is not true of all open source software, so option D is incorrect. The open source definition does not specify that either an interpreted or a compiled language be used, and in fact both have been used to write open source software, so option E is incorrect.
3. **D** Evolution is an email reader program. Such programs are common on desktop computers, so option D is correct. Apache is a web server, Postfix is an email server, and the Berkeley Internet Name Domain (BIND) is a Domain Name System (DNS) server. Such servers are much less likely to be installed on desktop computers than are client programs such as Evolution, so options A, B, and E are all incorrect. Android is the name of a Linux distribution for smartphones and tablets, so option C is incorrect.
4. **False** VMS was an OS for minicomputers and mainframes when Linux was created. On x86 computers, DOS was the dominant OS in 1991.
5. **True** Digital video recorders (DVRs) are specialized computers for recording TV shows. Some commercial DVRs, such as TiVos, run Linux natively. DVR software for standard PCs, such as MythTV, which runs under Linux, also exists.
6. **True** Most server programs do not require the X Window System (X) GUI, so server computer administrators often disable X or even remove it

entirely to save disk space and memory and to minimize the risk of security problems.

7. monolithic
8. shareware
9. desktop
10. Apache

## Chapter 4

1. **B, C, E** GNOME, KDE, and Xfce are all Linux desktop environments, so options B, C, and E are all correct. (Others include LXDE and Unity.) The GIMP Toolkit (GTK+) is a GUI programming library. Although GNOME and Xfce are both built atop GTK+, it's not a desktop environment, so option A is incorrect. Evolution is a Linux email client, not a desktop environment, so option D is incorrect.
2. **B** The Network File System (NFS) was designed for exactly the task described in the question, so option B is correct. The Simple Mail Transfer Protocol (SMTP) enables one computer to send email messages to another computer, so it's a poor choice for achieving the stated goal and option A is incorrect. The PHP: Hypertext Processor (PHP) language is used to generate dynamic content for web pages, so option C is incorrect. The Domain Name System (DNS) is a protocol for delivering the mappings between hostnames and IP addresses to computers, so it won't easily achieve the stated goals, making option D incorrect. The Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) enables one computer to provide network configuration information to another one over a network link, so option E is incorrect.
3. **C** The main language for the Linux kernel is C, so option C is correct. Although Bash shell scripts control much of the Linux startup process, these scripts are not part of the kernel, so option A is incorrect. Java is a popular language for web-based applications, but it's not used in the Linux kernel, so option B is incorrect. C++ is a derivative of C that adds object-oriented features to the language, but the Linux kernel uses regular C, not C++, so option D is incorrect. Perl is a popular interpreted

- language, particularly for tasks that involve processing text, but it's not the language of the Linux kernel, so option E is incorrect.
4. **False** LibreOffice forked from the pre-Apache version of OpenOffice.org in 2011. Calligra split from the KOffice office suite, which is no longer maintained.
  5. **True** A denial-of-service (DoS) attack can disrupt a server's operation by directing an overwhelming quantity of bogus data at the server program, or even just the computer on which it runs. This is true even if the server is impeccably managed.
  6. **True** Python, like Perl, PHP, and shell languages, is interpreted. This contrasts with C and C++, which are two common compiled languages, and with Java, which is somewhere in-between.
  7. email client
  8. Samba
  9. compiled
  10. Package

## Chapter 5

1. **D** The `lspci` command displays information on PCI devices. Since many motherboard features appear to Linux as PCI devices, option D provides a great deal of information on your motherboard, and so it is correct. Option A's `lscpu` command provides information on the CPU, which means that it provides little direct information on the motherboard, so option A is incorrect. The `Xorg` program is the Linux X server, and option B creates a new X configuration file. This file might provide hints about video hardware on the motherboard, but option D provides better and more information, so option B is incorrect. The `fdisk` utility can partition a disk, and the command in option C displays information on how `/dev/sda` is partitioned. This information has nothing to do with the motherboard's features, though, so option C is incorrect. You can enter `http://localhost:631` in a web browser to configure your printer, but even if you do this, you'll gain no information about your motherboard's features, so option E is incorrect.

2. **A, D** Disk partitioning enables you to separate data of different types into different parts of a disk. Examples of reasons to do this include installing multiple OSs and separating filesystem data from swap space. Thus options A and D are both correct. Filesystem choice (ext4fs vs. ReiserFS) has nothing to do with partitioning, unless you want to use one filesystem for one partition and the other on another partition, so option B is incorrect. The Parallel Advanced Technology Attachment (PATA) and Serial ATA (SATA) interfaces are hardware standards; you can't turn a PATA disk into an SATA disk by partitioning the disk, so option C is incorrect. Hard disks have caches to improve performance, but partitioning the disk does not separate the disk's cache from the bulk of the disk's data, so option E is incorrect.
3. **A** Video monitors normally attach to the video circuitry built into a computer's motherboard or to a separate video card, so option A is correct. Keyboards, external hard disks, printers, and scanners all commonly connect to a computer via USB, although alternative interfaces exist for all of these devices.
4. **True** Most CPU families have multiple names. *EM64T* is one name that Intel has used for its implementation of the *x86-64* architecture, and *AMD64* is one of AMD's names for the same architecture. Thus the two names identify the same architecture, and an *AMD64* Linux distribution will run on an *EM64T* CPU.
5. **False** The Universal Disk Format (UDF) is a filesystem that's used primarily on optical discs, not on hard disks. Using it for a Linux installation on a hard disk would be awkward or impossible. Linux-specific filesystems (ext2fs, ext3fs, ext4fs, ReiserFS, JFS, XFS, and Btrfs) are the only practical choices for Linux installations on a hard disk.
6. **True** In Linux, most drivers, including those specified, are provided as part of the kernel. Some other drivers, such as those for video cards under X, printers, and scanners, exist outside the kernel, although these may also rely on kernel drivers to do their work.
7. 32
8. direct current
9. Digital Visual Interface (DVI)
10. driver

## Chapter 6

- 1. A** The Ctrl+A keystroke moves the cursor to the start of the line when editing a command in Bash, so option A is correct. The left-arrow key moves a single character to the left, Ctrl+T transposes two characters, the up arrow moves up one item in the history, and Ctrl+E moves to the end of the line.
- 2. C, D** Options C and D describe ways to run a program in the background from a shell, so options C and D are both correct. Neither `start` nor `bg` is a command that launches a program in the background. The `fg` command returns a program to the foreground, meaning that the shell will go back to sleep, which isn't what the question specifies.
- 3. D** The `less` program, like `more`, displays a text file a page at a time. The `less` utility also includes the ability to page backward in the text file, search its contents, and do other things that `more` can't do. Thus option D is correct. The `grep` command searches a file for a specified string, so it doesn't do a task that's similar to `more`, and option A is incorrect. The Hypertext Markup Language (HTML) is a file format, often indicated with the filename extension `.html`, that's commonly used on the Web. As such, it's not a better version of `more`, so option B is incorrect. The `cat` command can concatenate two or more files, or display a single file on the screen. In the former capacity, `cat` doesn't do the task of `more`, and in the latter capacity, `cat` is less capable than `more`. Thus option C is incorrect. The `man` command displays Linux manual pages. Although `man` uses `less` by default, `man` is not itself an improved version of `more`, so option E is incorrect.
- 4. False** When in X, Ctrl must be added to the VT-switching keystroke, so the correct keystroke should be Ctrl+Alt+F2 (or other function keys, through F6).
- 5. True** When you want to override `man`'s search order, you specify the desired manual section between `man` and the command name, filename, or other name on which you're searching.
- 6. False** Although `info` pages, like web pages, use hyperlinks to tie related documents together, the two systems use different formats and protocols. `info` pages also reside on the computer's hard disk; they require no Internet access to read. For these reasons, `info` pages are *not* web-based.

7. **False** Individual program authors decide on a documentation file format based on their own specific needs and preferences. Although some documents are in OpenDocument Text format, many documents are not.
8. `exit`
9. `node`
10. `locate`

## Chapter 7

1. **A** The `mv` command moves or renames a file, so option A is correct. The `cp` command copies a file, so option B is incorrect. The `ln` command creates a link between two files, so option C is incorrect. Option D's `rn` command is fictitious, so this option is incorrect. The `touch` command creates a new file or adjusts the time stamps on an existing file, so option E is incorrect.
2. **C** Because two files (`outline.pdf` and `Outline.PDF`) have names that differ only in case, and because FAT is a case-insensitive filesystem, one of those files will be missing on the copy. (Both files will be copied, but the second one copied will overwrite the first.) Thus option C is correct. The specified `cp` command does not create links, so option A is incorrect. Because the specified `cp` command included the `-a` option, which performs a recursive copy, all of the files in `MyFiles` will be copied, along with the directory itself, so option B is incorrect. In order to copy all of the files, you will have to change one file's name manually; however, `cp` won't do this automatically, so option D is incorrect. Because option C is correct, option E is not correct.
3. **A, B** If you try to create a directory inside a directory that doesn't exist, `mkdir` responds with a `No such file or directory` error. The `-parents` parameter tells `mkdir` to create all necessary parent directories automatically in such situations, so option A is correct. You can also manually do this by creating each necessary directory separately, so option B is also correct. (It's possible that `mkdir` one wouldn't be necessary in this example if the directory one already existed. No harm will come from trying to create a directory that already exists, although `mkdir` will return a `File exists` error.) Option C will have no useful effect; at most, it will change the time

stamps on the `mkdir` program file, but if you type it as a normal user, it probably won't even do that. Options D and E are both based on the premise that you must remove directories that already exist with the names that you want to use, but this isn't true, so these options are both incorrect.

4. **True** Symbolic links work by storing the name of the linked-to file in the symbolic link file. Linux reads this filename and transparently substitutes the linked-to file. This process works both on a single filesystem and across filesystems, so the statement is true. Hard links, by contrast, work by providing multiple directory entries that point to a single file. This method of creating a link does *not* work across low-level filesystems.
5. **False** Linux's security features prevent accidental damage when you work as an ordinary user. You must be more careful when you acquire root privileges to perform system maintenance, though.
6. **True** The `touch` command updates a file's time stamps, and for this purpose, a directory counts as a file, so this statement is true.
7. `-u` or `--update`
8. `rm -R junk`, `rm -r junk`, or `rm --recursive junk`
9. `?`
10. `/etc`

## Chapter 8

- 1 **A** The `grep` utility finds matching text within a file and prints those lines. It accepts regular expressions, which means that you can place in brackets the two characters that differ in the words for which you're looking. Option A shows the correct syntax for doing this. The `tar` utility creates or manipulates archive files, and option B's syntax is incorrect for any use of `tar`, so that option is incorrect. The `find` utility locates files based on filenames, file sizes, and other surface features. Furthermore, options C and E both present incorrect syntax for `find`, and so are incorrect. Option D's `cat` utility displays or concatenates files, so it won't have the desired effect and this option is wrong.

2. **E** The `>>` operator appends standard output to a file, so option E is correct. The vertical bar (`|`) is the pipe character; it ties one program's standard output to another's standard input, so option A is incorrect. The `2>` operator redirects standard error, not standard output, and it overwrites the target file. Thus option B is incorrect. The `&>` operator redirects *both* standard output *and* standard error, and it overwrites the target file, so option C is incorrect. The `>` operator redirects standard output, but it overwrites the target file, so option D is incorrect.
3. **D** With the `tar` utility, the `--list (t)` command is used to read the archive and display its contents. The `--verbose (v)` option creates a verbose file listing, and `--file (f)` specifies the filename—`data79.tar` in this case. Option D uses all of these features, and therefore does as the question specifies. Options A, B, C, and E all substitute other commands for `--list`, which is required by the question, so all of these options are incorrect.
4. **True** The special characters `[^x]` match any single character *except* `x`, and `.*` matches any sequence of any characters. The string `Linus Torvalds` is just one of many strings to match the specified regular expression.
5. **True** You can use the `-size n` option in the `find` command to locate files based on their sizes.
6. **False** The `zip` utility creates or manipulates zip archive files. This file type supports compression directly, as does the `zip` program. Thus there's no need to involve another compression program to compress files archived with `zip`.
7. `^`
8. `cut`
9. `&>`
10. `lossless`

## Chapter 9

1. **E** The `apt-get` utility is a network-enabled tool that can resolve dependencies and retrieve all of the required packages to install a package that you specify. Debian and its derivatives all use it, so option E is correct. The `yum` and `zypper` programs are conceptually similar to

apt-get, but they work on Red Hat (and its derivatives) and SUSE distributions, respectively, so options A and B are both incorrect. The dmesg program displays the kernel ring buffer; it has nothing to do with package management, so option C is incorrect. The rpm program is a non-network-enabled program for managing packages on an RPM-based system, not on a Debian system, so option D is incorrect.

2. **A** Typically, Linux starts `init` as the first process, so option A is correct. `bash` is a Linux text-mode shell program. Although it's important for user interaction, it's far from the first process Linux starts. The `cron` daemon manages timed execution of programs to handle routine maintenance tasks. It's started automatically in the boot process, but it's not the first process the kernel starts, so option C is incorrect. Although the `login` process is critical to logging in users in text mode, it's started by `init` or by another process, so option D is incorrect. The Grand Unified Bootloader (GRUB) boots the computer, so parts of GRUB run *before* the kernel. Several Linux programs help manage a GRUB installation, but the kernel doesn't start any of them automatically. Thus option E is incorrect.
3. **A** Option A, `/var/log`, is the standard home for log files in Linux. Options B through E all present fictitious locations and so are all incorrect.
4. **True** Network-enabled package managers, such as APT, `yum`, `zypper`, and `urpmi`, can automatically download and install dependent packages for a main package.
5. **True** The `top` program sorts a process list by CPU use, so the topmost item in the list is currently consuming the most CPU time. You can change the sort order in various ways, though.
6. **True** Like on-disk log files, the kernel ring buffer (which `dmesg` displays) changes as the computer runs. Thus its contents immediately after booting are not likely to be the same as its contents after the computer has been running for weeks.
7. package database
8. child
9. `syslog`
10. `dmesg`

## Chapter 10

- D** LibreOffice, like most word processors, uses a binary format that can't be properly parsed using an ASCII or Unicode text editor. Thus nano won't be useful in examining such a document, making option D correct. The nano text editor can handle ASCII or Unicode format, so the text files described in options A and C are incorrect. The other document types described in options B and E are all likely or certain to be stored in ASCII or Unicode format, making them incorrect choices.
- B, E** The F6 and Ctrl+W keystrokes both invoke the search function, so options B and E are correct. The F3 key writes the current buffer to disk, so option A is incorrect. The Esc+S keystroke is an obscure one; it enables or disables smooth scrolling, so option C is incorrect. Ctrl+F moves forward one character, so option D is incorrect.
- A** In the vi editor, dd is the command-mode command that deletes lines. Preceding this command by a number deletes that number of lines. Thus option A is correct. Although yy works similarly, it copies (yanks) text rather than deleting it, so option B is incorrect. Option C works in many text editors, but not in vi. Option D works in emacs and similar text editors (including pico and nano), but not in vi. Option E, or something similar, works in many GUI text editors, but not in vi, so it is incorrect.
- False** Unicode provides support for most alphabets, including the huge logographic systems used in common East Asian languages.
- False** Support for underlining, italics, multiple fonts, and similar advanced formatting features is present in word processors, not plain-text editors—even GUI text editors lack such support.
- True** Due to its ease of use, nano is typically the best editor to learn first.
- 128
- Ctrl+\ and Esc+R
- u
- ZZ

## Chapter 11

- 1. A** Scripts, like binary programs, normally have at least one executable bit set, although they can be run in certain ways without this feature, so option A is correct. There is no standard `/usr/bin/scripts` directory, and scripts can reside in any directory, so option B is incorrect. Scripts are interpreted programs, which means that they don't need to be compiled. Typing `bash scriptname` will run the script; option C is incorrect. Viruses are extremely rare in Linux, and because you just created the script, the only ways in which it could possibly contain a virus would be if your system was already infected or if you wrote it as a virus. Thus option D is incorrect. Most spell checkers are intended for English or other human languages, so they lack valid Bash commands such as `esac`. Furthermore, even if every keyword is spelled correctly, the script could contain bugs. Thus option E is incorrect.
- 2. C** The `cp` command is the only one called in the script, and that command copies files. Because the script passes the arguments (`$1` and `$2`) to `cp` in reverse order, their effect is reversed—whereas `cp` copies its first argument to the second name, the `cp1` script copies the second argument to the first name. Option C correctly describes this effect. Option A ignores the reversed order of the arguments, so this option is incorrect. The `cp` command has nothing to do with compiling C or C++ programs, and neither does the script, making option B incorrect. Since `cp` is a simple file-copying command, it can't convert a C program into a C++ program, making option D incorrect. The script's first line is a valid shebang line, contrary to option E, so that option is incorrect.
- 3. C** Conditional expressions return a true or false response, enabling the script to execute one set of instructions or another or to terminate or continue a loop. Option C is another way of saying this, and so it is correct. Conditional expressions have nothing to do with license conditions (option A), displaying information on the environment (option B), Pavlovian conditioning (option D), or executing the script at certain times of day (option E). That said, conditional expressions *could* be used in the service of any of these goals, but that's not their purpose.
- 4. False** The `$0` variable holds the name of the script—`myscript` in this example. To access the first parameter passed to the script (`laser.txt`), the script must use the `$1` variable.

5. **True** You can use `for` to execute a loop a fixed number of times, whereas `while` and `until` execute until a test condition is no longer met or is met, respectively.
6. **False** The effect of the specified script is to launch three instances of `terminal` *sequentially*; the second launches only after the first terminates, and the third launches only after the second terminates. To do as the question specifies, you should include a trailing ampersand (`&`) in at least the first two calls to `terminal` (as in `terminal &`); this causes them to run in the background, so that the script can continue to execute to launch the remaining instances of `terminal`.
7. `#!/bin/sh`
8. `echo`
9. `case`
10. `exit`

## Chapter 12

1. **A** UID 0 is reserved for the system administrator's account, also known as `root`, so option A is correct. The first ordinary user account is not a system account, and its UID is normally 500 or 1000, depending on the distribution, so option B is incorrect. Because A is correct, C cannot be correct. The association of UID 0 for administrative tasks is basic in Linux, so you won't find variation on this score, making option D incorrect. Option E describes the `nobody` account, which does not have a UID of 0.
2. **A, C, E** The `/etc/passwd` file's fields specify the username, an encrypted password (or `x` to denote use of shadow passwords, which is more common), a UID number (option A), a *single* default GID number, a comment field that normally holds the user's full name, the path to the account's home directory (option C), and the path to the account's default text-mode shell (option E). Option B is incorrect because, although `/etc/passwd` includes the user's *default* group, the user *may* belong to additional groups that are defined elsewhere. Option D is incorrect because the user's default desktop environment is defined in the user's home directory, not in `/etc/passwd`.

3. **A** The `sudo` command is the usual way to execute a single command as root, and option A gives the correct syntax to use it as the question specifies. There is no standard root command, so option B is incorrect. The `passwd` command changes passwords, so option C is incorrect. Although you can use `su` to execute a single command as root, you must use it with the `-c` option to do this, as in `su -c "cat /etc/shadow"`, so option D is incorrect. Option E's `admin` is a fictitious command, so this option is incorrect.
4. **False** The `whoami` command displays your username only. The `id` command displays your username, your UID number, your primary group name, your primary GID number, and the group names and GID numbers of all your groups.
5. **False** The name for the group data file in Linux is `/etc/group`, not `/etc/groups`.
6. **True** It's possible to do more damage to a computer as root than as an ordinary user. Thus you should be extra cautious when using root—run only trusted programs, double-check your commands for errors, and so on.
7. `/etc/passwd`
8. `w`
9. `system`
10. `nonrepudiation`

## Chapter 13

1. **C** The `userdel` command deletes an account, and the `-r` option to `userdel` causes it to delete the user's home directory and mail spool, thus satisfying the terms of the question. Option A deletes the account but leaves the user's home directory intact. Option B does the same; the `-f` option forces account deletion and file removal under some circumstances, but it's meaningful only when `-r` is also used. Option D's command will probably have no effect, since `rm` works on directories only in conjunction with `-r`, and `/home/nemo` is probably the user's home directory. Option E's `rm` command deletes the user's home directory (assuming that it's located in the conventional place, given the username), but it doesn't delete the user's account.

2. **B** The password in option B uses a combination of upper- and lowercase letters, numbers, and symbols, and it doesn't contain any obvious word. Furthermore, it's a long password. All of these characteristics make it unlikely to appear in an intruder's password dictionary and make it hard to guess. Thus option B represents a good password, and the best of those shown. Option A is the name of a well-known celebrity (at least in the Linux world!); such a name is likely to appear in password-cracking dictionaries, and so it makes a poor password choice. Option C is an extremely common password, which makes it a bad choice. Furthermore, it's short and it consists of just one symbol type (digits). Option D is another popular (and therefore very poor) password. It's a single common word in all lowercase, and it contains no numbers or other nonalphabetic symbols. Although option E is fairly long, it consists entirely of lowercase letters, and it's three related words, making it a poor password.
3. **A** The `groupadd` command creates a new group, as described in option A, so that option is correct. To add a user to a group, as suggested by option B, you would use the `usermod` utility. No standard command imports group information from a file, as option C suggests, so this option is incorrect. (Some network user management tools do provide such functionality, though.) To change a user's default group or list of supplemental groups, you would use `usermod`, so options D and E are both incorrect.
4. **True** System accounts have UID values between 0 and some number (normally 499 or 999), whereas user accounts have UID values above that number (starting at 500 or 1000, typically).
5. **False** The usual command-line command for changing passwords is `passwd`.
6. **True** Although the `userdel` command's `-r` option deletes the user's home directory and mail files, this command doesn't track down the user's files stored in more-exotic locations. You can use `find` to locate such files if you want to delete them or transfer ownership to another user.
7. `-u 1926 theo`
8. `usermod -l emilyn e1211`
9. `-r` or `--system`
10. `/etc/group`

## Chapter 14

- D** Option D is the correct command. Typing `chown ralph:tony some-file.txt`, as in option A, sets the owner of the file to `ralph` and the group to `tony`. The `chmod` command used in options B and E is used to change file permissions, not ownership. Option C reverses the order of the filename and the owner.
- C, D** The `d` character that leads the mode indicates that the file is a directory, while the `r` symbol in the `r-x` triplet at the end of the symbolic mode indicates that all users of the system have read access to the directory, so options C and D are both correct. Leading `l` characters, which this mode lacks, denotes symbolic links, so option A is incorrect. Although the `x` symbols usually denote executable program files, as specified in option B, in the case of directories, this permission bit indicates that the directory's contents may be searched; executing a directory is meaningless. The only permission field set for write access is in the first triplet, which refers to the file's owner, so only that user, and not other members of the file's group, may write to the file, contrary to option E.
- E** Although the `chgrp` command is the usual one for changing a file's group, you can also use `chown` to do the job, so option E is correct. Option A's `groupadd` command adds a new group to the system, so this option is incorrect. The `groupmod` command can modify details of a group definition, but it doesn't change the group associated with a file, so option B is incorrect. The `chmod` command changes a file's mode (that is, its permissions), but not its group association, so option C is incorrect. You can use `ls` to learn a file's current group (among other things), but not to change it, so option D is incorrect.
- True** The octal permission of 755 corresponds to a symbolic representation of `-rwxr-xr-x`, which includes world read permissions (in the final three bits of `r-x`). Thus anybody can read the file.
- False** Any user may use `chmod`; however, only a file's owner or root may change the permissions on a file.
- True** Although an ordinary user can use `chown` to change a file's group, ordinary users cannot change a file's ownership.

7. -R or --recursive
8. r-x
9. a+x
10. o+t

## Chapter 15

1. **C** The gateway computer is a router that transfers data between two or more network segments. As such, if a computer isn't configured to use a gateway, it won't be able to communicate beyond its local network segment, as option C suggests. (If your DNS server is on a different network segment, name resolution via DNS won't work, although other types of name resolution, such as `/etc/hosts` file entries, will still work.) Lack of a gateway address will not cause the symptoms described by options A, B, D, or E.
2. **B, C** When used to display information on an interface, `ifconfig` shows the hardware (option C) and IP (option B) addresses of the interface, the protocols (such as TCP/IP) bound to the interface, and statistics on transmitted and received packets. This command does *not* return information about programs using the interface (option A), the hostname associated with the interface (option D), or the gateway with which it communicates (option E).
3. **A, E** DNS problems can manifest as an ability to connect to computers using IP addresses but not using hostnames. Thus options A and E (and various other DNS-related problems) could create the symptoms described. If the target system were configured to ignore ping packets, as described in option B, it wouldn't respond when you identified it by IP address. The target system's DNS configuration (option C) doesn't enter into the equation, because it responds to the ping request via IP address alone. Your computer's local hostname configuration won't affect its ability to send or receive packets, even by hostname, so option D is incorrect.
4. **True** IPv4 addresses are 4 bytes long, and they are typically expressed as four decimal numbers separated by dots, as in 192.168.0.1.

5. **False** The `/etc/resolv.conf` file holds DNS server information—the IP addresses of up to three DNS servers and domain names that should be searched when the user omits them.
6. **True** When used without any other options, the `route` command displays the current routing table.
7. `netstat`
8. `eth0`
9. `firewall`
10. `ip route show`

## LPI's Certification Program

*The purpose of the* Linux Essentials Program is to define the basic knowledge required to use a desktop or mobile device competently using the Linux operating system. The program guides and encourages those who are new to Linux, and to open source in general, to understand the place of these tools in the context of the broader IT industry.

The program is made up of several main components:

- ▶ Linux Essentials exam and certification
- ▶ Support for worldwide participation in the WorldSkills Information and Communication Technology (ICT) category, IT Network Systems Administration
- ▶ Regional links to employability and apprenticeship programs available to youth
- ▶ Research and resources supporting youth entry into Linux and open source careers
- ▶ Linux Professional Institute (LPI) support for regional government and educational qualification authorities where appropriate
- ▶ LPI support for teacher collaboration and sharing of projects and exercises for the Linux Essentials knowledge base
- ▶ Resources for youth describing jobs and industries requiring Linux skills

### The Linux Essentials Certification

The successful Linux Essentials candidate should have an understanding of the Linux and open source industry and knowledge of the most popular open source applications. The candidate should understand the major components of the Linux operating system and have the technical proficiency

to work on the Linux command line. The candidate has at least a basic understanding of security- and administration-related topics, such as managing users and groups, working on the command line, and using permissions. An LPI Linux Essentials Technician (LPI LET) is most likely the end user of a mostly managed system.

The LPI LET, at a minimum, typically:

- ▶ Has a basic understanding of free and open source software, the various communities, and licenses
- ▶ Understands the basic concepts of processes, programs, and components of an operating system
- ▶ Has a basic knowledge of computer hardware
- ▶ Has a basic appreciation of system security, users and groups, and file permissions for public and private directories
- ▶ Has a basic understanding of how to make the system accessible and is able to connect to other computers on a local area network
- ▶ Demonstrates a knowledge of open source applications in the workplace as they relate to closed source equivalents
- ▶ Understands navigation systems on a Linux desktop and where to go for help
- ▶ Has a rudimentary ability to work on the command line and with files
- ▶ Is able to make and restore simple backups (archives)
- ▶ Can use a basic command-line editor
- ▶ Understands file compression
- ▶ Is able to create and run simple scripts

## Certification Objectives Map

Table B.1 provides approximate objective mappings for the LPI Linux Essentials Program. It identifies the chapters and sections that cover the exam objectives. Be aware, however, that some specific programs and technologies are mentioned in multiple objectives, so you may find more-complete coverage of some topics in chapters other than those noted in Table B.1. Consult this book's index if you need help finding a specific subject.

TABLE B.1: LPI Linux Essentials objectives map

Objectives	Chapter(s)
<b>Topic 1: The Linux Community and a Career in Open Source</b>	
1.1 Linux Evolution and Popular Operating Systems	Chapters 1, 3
1.2 Major Open Source Applications	Chapter 4
1.3 Understanding Open Source Software and Licensing	Chapter 2
1.4 ICT Skills and Working in Linux	Chapters 4, 6
<b>Topic 2: Finding Your Way on a Linux System</b>	
2.1 Command-Line Basics	Chapters 6, 7, 11
2.2 Using the Command Line to Get Help	Chapter 6
2.3 Using Directories and Listing Files	Chapter 7
2.4 Creating, Moving, and Deleting Files	Chapters 7, 8
<b>Topic 3: The Power of the Command Line</b>	
3.1 Archiving Files on the Command Line	Chapter 8
3.2 Searching and Extracting Data from Files	Chapter 6, 8
3.3 Turning Commands into a Script	Chapters 10, 11
<b>Topic 4: The Linux Operating System</b>	
4.1 Choosing an Operating System	Chapter 1
4.2 Understanding Computer Hardware	Chapter 5
4.3 Where Data Is Stored	Chapters 7, 9
4.4 Your Computer on the Network	Chapter 15
<b>Topic 5: Security and File Permissions</b>	
5.1 Basic Security and Identifying User Types	Chapter 12
5.2 Creating Users and Groups	Chapter 13
5.3 Managing File Permissions and Ownership	Chapter 14
5.4 Special Directories and Files	Chapters 7, 14



# INDEX

Note to the reader: Throughout this index boldfaced page numbers indicate primary discussions of a topic. Italicized page numbers indicate illustrations.

## A

- AbiWord, 59
- absolute references, 136
- accounts, 227
  - creating, 245–253
    - group strategy, 245–246
    - with GUI tools, 249–251
    - password selection, 246–248, 323
    - from shell, 251–253
  - deleting
    - GUI tools, 260, 261
    - pitfalls, 259–260
    - from shell, 261
  - discovering own identity, 234–235
  - features, 228–231
  - identifying, 232–233
  - locking password, 256
  - modifying, 253–259
    - checking for logged-in users, 254–255
    - GUI tools, 255–256
    - from shell, 257–259
  - root, 102, 316, 321, 322
    - acquiring privileges, 238–240
    - company policies, 239
    - permissions, 276
    - using safely, 241–242
    - working as, 237–242
  - selecting password, 246–248
  - system, 227, 323
  - tools, 234–237
  - user, 227, 238
  - usernames, 228, 229
- Active Directory (AD), 232
- administrative tasks, 238
- administrator. *See* root account
- Adobe Reader, 39
- Advanced Package Tool (APT), 179, 318
- alpha software, 18
- AMD64, 313
- AMD/ATI drivers, 91, 95
- American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII), 193, 194, 319
- Android, 16, 38, 307
- Apache HTTPD, 66, 310
- Apache license, 31
- Apache OpenOffice.org, 12, 43, 59, 312
- aplay command, 221
- Apple Partition Map (APM), 84
- appliances, 42
- apps, 62
- apropos command, 112
- APT. *See* Advanced Package Tool
- apt-get, 72, 180, 317–318
- Aqua, 10
- Arch distribution, 17
- archive file, 166, 317
- archiving data, 166–172
- arguments, 105
  - in scripts, 215–216
- ARM CPU type, 69, 77
- Artistic license, 31
- ASCII. *See* American Standard Code for Information Interchange
- aspect ratio, 92
- assembly language, 69, 70
- assignment operator, 218
- asterisks (\*)
  - file manipulation, 143
  - filename expansion, 220
  - in grep searches, 155
  - in regular expressions, 152
  - traceroute output, 301
- ATA Packet Interface (ATAP), 81
- AT&T, 8, 37
- Audacity, 60
- automotive computers, 42

## B

- background programs, running, 106–107, 314
- backslash (\), for escaping, 152–153

- backticks, 165
  - Bash. *See* Bourne Again Shell
  - Basic Input/Output System (BIOS), 83
  - batch files, 211
  - Bell Labs, 8
  - Berkeley Internet Name Domain (BIND), 310
  - Berkeley Software Distribution (BSD), 9, 37
  - Berne Convention, 22
  - beta software, 18
  - bg command, 106
  - binaries, 2
  - binary code, 10
  - binary packages, 176
  - BIND. *See* Berkeley Internet Name Domain
  - /bin/sh, 212
  - BIOS. *See* Basic Input/Output System
  - BIOS partitioning, 83
  - bit depth, 77
  - Blender, 60
  - bounties, 32
  - Bountysource, 32
  - Bourne Again Shell (bash/Bash), 3, 71, 100, 314
    - export command, 218
  - Bourne Shell, 100
  - bracket expressions, 152, 317
  - bracketed values, 143
  - BSD. *See* Berkeley Software Distribution
  - BSD license, 30
  - Btrfs, 86, 87
  - build directory, 120
  - bzip2, 169–170
- C**
- C language, 70, 310
  - C++ language, 70
  - Calligra, 59, 312
  - cameras, 93–94
  - Canonical, 48
  - caret (^), in regular expressions, 152
  - case sensitivity, 144
  - cat command, 153, 160–161, 314
  - cat /proc/cpuinfo, 78
  - The Cathedral and the Bazaar* (Raymond), 40
  - CC. *See* Creative Commons
  - cd command, 135
  - CDE desktop environment, 48
  - cell phones, 16, 41
  - CentOS, 15, 38, 72, 178, 308
  - central processing unit (CPU), 75. *See also specific CPU types*
    - bit depth, 77
    - families, 76–77
    - identifying, 78
    - multicore, 77
  - cfdisk, 84
  - cgdisk, 84
  - chgrp command, 271, 324
  - chipset, 78
  - chmod command, 276–277, 324
  - chown command, 270–271, 324
  - Chrome, 56
  - Chromium browser, 56
  - CIFS, 65, 268
  - click-through licenses, 23
  - click-wrap licenses, 23
  - clock rate, 76
  - cloud computing, 60–61
  - Cocoa, 10
  - colon command (vi editor), 202
  - command completion, 107–108
  - command history, 108–110
  - command line
    - generating, 164–165
    - launching terminal, 100–103, 101–103
    - logging in to text-mode console, 103–104
    - running GUI programs, 106
    - running text-mode programs, 104–106
    - starting, 99–100
  - command substitution, 165
  - command-line shells, 3
  - commands. *See also specific commands*
    - file-manipulation, 213–215
    - mounting disks, 88
    - in shell scripts, 212–215
  - comment fields, 228
  - commercial software, 39
  - common passwords, 248–249
  - compiled languages, 69
  - compiler, 10
  - compression, 169–170
  - concatenate, 105
  - conditional expressions, 219–220, 320
  - configuration directory, 132
  - consultants, 124
  - cooperative multitasking, 36
  - copying text, 199–200, 205–206
  - copyleft, 25
  - copyright, 22–24, 309
  - core Unix tools, 13
  - cp command, 139–140, 147, 320
  - Creative Commons (CC), 21, 29–30
  - crowdfunding, 32
  - cut command, 153, 158, 214

**D**

- daemons, 66
  - initialization, 67
  - log messages, 188
  - system log, 188–189
- Dash, 249
- Debian distribution, 32, 48
  - managing, 179–181, 180
  - network configuration tools, 295
- Debian package system, 15, 72, 175, 176
- default shell, 229
- defined path, 105
- denial-of-service attack (DoS attack), 67, 312
- dependencies, 176
- desktop and laptop computers, 42–43
- desktop environment, 3, 6, 7, 9. *See also specific desktop environments*
  - choosing, 48–50
  - file managers, 52–54
  - launching programs, 50–52
  - using, 47–54
- /dev/null, 163
- df command, 217
- dhcClient, 295, 296
- DHCP. *See* Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol
- dhcpcd, 295
- dig command, 302
- digital video recorders (DVR), 17, 41, 60, 310
- directories
  - build, 120
  - changing, 135
  - configuration, 132
  - creating, 145
  - deleting, 145–146
  - executable, 132
  - filesystems, 130–133
  - home, 52, 136, 228–229
  - library, 132
  - managing, 147
  - permissions, 324
  - root, 136
  - starting point, 155
  - unified tree, 136
  - viewing permissions, 282–283
- directory execute bit, 275
- directory write permissions, 275
- disks
  - filesystems, 85–88
  - interfaces, 81
  - partitioning, 82–85, 313
  - removable and optical disks, 88–89
- \$DISPLAY env variable, 216
- displays, 313
  - common hardware, 91–92, 92
  - managing, 89–92
  - resolution, 92
- distributions, 13–18, 38, 308. *See also specific distributions*
  - common, 14–17
  - components, 13–14
  - release cycles, 17–18
- dmesg, 189–190, 318
- DNS. *See* Domain Name System
- DNS server, 285
- documentation, 314–315. *See also* info pages; man pages
  - experts, 123–124
  - online, 123
  - program, 120–122
- dollar sign (\$)
  - in regular expressions, 152
  - in scripts, 216
- Domain Name System (DNS), 43, 285, 310, 324
  - settings, 297
  - testing, 302
- DOS, 36
- DoS attack. *See* denial-of-service attack
- dot (.) in regular expressions, 152
- dpkg, 72, 179
- drivers, 75, 309, 313
  - locating and installing, 95–96
  - managing, 94–96
  - types, 94–95
  - video, 91
  - Wi-Fi, 292
- Dropbox, 61
- dual-booting, file ownership, 268
- DVI cable, 91, 92
- DVR. *See* digital video recorders
- Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP), 65, 286, 288

**E**

- Ease, 59
- e-book readers, 41, 93–94
- echo command, 214
- echo \$PATH, 109
- edit mode (vi editor), 202
- editing modes, 195
- EIDE. *See* Enhanced IDE
- else clause, 220
- Emacs, 119, 195

email clients, 58  
 embedded systems, 17, 41–42  
 end-user license agreements (EULAs), 23  
 Enhanced IDE (EIDE), 81  
 entry mode (*vi* editor), 202  
 environment, 215  
 environmental variable, 218  
 Epiphany, 57  
 eSATA, 81  
 escaping, 152–153  
`/etc/fstab` file, 91  
`/etc/group`, 322  
`/etc/passwd` file, 228, 321  
     contents, 229–230  
     viewing, 231  
`/etc/resolv.conf`, 295, 297, 324  
`/etc/shadow` file, 228–230  
`/etc/xorg.conf` file, 91, 92  
 Ethernet, 286  
 EULAs. *See* end-user license agreements  
 Evince, 59  
 Evolution, 43, 58, 59, 310  
 executable directories, 132  
 execute bit, 274, 320  
`exit` command, 223  
 exit status, 218  
 exit value, 222  
 exit value of scripts, 222  
`export` command, 218  
 ext2fs, 86, 268  
 ext3fs, 86  
 ext4fs, 86, 87  
 extended regular expressions, 152  
 Extents Filesystem (XFS), 86, 87  
 external disk storage, 93

## F

fair use, 22  
 FAT filesystem, 87, 268, 315  
`fdisk`, 84  
 FDL. *See* GNU Free Documentation License  
 Fedora distribution, 38, 48, 52, 72, 178  
     network configuration tools, 295  
     network device names, 296  
 Fedora Documentation, 123  
`fg` command, 107  
 FHS. *See* Filesystem Hierarchy Standard  
 file managers, 7, 52–54  
     removable media, 89  
     setting file ownership, 269–270  
     setting permissions, 276

file retention policies, 259  
 file type codes, 273  
 file-manipulation commands, 213–215  
 files  
     absolute and relative references, 136, 136–137  
     archive, 166, 317  
     case sensitivity, 144  
     copying, 139–140  
     creating, 138–139  
     deleting, 143  
     header, 70  
     hidden, 281–282  
     links, 141–142  
     listings, 133–135  
     log, 175, 187–190, 318  
     manipulating, 137–144, 213–215  
     moving and renaming, 140–141  
     preserving, 259  
     scripts and, 213–215  
     security, 146  
     text, 193–195  
     user, 259  
     user *vs.* system, 128–129  
     variable, 130  
     wildcards, 143–144  
 Filesystem Hierarchy Standard (FHS), 129–130, 130  
 filesystems, 85–88, 127  
     directories, 130–133  
     FHS, 129–130, 130  
`find` command, 121, 153, 155–157, 164–165, 214, 317  
 firewall, 304  
 FLOSS. *See* free/libre open source software  
 for loop, 221, 321  
 forks, 8  
 FOSS. *See* free and open source software  
 FOSS Factory, 32  
 free and open source software (FOSS), 28  
`free` command, 105, 186–187  
 free software, 24, 39, 309  
 Free Software Foundation (FSF), 21, 24–26, 118, 309  
 FreeBSD, 9, 41  
 free/libre open source software (FLOSS), 28  
 freeware software, 24, 39  
 FSF. *See* Free Software Foundation  
`fstab` file, 91  
 functions in scripts, 221–222

## G

gateway, 325. *See also* router  
`gdisk`, 84  
 Geany, 196

- gedit, 195, 212
  - General Public License (GPL), 24, 25–26, 30
  - generating command lines, 164–165
  - generic video drivers, 91
  - Gentoo, 17
  - getent passwd, 231–232
  - Ghostsript, 95–96
  - GID. *See* group ID
  - GIMP. *See* GNU Image Manipulation Program
  - GIMP Toolkit (GTK+), 48, 310
  - Global Positioning System (GPS), 42
  - Globally Unique Identifier (GUID), 83
  - globbing, 143, 220
  - Gmail, 61
  - GNOME, 3, 6, 9, 43, 48–50, 57, 310
  - GNOME Office, 58–59
  - GNOME Terminal. *See* Terminal (GNOME terminal)
  - GNU Free Documentation License (FDL), 26
  - GNU HURD, 8, 37
  - GNU Image Manipulation Program (GIMP), 43, 60
  - GNU Parted, 84
  - GNU project, 8–9, 24, 37
  - GNU tools, 8–9, 13
  - Gnumeric, 59
  - GParted, 84, 85
  - GPL. *See* General Public License
  - GPS. *See* Global Positioning System
  - GPT. *See* GUID Partition Table
  - graphical user interface (GUI), 3, 307
    - accounts
      - creating, 249–251
      - deleting, 260, 261
      - modifying, 255–256
    - group management, 262, 262–263, 263
    - network connection configuration, 293–295
    - running, 106
    - text editors, 195–196
    - using, 6–7, 6–8
  - grep command, 153, 154–155, 214, 314, 316
    - log files, 188
  - group ID (GID), 228, 233–234, 268, 321
    - reuse, 260
  - groupadd command, 263–264, 323
  - groupdel command, 265
  - groupmod command, 264, 268
  - groups, 227, 233–234
    - file association with, 268
    - managing
      - GUI tools, 262, 262–263, 263
      - from shell, 263–265
    - permissions, 274
    - project, 246
      - strategy, 245–246
      - user, 246
      - wheel, 265
  - GTK+. *See* GIMP Toolkit
  - GUI. *See* graphical user interface
  - GUI programs, 307
    - running, 106
  - GUID. *See* Globally Unique Identifier
  - GUID Partition Table (GPT), 83
  - gzip, 169–170
- ## H
- HandBrake, 60
  - hard link, 141
  - hashbang, 212
  - hashpling, 212
  - HDMI cable, 91
  - head command, 160
  - header files, 70
  - HFS filesystem, 87
  - HFS+ filesystem, 87, 268
  - hfsplus driver, 87
  - hidden bit, 281
  - hidden files, 281–282
  - history command, 109
  - home directory, 52, 228–229
    - references, 136
  - host command, 302
  - hostname command, 217
  - hostnames, 285, 286
  - HTML. *See* Hypertext Markup Language
  - HTTP, 65
  - human-interface devices, 93
  - Hypertext Markup Language (HTML), 121, 314
- ## I
- IBM, 86
  - id command, 234–235
  - IDE. *See* Integrated Drive Electronics
  - if command, 219–220
  - ifconfig, 295, 296, 298, 324
  - ifdown command, 298
  - ifup command, 298
  - ImageMagick, 60
  - info pages, 117–119, 314
  - init, 181–182, 318
  - initialization daemons, 67
  - Inkscape, 59
  - installers, 14
  - Integrated Drive Electronics (IDE), 81

Intel video drivers, 91  
 Internet, 286  
 Internet Relay Chat (IRC), 124  
 interpreted languages, 69  
 interpreter, 10, 69  
 IP addresses, 285, 286, 298  
 ip command, 298  
 IP masquerading, 303  
 IRC. *See* Internet Relay Chat  
 IRIX OS, 86  
 ISO-9660 filesystem, 87–88  
 iwconfig command, 292  
 iwlist command, 291–292

## J

Java, 70–71  
 JFS. *See* Journaled Filesystem  
 journal, 86  
 Journaled Filesystem (JFS), 86

## K

K Desktop Environment (KDE), 3, 6, 9, 43, 48, 49, 52, 196, 310  
 Kate, 196  
 KDE. *See* K Desktop Environment  
 KDE Kickoff Application Launcher, 52, 56  
 Kerberos realms, 232  
 kernel, 2, 37, 38, 181, 308  
 kernel patch, 96  
 kernel ring buffer, 189–190, 318  
 keyboard/video/mouse switch (KVM switch), 92  
 KMail, 58, 213  
 KOffice, 59  
 Konqueror, 57  
 Konsole, 100  
 KVM switch. *See* keyboard/video/mouse switch  
 KWrite, 196, 212

## L

LAMP stack, 66  
 laptop computers. *See* desktop and laptop computers  
 last command, 254–255  
 LaTeX, 59  
 launching programs  
   from desktop environment, 50–52  
   program launchers, 7  
   server programs, 66–67  
   terminal, 100–103, 101–103  
   text editors, 196–197, 197

LDAP. *See* Lightweight Directory Access Protocol  
 LDP. *See* Linux Documentation Project

less, 114–117, 314  
 Lesser GPL (LGPL), 26  
 Lessig, Lawrence, 29  
 LGPL. *See* Lesser GPL  
 libc, 3  
 libparted, 84  
 libraries, 3, 132  
 library directories, 132  
 library packages, 176  
 LibreOffice, 12, 43, 59, 312, 319  
 licenses  
   open source, 30–32  
   software, 21  
     copyright, 22–24  
     FSF, 25–26

Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP), 232  
 Lightweight X11 Desktop Environment (LXDE), 48, 310

links, 138, 316  
   files, 141–142  
   hard, 141  
   permissions, 275  
   soft, 141  
   symbolic, 141, 275, 316  
   using, 141–142

Linux. *See also specific distributions*

  changes over time, 38  
   distributions, 13–18, 38, 308  
     common, 14–17  
     components, 13–14  
     release cycles, 17–18  
   kernel, 2, 8, 181, 308  
   Mac OS X compared to, 9–11  
   origins, 36–37  
   as software integrator, 40–41  
   Unix compared to, 8–9  
   Windows compared to, 11–13  
 Linux Documentation Project (LDP), 123  
 Linux Essentials Certification, 327  
   objectives map, 328, 329  
 Linux Mark Institute (LMI), 23  
 ln command, 141–142, 147  
 locate command, 122  
 log files, 175, 318  
   creating, 188–189  
   kernel ring buffer, 189–190  
   locating, 187–188  
   more verbose entries, 189  
   rotating, 188  
 logical operators, 219

login screens, 6  
 logout options, 7  
 long-term support (LTS), 16  
 loopback device, 296  
 loops in scripts, 220–221, 321  
 lossless compression, 170  
 lossy compression, 170  
 LPI Linux Essentials Technician (LPI LET), 328  
`ls` command, 5, 133–135, 142
 

- hidden files, 281–282
- permissions, 282–283

`lscpu`, 78  
`lspci`, 79, 292, 312  
 LTS. *See* long-term support  
 Lubuntu distribution, 48  
 LXDE. *See* Lightweight X11 Desktop Environment  
 Lynx, 57  
 LyX, 59

## M

Mac OS X, 41
 

- filesystem, 87
- Linux compared to, 9–11

`mail` command, 214  
 mailing lists, 123–124  
`makewhatis` command, 112  
 malware, 304  
`man` command, 106, 314  
 man pages
 

- less with, 114–117
- locating by section number, 111–112
- purpose, 110
- reading, 112–114
- searching for, 112

`mandb` command, 112  
 Mandriva distribution, 48, 178  
 mask. *See* network mask  
 Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), 30  
 master boot record (MBR), 83  
 maximum resolution, 92  
 MBR. *See* master boot record  
 memory leak, 186  
 memory use, measuring, 185–187  
 metacharacters, 198  
 microkernel, 37  
 Microsoft DOS, 36  
 Microsoft Office, 11, 39  
 Microsoft Windows, 39
 

- Linux compared to, 11–13

 Minix OS, 37  
 Mint distribution, 179

MIPS CPUs, 77  
 MIT. *See* Massachusetts Institute of Technology  
 MIT license, 30  
`mkdir` command, 140, 145, 147, 315–316  
 mobile phones, 41, 93–94  
 monolithic kernel, 37  
 motherboards, 78–80  
`mount` command, 88  
 mount point, 85  
 mounted partitions, 136  
 Mozilla Firefox, 43, 56–57, 106  
 Mozilla Thunderbird, 43, 58  
 MS-DOS, 83  
 msdos filesystem, 87  
 multibyte units, 83–84  
 multicore processors, 77  
 multiple desktops, 7  
 music players, 93–94  
 Mutt, 58  
`mv` command, 140–141, 147, 315  
 MythTV, 60

## N

nano, 5, 195, 196, 198–202, 212, 319
 

- launching, 197, 197
- saving changes, 201–202
- text-editing procedures, 198–201

 NAT. *See* Network Address Translation  
 Nautilus, 52–54, 53–55, 269–270, 270, 276  
`ndiswrapper`, 292  
 Netflix, 61, 66  
 netmask. *See* network mask  
`netstat` command, 302–303  
 network account databases, 232–233  
 Network Address Translation (NAT), 303  
 network appliances, 16–17  
 network connections
 

- configuring, 287
  - creating Wi-Fi connection, 289–292
  - GUI, 293–295
  - text-based tools, 295–298
  - using DHCP, 288
- protecting, 303–304
- testing
  - basic connectivity, 299–300
  - DNS, 302
  - finding breaks, 300–301
  - network status, 302–303
  - routing table, 299

 network device names, 296  
 network features, 285–287  
 Network File System (NFS), 43, 268, 310

Network Information System (NIS), 232  
network mask, 286, 298  
Network Time Protocol (NTP), 44  
newgrp command, 234  
NFS. *See* Network File System  
Nginx, 66  
NIS. *See* Network Information System  
NIS+, 232  
nonrepudiation environment, 239  
normal mode (vi editor), 202  
NPT. *See* Network Time Protocol  
nslookup command, 302  
NTFS filesystem, 87, 268  
NTFS-3G driver, 87  
Nvidia drivers, 91, 95

**O**

object-oriented features, 70  
ODF. *See* OpenDocument Format  
Open Source Initiative (OSI), 21, 26–29, 31, 39  
open source software, 8, 10, 308  
    basic principles, 38–40  
    business models, 32–33  
    defining, 28–29, 310  
    licenses, 30–32  
    philosophy, 26–28  
    using, 38–41  
OpenDocument Format (ODF), 59  
OpenOffice.org. *See* Apache OpenOffice.org  
openSUSE, 15, 48, 178  
    group administration, 262, 262–263, 263  
    user administration, 249, 255, 255, 260, 261  
openSUSE Documentation, 123  
OpenWrt, 17  
Opera, 57  
operating system (OS)  
    components, 2–3  
    defining, 1  
    kernel, 2  
    roles, 41–44  
optimum resolution, 92  
Oracle, 70  
OS. *See* operating system  
OSI. *See* Open Source Initiative  
owner permissions, 273  
ownership  
    dual-booting and, 268  
    overview, 268  
    permissions, 271–278  
    setting, 267  
        in file manager, 269–270  
        in shell, 270–271

**P**

package database, 176  
package management system (PMS), 71, 176–177, 318.  
    *See also specific systems*  
    documentation search with, 121  
    principles, 175–176  
    tools, 72  
packages, 15–16  
    understanding, 70–71  
pager, 114  
Parallel ATA (PATA), 81  
parameters, 215  
parent process ID (PPID), 182  
parentheses (), in regular expressions, 153  
Parted Magic, 17  
partitioning disks, 82–85, 313  
partitions, 136  
passwd command, 215, 257  
passwords, 228  
    common, to avoid, 248–249  
    locking, 256  
    selecting good, 246–248, 323  
PATA. *See* Parallel ATA  
patches, 13  
patents, 23  
path, 133  
PATH env variable, 105, 216  
PCI devices, 312  
PDF. *See* Portable Document Format  
Perens, Bruce, 26  
Perl, 31, 71, 312  
permissions  
    directories, 324  
    group, 274  
    hidden files, 281–282  
    owner, 273  
    root account, 276  
    setting, 271–278  
        in file manager, 276  
        in shell, 276–277  
    special execute, 280–281  
    sticky bits, 278–280  
    symbolic links, 275  
    viewing directories, 282–283  
    world, 274  
phishing, 57, 304  
PHP, 71, 312  
pico, 195, 198–202, 212  
PID. *See* process ID  
ping program, 216, 299–300, 324  
pipes, 163–164  
plus sign (+), in regular expressions, 153

PMS. *See* package management system  
 Portable Document Format (PDF), 39, 121  
 ports for server programs, 63–64  
 POSIX time, 229  
 Postfix, 304, 310  
 PostScript, 121  
 pound bang, 212  
 power supply, 80–81  
 PPID. *See* parent process ID  
 preemptive multitasking, 36, 309  
 printers, 94  
 process ID (PID), 182  
 processes
 

- hierarchy, 181–182
- identifying running, 182–187

 processor. *See* central processing unit  
 productivity programs, 3, 9, 55–62
 

- choosing, 55–56
- cloud computing, 60–61
- email clients, 58
- mobile applications, 61–62
- multimedia applications, 59–60
- office tools, 58–59
- web browsers, 56–58

 program launchers, 7  
 programming languages
 

- common, 70–71
- compiled *vs.* interpreted, 68–70
- managing, 68–71

 project groups, 246  
 proprietary software, 11  
 protocols, 62  
 ps command, 182–183  
 pwd command, 135  
 Python, 71, 312

## Q

question mark (?)
 

- file listing, 135
- file manipulation, 143
- filename expansion, 220
- in regular expressions, 153

## R

range expressions, 152  
 Raymond, Eric S., 26, 40  
 read command, 218  
 README file, 120–121  
 Realtek, 292  
 recursive acronym, 8  
 Red Hat, 37, 38, 178

Red Hat Enterprise Linux (RHEL), 15, 32, 72  
 Red Hat Product Documentation, 123  
 Red Hat systems, managing, 178–179  
 redirection
 

- basic operators, 161–163, 317
- generating command lines, 164–165
- pipes, 163–164

 Reduced Instruction Set Computing (RISC), 77  
 regular expressions, 151–153, 316  
 ReiserFS, 86, 87  
 relative references, 137  
 release cycles, 16, 17–18  
 remote host, 235  
 removable and optical disks, 88–89  
 replacing text, 207  
 repositories, 72, 177  
 repudiation environment, 239  
 Request for Comments documents (RFC), 62  
 resolution, 92  
 return status, 218  
 RFC. *See* Request for Comments documents  
 RHEL. *See* Red Hat Enterprise Linux  
 RISC. *See* Reduced Instruction Set Computing  
 rm command, 143
 

- sticky bit, 279

 rmdir command, 145–146  
 Rock Ridge discs, 88  
 rolling release cycles, 17  
 root account, 102, 316, 321, 322
 

- acquiring privileges, 238–240
- company policies, 239
- permissions, 276
- using safely, 241–242
- working as, 237–242

 root directory, 136  
 root filesystem, 136  
 route command, 217, 295, 298, 299  
 router, 286, 287, 325  
 routing table, 299  
 rpm, 72, 179  
 RPM Package Manager (RPM), 15, 175, 176  
 Rpmdrake, 178  
 runlevels, 142  
 running programs, 104–107
 

- background, 106–107, 314
- GUI, 106
- text-mode programs, 104–106

## S

salted hash, 229  
 SANE. *See* Scanner Access Now Easy  
 SAS. *See* Serial Attached SCSI

- SATA. *See* Serial ATA
- Scanner Access Now Easy (SANE), 94, 95–96
- scanners, 94
- scripts, 211, 320
  - editing, 212
  - startup, 13
- SCSI. *See* Small Computer System Interface
- sectors, 82
- Secure Shell (SSH), 44, 235, 303–304
- security
  - files, 146
  - protecting servers and networks, 303–304
  - servers, 67–68
  - web sites, 57–58
  - Wi-Fi, 290–291
- sed command, 214
- Sendmail, 304
- seq command, 221
- Serial ATA (SATA), 81
- Serial Attached SCSI (SAS), 81
- server computers, 43–44
- Server Message Block/Common Internet File System (SMB/CIFS), 65, 268
- server programs, 9, 310
  - common protocols and programs, 62–65
  - installing and launching, 66–67
  - ports, 63–64
  - securing, 67–68
  - web servers, 65–66
- service set identifier (SSID), 289
- set group id (SGID), 281
- set user ID (SUID), 280–281
- sfdisk, 84
- sgdisk, 84
- SGID. *See* set group id
- shareable files, 129
- shareware software, 39
- shebang, 212
- shell, 3, 99. *See also* Bourne Again Shell
  - account creation from, 251–253
  - account deletion from, 261
  - account modification from, 257–259
  - command completion, 107–108
  - command history, 108–110
  - command-line, 3
  - default, 229
  - setting file ownership, 270–271
  - setting permissions, 276–277
  - specifying in script, 212
- shell quoting, 155
- shell scripting, 71
- shell scripts, 211
  - arguments, 215–216
  - beginning, 212
  - commands, 212–215
  - conditional expressions, 219–220
  - exit value, 222
  - functions, 221–222
  - loops, 220–221
  - variables, 215, 216–218
- shrink-wrap licenses, 23
- Silicon Graphics, 86
- site license, 24
- Slackware, 15, 37
- Small Computer System Interface (SCSI), 81
- smartphones, 16, 307
- SMB. *See* Server Message Block/Common Internet File System
- soft link, 141
- software licenses, 21
  - copyright, 22–24
  - FSF, 25–26
- Solaris, 9
- sort command, 153, 158–160
- source code, 10, 40
- source packages, 176
- SPARC CPUs, 77
- special execute permissions, 280–281
- SSH. *See* Secure Shell
- SSID. *See* service set identifier
- Stallman, Richard, 24
- standard error, 161, 317
- standard output, 161, 317
- standard users, 238
- starting point directory, 155
- startup scripts, 13
- static files, 130
- sticky bits, 278–280
- su command, 238–239, 240
- sudo command, 239, 240, 322
- SUID. *See* set user ID
- Sun Microsystems, 70
- super server, 67
- superuser. *See* root account
- support tools, 38
- SUSE Enterprise Linux, 15, 178
- suspending programs, 106
- swap space, 22, 186
- symbolic link, 141, 316
  - permissions, 275
- symbolic mode, 277
- Synaptic, 180, 180
- syslog, 188
- syslogd, 188
- system accounts, 227, 323
- system files, user files *vs.*, 128–129

system log daemon, 188–189  
 system messaging, 189  
 system user, 238  
 System V init (SysVinit), 67  
 systemd, 67  
 SysVinit. *See* System V init

## T

tabs, 103  
 tail command, 160, 188  
 Tanenbaum, Andrew, 37  
 tar, 166–168, 317  
 tarballs, 15, 166, 168  
 TCP/IP, 287  
 terminal, 5, 10, 308, 321  
   launching, 100–103, 101–103  
 Terminal (GNOME terminal), 102, 103  
 terminal identifier, 235, 237  
 terminal program, 99  
 text editors, 319  
   choosing, 195–196conventions, 198  
   editing files, 198–207  
   editing scripts, 212  
   Emacs, 119, 195  
   Geany, 196  
   gedit, 195, 212  
   GUI, 195–196  
   Kate, 196  
   KWrite, 196, 212  
   launching, 196–197, 197  
   nano, 5, 195, 196, 198–202, 212, 319  
     launching, 197, 197  
     saving changes, 201–202  
     text-editing procedures, 198–201  
   pico, 195, 198–202, 212  
   text-mode, 195  
   vi, 195, 202–207, 203, 212, 319  
     checking version, 203  
     modes, 202, 204  
     saving changes, 207  
     text-editing procedures, 204–207, 205  
   vim, 203  
 text files, 193–195  
 text-mode console, logging in, 103–104  
 text-mode programs, running, 104–106  
 text-mode user interface, 4–5, 5  
 TiVo, 17  
 tkinfo, 119  
 Tomato, 16, 37  
 top command, 183–185, 184, 318  
 Torvalds, Linus, 2, 8, 36  
 touch command, 138, 147, 279, 316

traceroute, 300–301  
 trademarks, 23  
 type command, 203

## U

Ubuntu, 48, 100, 179  
   account creation, 249  
   network configuration tools, 295  
   release cycles, 16, 17  
   sudo command, 239, 240  
 Ubuntu Documentation, 123  
 UDF filesystem, 88, 313  
 UEFI. *See* Unified Extensible Firmware Interface  
 UID. *See* user ID  
 umask, 277–278  
 umount command, 88  
 uname -a, 78  
 UNetbootin tool, 14  
 Unicode, 194, 319  
 Unicode Transformation Format (UTF), 194  
 unified directory tree, 136  
 Unified Extensible Firmware Interface (UEFI), 83  
 Unity desktop environment, 6, 9, 48, 49, 310  
   launching terminal, 100  
 Unix, 36–37  
   Linux compared to, 8–9  
 Unix time, 229  
 unshareable files, 129  
 until loop, 221, 321  
 unzip, 170  
 Upstart, 67  
 uptime command, 217  
 urpmi, 318  
 USB, 81  
 USB devices, 93–94  
 user accounts, 227, 238  
 User and Group Administration utility, 249–251, 250,  
   255, 255, 260, 261–263, 262–263  
 user files, 259  
   system files *vs.*, 128–129  
 user groups, 246  
 user ID (UID), 88, 228, 235, 268, 321, 323  
   reuse, 260  
 user interfaces  
   graphical, 3, 6–8  
   text-mode, 4–5, 5  
 user tasks, 238  
 useradd command, 215, 251–253, 263  
 userdel command, 261, 322, 323  
 usermod command, 229, 257–259, 268  
 usernames  
   accounts, 228, 229  
   online users, 235

## users

- checking for logged-in, 254–255
- discovering own identity, 234–235
- types, 238

/usr/sbin/nologin, 229

UTF. *See* Unicode Transformation Format

utility programs, 3

UXTerm, 102

**V**

variable files, 130

variables

- \$?, 218
- \$DISPLAY env, 216
- environmental, 218
- PATH env, 105, 216
- \$PATH env, 216
- in scripts, 215, 216–218

/var/log, 318

vertical bar (|), 317

- in grep searches, 155
- pipes, 163–164
- in regular expressions, 153

vfat filesystem, 87

VGA cable, 91, 92

vi, 195, 202–207, 212, 319

- checking version, 203
- modes, 202, 204
- saving changes, 207
- text-editing procedures, 204–207, 205

video drivers, 91

vim, 203

Virtual Memory System (VMS), 36, 310

Virtual Network Computing (VNC), 44

virtual terminals (VTs), 103, 104, 235, 308

VMS. *See* Virtual Memory System

VNC. *See* Virtual Network Computing

VTs. *See* virtual terminals

**W**

w command, 236, 254

WAP. *See* wireless access point

wc command, 153, 157

web forums, 123–124

web searches, 124

WEP. *See* Wired Equivalent Privacy

what is command, 112

wheel group, 265

whereis command, 121–122

which command, 213

while loop, 221, 321

whoami command, 235

who command, 235

who command, 254

whoami command, 234, 322

widget sets, 48, 90

Wi-Fi, 287

creating connection, 289–292

drivers, 292

security, 290–291

Wi-Fi Protected Access (WPA), 291

Wikipedia, 26

wildcards, 138

window controls, 7

window manager, 90

Wired Equivalent Privacy (WEP), 291

wireless access point (WAP), 291

workstations, 42

world permissions, 274

WPA. *See* Wi-Fi Protected Access

WPA2, 291

**X**

X Window System (X), 3, 9, 13, 30, 43, 44, 307

configuration file, 90–91

drivers, 95

role of, 90–91

x86 CPU type, 16, 76–77

x86-64 CPU type, 16, 69, 76–77, 313

xargs, 164–165

Xfce desktop environment, 6, 9, 43, 48, 50, 310

Xfce Terminal, 102

XFS. *See* Extents Filesystem

Xft, 90

xinetd, 67

xorg.conf file, 91, 92

Xorg-X11, 9, 30

xterm, 213

XTerm, 100, 102

xz, 169–170

**Y**

yank, 205–206

YaST2, 178

yum, 72, 178–179, 318

Yumex, 178

**Z**

Zettabyte File System (ZFS), 9

zip, 170–172, 317

Zoho Office, 61

zypper, 178, 318

# **WILEY END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT**

Go to [www.wiley.com/go/eula](http://www.wiley.com/go/eula) to access Wiley's ebook  
EULA.